

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 08173173 3

THE  
NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY

PRESENTED BY

Miss Louisa Lee Schuyler  
Miss Georgina Schuyler.  
March 13, 1922.

F-1AF

Bauerhoff Set 2





Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation



L  
Stack VII

Bancroft  
7-1AÉ  
v.1







J. G. Kellogg Sc.

CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH.

HISTORY  
OF THE  
UNITED STATES,

FROM THE  
DISCOVERY OF THE AMERICAN CONTINENT.

BY GEORGE BANCROFT.  
1

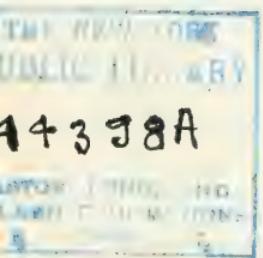
VOL. I.

THIRD EDITION.

BOSTON:  
CHARLES C. LITTLE AND JAMES BROWN.

---

1838.



HISTORY  
OF THE  
C O L O N I Z A T I O N  
OF THE  
UNITED STATES.

BY GEORGE BANCROFT.

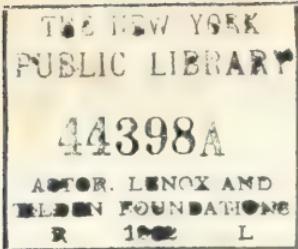
VOL. I.

THIRD EDITION.

BOSTON:  
CHARLES C. LITTLE AND JAMES BROWN.

---

1838.



---

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1837,  
By GEORGE BANCROFT,  
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Massachusetts.

---

---

STEREOTYPED AT THE  
BOSTON TYPE AND STEREOGRAPH FOUNDRY.

## P R E F A C E

T O T H E F I R S T E D I T I O N .

---

I HAVE formed the design of writing a History of the United States from the Discovery of the American Continent to the present time. As the moment arrives for publishing a portion of the work, I am impressed more strongly than ever with a sense of the grandeur and vastness of the subject; and am ready to charge myself with presumption for venturing on so bold an enterprise. I can find for myself no excuse but in the sincerity with which I have sought to collect truth from trust-worthy documents and testimony. I have desired to give to the work the interest of authenticity. I have applied, as I have proceeded, the principles of historical skepticism, and, not allowing myself to grow weary in comparing witnesses, or consulting codes of laws, I have endeavored to impart originality to my narrative, by deriving it from writings and sources which were the contemporaries of the events that are described. Where different nations or different parties have been engaged in the same scenes, I have not failed to examine their respective reports. Such an investigation on any country

would be laborious; I need not say how much the labor is increased by the extent of our republic, the differences in the origin and early government of its component parts, and the multiplicity of topics, which require to be discussed and arranged.

Much error had become incorporated with American history. Many of the early writers in Europe were only careful to explain the physical qualities of the country; and the political institutions of dependent colonies were not thought worthy of exact inquiry. The early history was often written with a carelessness which seized on rumors and vague recollections as sufficient authority for an assertion which satisfied prejudice by wanton perversions, and which, where materials were not at hand, substituted the inferences of the writer for authenticated facts. These early books have ever since been cited as authorities, and the errors, sometimes repeated even by considerate writers, whose distrust was not excited, have almost acquired a prescriptive right to a place in the annals of America. This state of things has increased the difficulty of my undertaking, and, I believe, also, its utility; and I cannot regret the labor which has enabled me to present, under a somewhat new aspect, the early love of liberty in Virginia; the causes and nature of its loyalty; its commercial freedom; the colonial policy of Cromwell; the independent spirit of Maryland; the early institutions of Rhode Island; and the stern independence of the

New England Puritans. On these and other points, on which I have differed from received accounts, I appeal with confidence to the judgment of those who are critically acquainted with the sources of our early history.

I have dwelt at considerable length on this first period, because it contains the germ of our institutions. The maturity of the nation is but a continuation of its youth. The spirit of the colonies demanded freedom from the beginning. It was in this period, that Virginia first asserted the doctrine of popular sovereignty; that the people of Maryland constituted their own government; that New Plymouth, Connecticut, New Haven, New Hampshire, Maine, rested their legislation on the popular will; that Massachusetts declared itself a perfect commonwealth.

In the progress of the work, I have been most liberally aided by the directors of our chief public libraries; especially the library at Cambridge, on American history the richest in the world, has been opened to me as freely as if it had been my own.

The arrangement of the materials has been not the least difficult part of my labor. A few topics have been anticipated; a few, reserved for an opportunity where they can be more successfully grouped with other incidents. To give unity to the account of New Belgium, I reserve the subject for the next volume.

For the work which I have undertaken will necessarily extend to several volumes. I aim at being concise; but also at giving a full picture of

the progress of American institutions. The first volume is now published separately; and for a double motive. The work has already occasioned long preparation, and its completion will require further years of exertion; I have been unwilling to travel so long a journey alone; and desire, as I proceed, to correct my own judgment by the criticisms of candor. I have thought that the public would recognize the sincerity of my inquiries, and that, in those states where the materials of history have as yet been less carefully collected, and less critically compared, I should make for myself friends disposed to assist in placing within my reach the sources of information which are essential to success.

*June 16, 1834.*

---

The volume, of which a third edition is now published, has been carefully revised, and several pages rewritten. The expressions of regard and interest which I have received from persons of very opposite relations in speculative and in practical life, cheer me in the continuance of my labor; they cannot increase my sense of the duty of impartiality.

BOSTON, *May 1, 1838.*

# CONTENTS.

---

## INTRODUCTION, p. 1.

## CHAPTER I.

### EARLY VOYAGES.—FRENCH SETTLEMENTS.

Icelandic Voyages, p. 5—Columbus, 6—First Voyage of the Cabots, 7—Sebastian Cabot, 10—Portuguese Voyage, 14—French Voyages—Verrazzani, 15—Cartier, 19—Roberval, 22—De la Roche—Champlain, 25—French Settlements in Acadia and Canada, 27.

## CHAPTER II.

### SPANIARDS IN THE UNITED STATES.

Spanish Love of Maritime Adventure, p. 30—Ponce de Leon, 31—Diego Mieruelo. Fernandez, 34—Grijalva. Garay, 35—De Ayllon, 36—Cortes. Gomez, 38—Pamphilo de Narvaez, 39—Ferdinand de Soto, 41—Soto sails for Florida, 42—Enters Georgia, 46—Alabama, 48—Mississippi—Discovery of the Mississippi River, 51—Soto enters Arkansas and Missouri, 52—Condition of the Native Tribes, 54—Death and Burial of Soto, 56—Spaniards on the Red River, 57—They leave the United States, 58—Missionaries in Florida—Florida abandoned, 60—Coligny plans a Settlement, 61—Huguenots in South Carolina, 62—Coligny's Second Colony, 63—Attacked by the Spaniards, 66—St. Augustine, the oldest town in the United States—Massacre of the French, 70—Avenged by de Gourges, 72—Extent of Spanish Dominions in America, 73.

## CHAPTER III.

### ENGLAND TAKES POSSESSION OF THE UNITED STATES.

Voyages in the reign of Henry VIII. p. 75—Rut, 76—Hore—Parliament legislates on America, 77—Voyage in search of a North-east Passage, 78—Frobisher's Three Voyages, 81—Drake in the Oregon Territory, 86—Fish-

eries, 87—Sir Humphrey Gilbert, 88—His First Voyage, 89—Gilbert and Walter Raleigh, 90—Gilbert perishes at sea—Raleigh's Patent, 91—Voyage of Amidas and Barlow, 92—Raleigh sends a Colony to North Carolina, 95—Native Inhabitants, 98—Ill success of the Colony, 99—Its Return, 102—Grenville—City of Raleigh, 103—New Colony in North Carolina, 104—Virginia Dare, 105—Raleigh's Assigns, 107—The Roanoke Colony is lost—Character of Raleigh, 108—Gosnold, 111—Pring, 113—Weymouth, 114—Character of the Early Navigators, 115.

## CHAPTER IV.

### COLONIZATION OF VIRGINIA.

Condition of England favors Colonization, p. 118—The First Charter, 120—King James legislates for Virginia, 122—Colonists embark, 123—Arrive in Virginia, 124—Jamestown, 125—Distress of the Colony, 126—Adventures of Smith, 127—Smith a Captive, 130—Saved by Pocahontas, 131—Smith explores the Chesapeake, 133—Smith's Administration, 134—Second Charter, 136—Lord De La Warc, 137—Character of Smith—The Starving Time, 139—Arrival of Lord Delaware, 140—Dale introduces Martial Law, 143—Sir Thomas Gates, 144—Third Charter, 145—Pocahontas and Rolfe, 146—Attack on the French, 148—Dale's Administration—Tenure of Lands, 149—Tobacco—Argall, 151—Yerdley—First Colonial Assembly, 153—Virginia acquires Civil Freedom, 156.

## CHAPTER V.

### SLAVERY.—DISSOLUTION OF THE LONDON COMPANY.

History of Slavery and the Slave Trade, p. 159—Slavery and the Slave Trade in the Middle Ages, 161—Origin of Negro Slavery, 165—Negroes in Portugal and Spain, 166—Native Americans enslaved, 167—Negro Slavery in the West Indies, 169—Opinions, 171—England and the Slave Trade, 173—New England and the Slave Trade, 174—Servants, 175—Slavery in Virginia, 176—Wyatt's Administration, 178—The Aborigines, 179—A Massacre and a War, 182—King James contends with the London Company, 186—Commissioners in Virginia, 189—Spirit of the Virginians, 190—Dissolution of the Company, 192—Virginia retains its Liberties, 193.

## CHAPTER VI.

### RESTRICTIONS ON COLONIAL COMMERCE.

Charles I. p. 194—Virginia retains its Liberties, 195—Death of Yerdley, 196—Harvey's Administration, 197—Sir Francis Wyatt's, 202—Sir William Berkely's Administration, 203—Intolerance, 206—A second Massacre and

War, 207—Prosperity of Virginia, 209—Parliament asserts its Supremacy, 211—Origin of the Navigation Act, 212—Commercial Policy of Cromwell, 217—Of the Stuarts, 218—The Parliament and Virginia, 222—Virginia capitulates, 223—Virginia during the Protectorate, 225—Virginia and its Inhabitants, 229.

## CHAPTER VII.

### COLONIZATION OF MARYLAND.

Discovery, p. 236—Early Settlements, 237—Sir George Calvert, 238—Charter, 241—Freedom of Conscience, 244—Opposition of Virginia, 245—First Emigration, 246—Legislative Liberty—Clayborne, 249—Civil Liberty, 250—Happiness, 252—An Indian War, 253—Ingle's Rebellion, 254—Religious Liberty, 255—Maryland during the Commonwealth, 258—During the Protectorate, 260—Popular Sovereignty exercised, 264.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### THE PILGRIMS.

Influence of Calvin, p. 266—Early Voyages to New England, 267—Colony at Sagadahoc, 268—John Smith in New England, 269—The Council of Plymouth, 271—Its Territory, 273—The Reformation in England, 274—Henry VIII.,—Luther and Calvin, 275—Reign of Edward VI., 278—Hooper, the Puritan, 279—Puritans in Exile, 280—Elizabeth and the Church of England, 282—Progress of Puritanism, 284—The Independents, 286—Persecution of all Non-Conformists, 288—Is ineffectual, 289—Character of King James, 291—Lord Bacon's Tolerant Views, 294—Conference at Hampton Court, 296—The Parliament favors the Puritans, 298—Convocation, 299—The Pilgrims, 300—They fly from England, 301—In Holland, 302—They form a Partnership, 305—Sail for America, 307—The Pilgrims at Cape Cod, 309—Landing of the Fathers—The first Winter at Plymouth, 313—Famine, Oppression, 314—Intercourse with the Indians, 316—Weston, 318—Dissolution of the Partnership, 319—Progress and Character of the Old Colony, 320.

## CHAPTER IX.

### EXTENDED COLONIZATION OF NEW ENGLAND.

Plymouth Monopoly opposed, p. 324—West, Gorges, Morrell—Contest in Parliament, 326—New Hampshire, 327—Maine, 330—Nova Scotia, 331—Conquest and Restoration of Canada, 334—Maine, 335—Conant at Cape Ann, 338—Massachusetts Company purchase Lands, 340—Obtain a Charter, 342—First Government, 345—Higginson's Emigration, 346—Religious In-

dependence, 348—Banishment of the Brownes, 349—The Conclusions—Transfer of the Charter, 351—Winthrop's Emigration, 354—First Autumn and Winter, 357—Organization of the Government, 359—Progress of Liberty, 361—The Puritans exclusive, 366—Roger Williams, 367—his Exile, 377—He plants Providence, 379—His Character, 380—Hugh Peters and Henry Vane, 383—Order of Nobility proposed, 384—Rejected, 385—Antinomian Controversy, 386—Wheelwright exiled, 390—Rhode Island and Exeter, 392—Connecticut colonized, 395—Pequod War, 397—Constitution of Connecticut, 402—New Haven, 403.

## CHAPTER X.

### THE UNITED COLONIES OF NEW ENGLAND.

Views of the English Government, p. 405—Liberty threatened, 406—Massachusetts resists, 407—The Council for New England surrenders its Charter, 408—A quo warranto, 409—Persecutions in England, 410—John Hampden, 411—Massachusetts threatens to declare itself independent, 413—Commotion in Scotland, 414—Condition of New England, 415—New Hampshire, 418—Gorton, 419—Confederacy, 420—Miantonomoh, 423—Rhode Island, 425—Maine, 428—Massachusetts, 432—Political Parties, 433—Vassall and Childe's Disturbance, 437—Long Parliament resisted, 440—Synod, 443—Peace with New Belgium—Acadia, 445—Cromwell's Favor, 446—Laws against Irreligion and Sectarianism, 447—Persecution of Quakers, 451—Free Schools, 458—Harvard College, 459—Character of Puritanism, 460—Restoration of the Stuarts, 469.

# H I S T O R Y

O F   T H E

# U N I T E D   S T A T E S.

---

## I N T R O D U C T I O N.

THE United States of America constitute an essential portion of a great political system, embracing all the civilized nations of the earth. At a period when the force of moral opinion is rapidly increasing, they have the precedence in the practice and the defence of the equal rights of man. The sovereignty of the people is here a conceded axiom, and the laws, established upon that basis, are cherished with faithful patriotism. While the nations of Europe aspire after change, our constitution engages the fond admiration of the people, by which it has been established. Prosperity follows the execution of even justice; invention is quickened by the freedom of competition; and labor rewarded with sure and unexampled returns. Domestic peace is maintained without the aid of a military establishment; public sentiment permits the existence of but few standing troops, and those only along the seaboard and

on the frontiers. A gallant navy protects our commerce, which spreads its banners on every sea, and extends its enterprise to every clime. Our diplomatic relations connect us on terms of equality and honest friendship with the chief powers of the world; while we avoid entangling participation in their intrigues, their passions, and their wars. Our national resources are developed by an earnest culture of the arts of peace. Every man may enjoy the fruits of his industry; every mind is free to publish its convictions. Our government, by its organization, is necessarily identified with the interests of the people, and relies exclusively on their attachment for its durability and support. Even the enemies of the state, if there are any among us, have liberty to express their opinions undisturbed; and are safely tolerated, where reason is left free to combat their errors. Nor is the constitution a dead letter, unalterably fixed; it has the capacity for improvement; adopting whatever changes time and the public will may require, and safe from decay, so long as that will retains its energy. New states are forming in the wilderness; canals, intersecting our plains and crossing our highlands, open numerous channels to internal commerce; manufactures prosper along our water-courses; the use of steam on our rivers and rail-roads annihilates distance by the acceleration of speed. Our wealth and population, already giving us a place in the first rank of nations, are so rapidly cumulative, that the former is increased fourfold, and the latter is

doubled, in every period of twenty-two or twenty-three years. There is no national debt; the community is opulent; the government economical; and the public treasury full. Religion, neither persecuted nor paid by the state, is sustained by the regard for public morals and the convictions of an enlightened faith. Intelligence is diffused with unparalleled universality; a free press teems with the choicest productions of all nations and ages. There are more daily journals in the United States than in the world beside. A public document of general interest is, within a month, reproduced in at least a million of copies, and is brought within the reach of every freeman in the country. An immense concourse of emigrants of the most various lineage is perpetually crowding to our shores; and the principles of liberty, uniting all interests by the operation of equal laws, blend the discordant elements into harmonious union. Other governments are convulsed by the innovations and reforms of neighboring states; our constitution, fixed in the affections of the people, from whose choice it has sprung, neutralizes the influence of foreign principles, and fearlessly opens an asylum to the virtuous, the unfortunate, and the oppressed of every nation.

And yet it is but little more than two centuries, since the oldest of our states received its first permanent colony. Before that time the whole territory was an unproductive waste. Throughout its wide extent the arts had not erected a monument. Its only

inhabitants were a few scattered tribes of feeble barbarians, destitute of commerce and of political connection. The axe and the ploughshare were unknown. The soil, which had been gathering fertility from the repose of centuries, was lavishing its strength in magnificent but useless vegetation. In the view of civilization the immense domain was a solitude.

It is the object of the present work to explain how the change in the condition of our land has been accomplished; and, as the fortunes of a nation are not under the control of blind destiny, to follow the steps by which a favoring Providence, calling our institutions into being, has conducted the country to its present happiness and glory.

# COLONIAL HISTORY.

---

## CHAPTER I.

### EARLY VOYAGES. FRENCH SETTLEMENTS.

THE enterprise of Columbus, the most memorable <sup>1.</sup> CHAP. maritime enterprise in the history of the world, formed <sup>1492.</sup> — between Europe and America the communication which <sup>1492.</sup> will never cease. The national pride of an Icelandic historian has indeed claimed for his ancestors the glory of having discovered the western hemisphere. It is <sup>1000,</sup> said, that they passed from their own island to Green- <sup>or</sup> 1003. land, and were driven by adverse winds from Greenland to the shores of Labrador; that the voyage was often repeated; that the coasts of America were extensively explored, and colonies established on the shores of Nova Scotia or Newfoundland. It is even suggested, that these early adventurers anchored near the harbor of Boston, or in the bays of New Jersey; and Danish antiquaries believe that Northmen entered the waters of Rhode Island, inscribed their adventures on the rocks of Taunton River, gave the name of Vinland to the south-east coasts of New England, and explored the inlets of our country as far as Carolina. But the story of the colonization of America by Northmen, rests on narratives, mythological in form, and obscure in meaning; ancient, yet not contemporary. The

CHAP. chief document is an interpolation in the history of <sup>I.</sup> Sturleson, whose zealous curiosity could hardly have neglected the discovery of a continent.<sup>1</sup> The geographical details are too vague to sustain a conjecture; the accounts of the mild winter and fertile soil are, on any modern hypothesis, fictitious or exaggerated; the description of the natives applies only to the Esquimaux, inhabitants of hyperborean regions; the remark which should define the length of the shortest winter's day, has received interpretations, adapted to every latitude from New York to Cape Farewell; and Vinland has been sought in all directions, from Greenland and the St. Lawrence to Africa.<sup>2</sup> The nation of intrepid mariners, whose voyages extended beyond Iceland and beyond Sicily, could easily have sailed from Greenland to Labrador; no clear historic evidence establishes the natural probability that they accomplished the passage.

Imagination had conceived the idea, that vast inhabited regions lay unexplored in the west; and poets had declared, that empires beyond the ocean would one day be revealed to the daring navigator.<sup>3</sup> But Columbus deserves the undivided glory of having realized that belief. During his lifetime he met with no adequate recompense. The self-love of the Spanish monarch was offended at receiving from a foreigner in his employ benefits too vast for requital; and the contemporaries of the great navigator persecuted the merit which they could not adequately reward. Nor had posterity been

<sup>1</sup> Antiquitates Americanæ, Hafniæ, 1837. The chief work. Schöning's ed. of Sturleson, i. 304—325. Thorfæus, Winlandia Antiqua. A. de Humboldt, Examen Critique, ii. 124, &c. Of American writers, Wheaton's Northmen, 22—28; Belknap's

Amer Biog. i. 47—58; Moulton's New York, i. 110—125; Irving's Columbus, iii. 292—300; E. Everett, in N. A. Review, xlvi. 161—203.

<sup>2</sup> Antiq. Americanæ, 289, 291, 296.

<sup>3</sup> Prescott's Ferdinand and Isabella, ii. 117. Pulci, c. xxv. st. 229—232.

mindful to gather into a finished picture the memorials CHAP.  
of his career, till the genius of Irving, with candor, liberality,  
and original research, made a record of his 1492  
eventful life, and in mild but enduring colors sketched  
his sombre inflexibility of purpose, his deep religious  
enthusiasm, and the disinterested magnanimity of his  
character.

Columbus was a native of Genoa. The commerce of the middle ages, conducted chiefly upon the Mediterranean Sea, had enriched the Italian republics, and had been chiefly engrossed by their citizens. The path for enterprise now lay across the ocean. The states which bordered upon the Atlantic, Spain, Portugal, and England, became competitors for the possession of the New World, and the control of the traffic which its discovery was to call into being; but the nation which, by long and successful experience, had become deservedly celebrated for its skill in navigation, continued for a season to furnish the most able maritime commanders. Italians had the glory of making the discoveries, from which Italy derived no accessions of wealth or power.

In the new career of western adventure, the American continent was first discovered under the auspices of the English, and the coast of the United States by a native<sup>1</sup> of England. In the history of maritime enterprise in the New World, the achievements of John and Sebastian Cabot are, in boldness, success, and results, second only to those of Columbus. The wars of the houses of York and Lancaster had ceased; tranquillity and thrifty industry had been restored by the prudent

1497  
June  
24.

<sup>1</sup> History of the Travayles in the East and West Indies, by R. Eden and R. Willes, 1577, fol. 267. “Sebastian Cabot tolde me, that he was borne in Brystow,” &c.

**CHAP.** severity of Henry VII. ; the spirit of commercial activity began to be successfully fostered ; and the marts of **1496.** England were thronged with Lombard adventurers.

The fisheries of the north had long tempted the merchants of Bristol to an intercourse with Iceland ;<sup>1</sup> and the nautical skill, necessary to buffet the storms of the Atlantic, had been acquired in this branch of northern commerce. Nor is it impossible, that some uncertain traditions respecting the remote discoveries which Icelanders had made in Greenland towards the north-west, “where the lands<sup>2</sup> did nearest meet,” should have excited “firm and pregnant conjectures.” The magnificent achievement of Columbus, revealing the wonderful truth, of which the germs may have existed in the imagination of every thoughtful mariner, won the admiration which was due to an enterprise that seemed more divine than human, and kindled in the breasts of the emulous a vehement desire to gain as signal<sup>3</sup> renown in the same career of daring ; while the politic king of England desired to share in the large returns, which were promised by maritime adventure. It was, therefore, not difficult for John Cabot, a Venetian merchant, residing at Bristol, to engage Henry VII. in plans for discovery. He obtained from that monarch a patent,<sup>4</sup> empowering himself and his three sons, or either of them, their heirs, or their deputies, to sail into the eastern, western, or northern sea, with a fleet of five ships, at their own proper expense and charges ; to search for

**1496.** **Mar.** **5.**

<sup>1</sup> Selden, *Mare Clausum*, b. ii. c. 32.

<sup>2</sup> Bacon's *Hist. of Henry VII.*

<sup>3</sup> Conversation respecting Seb. Cabot, reported in Ramusio, *Discorso sopra li Viaggi delle Spettrerie*, i. fol. 402, ed. 1554. Hak. iii. 28. Hakluyt's reference to Ramu-

sio is wrong. The passage from Ramusio is also in Eden's *Travayles*, ed. 1577, fol. 267.—De Thou, *Hist.* l. xliv.

<sup>4</sup> See the patent in Hakluyt, iii. 25, 26; Chalmers's *Polit. Annals*, 7, 8; Hazard's *Hist. Coll.* i. 9.

islands, countries, provinces, or regions, hitherto unseen CHAP.  
 by Christian people ; to affix the banners of England on <sup>I.</sup> ~~—~~  
 any city, island, or continent, that they might find ; <sup>1496.</sup>  
 and, as vassals of the English crown, to possess and oc-  
 cupy the territories that might be discovered. It was  
 further stipulated in this “most ancient American state  
 paper of England,”<sup>1</sup> that the patentees should be strictly  
 bound in their voyages to land at the port of Bristol,  
 and to pay to the king one fifth part of the emoluments  
 of the navigation ; while the exclusive right of frequent-  
 ing all the countries that might be found, was reserved,  
 unconditionally and without limit of time, to the family  
 of the Cabots and their assigns. Under this patent,  
 containing the worst features of colonial monopoly and  
 commercial restriction, John Cabot<sup>2</sup> and his celebrated  
 son Sebastian, embarked for the west. Of what tem-  
 pests they encountered, what mutinies they calmed, no  
 record has been preserved. The discovery of the  
 American continent,<sup>3</sup> probably in the latitude of fifty-six  
 degrees, far, therefore, to the north of the Straits of <sup>1497.</sup>  
 Belle-Isle, among the polar bears, the rude savages,  
 and the dismal cliffs of Labrador, was the fruit of the  
 voyage.

It has been attempted to deprive the father of the  
 glory of having led the expedition. The surest docu-  
 mentary evidence confirms his claims. He and his son  
 Sebastian first approached the continent, which no  
 European had dared to visit, or had known to exist.

<sup>1</sup> Chalmers, 7.

<sup>2</sup> Second patent to John Cabot,  
 of Feb. 3, 1498, first printed in R.  
 Biddle's Memoir of Sebastian Cabot, 75.  
 The extract from the map of  
 Sebastian Cabot is equally ex-  
 plicit. Hakluyt, iii. 27.

<sup>3</sup> Extract from Cabot's map, in

Hakluyt, i. 27. Ramusio sopra li  
 viaggi, &c. i. fol. 402. The map  
 of Ortelius, in his *Theatrum Orbis  
 Terrarum*, gives the island St. John  
 in latitude fifty-six degrees. The  
 work of Ortelius, in the editions of  
 1584 and of 1592, is at Cambridge.

- CHAP.** The navigators hastened homewards to announce their success. Thus the discovery of our continent was an exploit of private mercantile adventure ; and the possession of the new-found “ land and isles ” was a right vested by an exclusive patent in the family of a Bristol merchant. Yet the Cabots derived little benefit from the expedition, which their genius had suggested, and of which they alone had defrayed the expense. Posterity hardly remembered, that they had reached the American continent nearly fourteen months before Columbus, on his third voyage, came in sight of the main land ; and almost two years before Amerigo Vespucci sailed west of the Canaries. But England acquired through their energy such a right to North America, as this indisputable priority could confer. Henry VII. and his successors recognized the claims of Spain and Portugal, only so far as they actually occupied the territories to which they laid pretension ; and, at a later day, the English parliament and the English courts derided a title, founded, not upon occupancy, but upon a grant from the Roman pontiff.<sup>1</sup>
- 1498.** Confidence and zeal awakened ; and Henry grew circumspect in the concession of rights, which now seemed about to become of immense value. A new patent<sup>2</sup> was issued to John Cabot, less ample in the privileges which it conferred ; and his son Sebastian, a native of Bristol, a youthful adventurer of great benevolence and courtesy, daring in conception and patient in execution, a man whose active mind for more than half a century was employed in guiding the commercial enterprise which the nations of the west were develop-

<sup>1</sup> Debates of the House of Commons, 1620 and 1621, i. 250, 251. luyt, iii. 30, 31. Memoir of Cabot, 75 and 80—86.

<sup>2</sup> Stow's Chronicle, 1498, in Hak-

ing, and whose extraordinary merits have been recently vindicated with ingenious and successful diligence, pursued the paths of discovery which he, with his father, had opened. A voyage was again undertaken; purposes of traffic were connected with it; and the frugal king was himself a partner<sup>1</sup> in the expenditure. The object of this new expedition was, in part, to explore "what manner of landes<sup>2</sup> those Indies were to inhabit;" and perhaps, also, a hope was entertained of reaching the rich empire of Cathay. Embarking in May, Sebastian Cabot, with a company of three hundred men, sailed for Labrador, by way of Iceland; and reached the continent in the latitude of fifty-eight degrees. The severity of the cold, the strangeness of the unknown land, and his declared purpose of exploring the country, induced him to turn to the south; and, having proceeded along the shores of the United States to the southern boundary of Maryland,<sup>3</sup> or perhaps to the latitude of Albemarle Sound,<sup>4</sup> want of provisions induced him to return to England.

Curiosity desires to trace the further career of the great seaman, who, with his father, gave a continent to England. The maps which he sketched of his discoveries, and the accounts which he wrote of his adventures, have perished, and the history of the next years of his life is involved in obscurity. Yet it does not ad-

<sup>1</sup> Memoir of Seb. Cabot, 85.

<sup>2</sup> Peter Martyr, of Anghiera, d. iii. l. vi. Also in Eden, fol. 124, 125, and in Hakluyt, v. 283, and Hakluyt, iii. 29, 30. Gomara, Historia de las Indias, c. xxxix. The passage is quoted in Eden and Willes, fol. 228, and less perfectly in Hakluyt, iii. 30. Herrera, d. i. l. vi. c. xvi. is confused.

Compare also the conversation in Ramusio, where we must suppose

that the narrator confounds this with the preceding voyage. Ramusio, i. fol. 403, or Eden and Willes, fol. 267. I am indebted for the use of Ramusio, and of many other valuable works, to E. Everett, of Charlestown.

<sup>3</sup> Gomara. Treinta i ocho Grados.

<sup>4</sup> Peter Martyr. Ut Herculei freti latitudinis fere gradus equarit, &c.

CHAP. mit of a reasonable doubt, that, perhaps in 1517,<sup>1</sup> after  
~~I~~  
~~—~~ he had been in the employment of Ferdinand of Spain,  
 1517. and before he received the appointment of Pilot-Major from Charles V., he sailed once more from England to discover the North-Western passage. The testimony respecting this expedition is confused and difficult of explanation; the circumstances which attended it, are variously related, and are assigned to other and earlier voyages. A connected and probable account can be given only by comparing the evidence, and extracting the several incidents from different and contradictory narratives. Yet the main fact is indisputable; Sebastian Cabot passed through the straits and entered the bay,<sup>2</sup> which, after the lapse of nearly a century, took their name from Hudson. He himself wrote a "discourse of navigation," in which the entrance of the strait was laid down with great precision "on a card, drawn by his own hand."<sup>3</sup> He boldly prosecuted his design, making his way through regions, into which it was, long afterwards, esteemed an act of the most intrepid maritime adventure to penetrate, till, on June the eleventh, as we are informed from a letter written by the navigator himself, he had attained the altitude of sixty-seven and a half degrees,<sup>4</sup> ever in the hope of finding a passage into the Indian ocean. The sea was

June  
11.

<sup>1</sup> See Eden, in Mem. of Cabot, 102, and Thorne's letter, ib. 103. Compare chaps. xiii. xiv. and xv. of the Memoir. The account in Hakluyt, iii. 591, 592, may give the date of the voyage correctly; but then there must be a gross mistake as to its destination. Peter Martyr, d. iii. c. v. merits regard. Expectat indies, ut navigia sibi parentur, quibus arcanum hoc naturæ latens jam tandem detegatur. Martis mense anni futuri MDXVI. puto

ad explorandum discessurum. Failing to sail from Spain, Cabot went to England.

<sup>2</sup> Anderson was the first of the later writers to mention the fact. History of Commerce, An. 1496.

<sup>3</sup> Ortelius, Map of America in Theatrum Orbis Terrarum. Eden and Willes, fol. 223. Sir H. Gilbert, in Hakluyt, iii. 49, 50.

<sup>4</sup> Discorso del Ramusio sopra il terzo volume, &c.

still open ; but the cowardice of a naval officer, and CHAP.  
the mutiny of the mariners, compelled him to return, <sup>I.</sup> though his own confidence in the possibility of effecting 1517. the passage remained unimpaired.

The career of Sebastian Cabot was in the issue as honorable, as it had in the opening been glorious. He conciliated universal regard by the placid mildness of his character. Unlike the stern enthusiasm of Columbus, he was distinguished by serenity and contentment. For sixty years, during a period when maritime adventure engaged the most intense public curiosity, he was revered for his achievements and his skill. He had attended the congress,<sup>1</sup> which assembled at Badajoz to divide the islands of the Moluccas between Portugal and Spain ; he subsequently sailed to South America, under 1526. the auspices of Charles V., though not with entire success.<sup>2</sup> On his return to his native land, he advanced the commerce of England by opposing a mercantile monopoly, and was pensioned and rewarded for his merits as the Great Seaman.<sup>3</sup> It was he who framed 1549. the instructions for the expedition which discovered the passage to Archangel.<sup>4</sup> He lived to an extreme old age, 1553. and so loved his profession to the last, that in the hour of death his wandering thoughts were upon the ocean.<sup>5</sup> The discoverer of the territory of our country was one of the most extraordinary men of his age : there is deep cause for regret, that time has spared so few memorials of his career. Himself incapable of jealousy, he did

<sup>1</sup> Eden's Travayles, fol. 449.

<sup>2</sup> Eden's Travayles, fol. 226.

Herrera, d. iii. l. ix. c. iii. Compare Herrera, d. iii. l. x. c. i. near the close of the chapter. The Spaniard praises but sparingly the great navigator, who had rendered

more important services to England than to Spain.

<sup>3</sup> Hazard, i. 23. Memoir of Cabot, 185.

<sup>4</sup> Hakluyt, i. 251—255. Purchas's Pilgrims, i. 915.

<sup>5</sup> Memoir of Cabot, 219.

CHAP. not escape detraction.<sup>1</sup> He gave England a continent,  
<sup>I.</sup>  
~~—~~ and no one knows his burial-place.

1553. It was after long solicitations, that Columbus had obtained the opportunity of discovery. Upon the certainty of success, a throng of adventurers eagerly engaged in voyages, to explore the New World, or to plunder its inhabitants. The king of PORTUGAL, grieved at having neglected Columbus, readily favored an expedition for northern discovery. Gaspar Cortereal<sup>2</sup> was appointed commander of the enterprise. He reached 1500. the shores of North America, ranged the coast for a distance of six or seven hundred miles, and carefully observed the country and its inhabitants. The most northern point<sup>3</sup> which he attained, was probably about the fiftieth degree. Of the country along which he sailed, he had occasion to admire the brilliant freshness of the verdure, and the density of the stately forests. The pines, well adapted for masts and yards, promised to become an object of gainful commerce. But men were already with the Portuguese an established article of traffic; the inhabitants of the American coast seemed well fitted for labor; and Cortereal freighted his ships with more than fifty Indians, whom, on his return, he sold as slaves. It was soon resolved to renew the expedition; but the adventurer never returned. His death was ascribed to a combat with the natives, whom he desired to kidnap; the name of Labrador, transferred

Aug.  
8.

<sup>1</sup> Peter Martyr, d. iii. l. vi.; in Eden, fol. 125.

<sup>2</sup> See the leading document on the voyage of Cortereal, in a letter from Pietro Pasqualigo, Venetian ambassador in Portugal, written to his brother, October 19, 1501, in *Paesi novamente ritrovati et Novo Mondo da Alberico Vesputio Flo-*

*rentino intitulato.* L. vi. c. cxxv. The original and the French translation are both in the library of Harvard College.

<sup>3</sup> Herrera, d. i. l. vi. c. xvi. Gomara, c. xxxvii. Also in Eden, fol. 227. Galvano, in Hakluyt, iv. 419. Purchas, i. 915, 916. Memoir of Cabot, b. ii. c. iii. and iv.

to a more northern coast, is, probably, a memorial of his <sup>1</sup> CHAP crime ;<sup>1</sup> and is, perhaps, the only permanent trace of Portuguese adventure within the limits of North America. 1501.

The FRENCH entered without delay into the competition for the commerce and the soil of America. Within seven years of the discovery of the continent, 1504. the fisheries of Newfoundland were known to the hardy mariners of Brittany and Normandy.<sup>2</sup> The island of Cape Breton acquired its name from their remembrance of home, and in France it was usual to esteem them the discoverers of the country.<sup>3</sup> A map of the Gulf of 1506. Saint Lawrence was drawn by Denys,<sup>4</sup> a citizen of Honfleur ; and the fishermen of the north-west of France derived wealth from the regions, which, it was reluctantly confessed, had been first visited by the Cabots.

The fisheries had for some years been successfully pursued ; savages from the north-eastern coast had been 1508. brought to France ;<sup>5</sup> plans of colonization in North 1518. America had been suggested by De Lery and Saint Just ;<sup>6</sup> when at length Francis I., a monarch who had invited Da Vinci and Cellini to transplant the fine arts into his kingdom, employed John Verrazzani, another Florentine, to explore the new regions, which had alike excited curi- 1523 osity and hope. It was by way of the isle of Madeira, that the Italian, parting from a fleet which had cruised successfully along the shores of Spain, sailed for Amer- 1524. Jan. 17. <sup>7</sup> with a single caravel, resolute to make discovery

<sup>1</sup> Memoir of Cabot, 242. Navarete, *Viages Menores*, iii. 43, 44.

<sup>2</sup> Charlevoix, *Hist. Gen. de la Nouv. Fr.* i. 3, edition of 1744, 4to.; Champlain's *Voyages*, i. 9. Navarete, &c. iii. 176—180, argues against the statement in the text. Compare Memoir of Cabot, 316.

<sup>3</sup> Verrazzani, in *Hakluyt*, iii. 363.

<sup>4</sup> Charlevoix, i. 3 and 4. Mé-

moire sur les Limites de l'Acadie, 104—a good historic outline.

<sup>5</sup> Charlevoix, *N. F.* i. 4.

<sup>6</sup> L'Escarbot, 21. Mémoire, &c. 104.

<sup>7</sup> See Verrazzani's letter to Francis I., from Dieppe, July 8, 1524, in *Hakluyt*, iii. 357—364, or in *N. Y. Hist. Coll.* i. 45—60. It is also in *Ramusio*. Compare Charlevoix, *N. F.* i. 5—8.

CHAP. of new countries. The Dolphin, though it had “the  
<sup>I.</sup> good hap of a fortunate name,” was overtaken by as  
 1524. terrible a tempest, as mariners ever encountered ; and  
 fifty days elapsed before the continent appeared in  
 view. At length, in the latitude of Wilmington,<sup>1</sup> Ver-  
 Mar. razzani could congratulate himself on beholding land  
 which had never been seen by any European. But no  
 convenient harbor was found, though the search ex-  
 tended fifty leagues to the south. Returning towards  
 the north, he cast anchor on the coast ; all the shore  
 was shoal, but free from rocks, and covered with fine  
 sand ; the country was flat. It was the coast of North  
 Carolina. Mutual was the wonder of the inquisitive  
 foreigners, and the mild and feeble natives. The rus-  
 set color of the Indians seemed like the complexion of  
 the Saracens ; their dress was of skins ; their ornaments,  
 garlands of feathers. They welcomed with hospitality  
 the strangers, whom they had not yet learned to fear.  
 As the Dolphin ploughed its way to the north, the  
 country seemed more inviting ; it was thought that  
 imagination could not conceive of more delightful fields  
 and forests ; the groves, redolent with fragrance, spread  
 their perfumes far from the shore, and gave promise of  
 the spices of the East. The mania of the times raged  
 among the crew ; in their eyes the color of the earth  
 argued an abundance of gold. The savages were more  
 humane than their guests. A young sailor, who had  
 nearly been drowned, was revived by the courtesy of  
 the natives ; the voyagers robbed a mother of her child,  
 and attempted to kidnap a young woman. Such crimes  
 can be prompted even by the feeble passion of curiosity,  
 and the desire to gratify a vulgar wonder.

<sup>1</sup> S. Miller, in N. Y. Hist. Coll. i. 23. In the Libreria Stroziana in Florence, there is a copious manuscript account of Verrazzani's voyage and discoveries. Tiraboschi, vii. 261, 262.

The harbor of New York especially attracted notice, CHAP.  
I. for its great convenience and pleasantness; the eyes ~~—~~  
of the covetous could discern mineral wealth in the <sup>1524.</sup> April.  
hills of New Jersey.<sup>1</sup>

In the spacious haven of Newport, Verrazzani remained for fifteen days. The natives were “the goodliest people” that he had found in the whole voyage. They were liberal and friendly; yet so ignorant, that, though instruments of steel and iron were often exhibited, they did not form a conception of their use, nor learn to covet their possession.<sup>2</sup>

Leaving the waters of Rhode Island, the persevering mariner sailed along the whole coast of New England <sup>May 5.</sup> to Nova Scotia, till he approached the latitude of fifty degrees. The natives of the more northern region were hostile and jealous; it was impossible to conciliate their confidence; they were willing to traffic, for they had learned the use of iron; but in their exchanges they demanded knives and weapons of steel. Perhaps this coast had been visited for slaves; its inhabitants had become wise enough to dread the vices of Europeans.

In July, Verrazzani was once more in France. His own narrative of the voyage is the earliest original account, now extant, of the coast of the United States. He advanced the knowledge of the country; and he gave to France some claim to an extensive territory, on the pretext of discovery.<sup>3</sup>

The historians of maritime adventure agree, that <sup>1525.</sup> Verrazzani again embarked upon an expedition, from

<sup>1</sup> Hakluyt, iii. 360, 361. N. Y. Hist. Coll. i. 52, 53. Moulton's New York, i. 138, 139.

<sup>2</sup> Hakluyt, iii. 361. Moulton's New York, i. 147, 148. Miller, in

N. Y. Hist. Coll. i. 25. Belknap's Am. Biog. i. 33.

<sup>3</sup> Chalmers's Annals, 512. Harris's Voyages, ii. 348, 349.

CHAP. which, it is usually added, he never returned. Did he  
<sup>I.</sup>  
~~—~~ sail once more under the auspices of France? <sup>1</sup> When  
1525. the monarch had just lost every thing but honor in the  
Feb. 24. disastrous battle of Pavia, is it probable, that the im-  
poverished government could have sent forth another  
1527. for that of England? It is hardly a safe conjecture,  
that he was murdered in an encounter with savages,  
while on a voyage of discovery, which Henry VIII. had  
favored.<sup>2</sup> Hakluyt asserts, that Verrazzani was thrice  
on the coast of America, and that he gave a map of it  
to the English monarch.<sup>3</sup> It is the common tradition,  
that he perished at sea, having been engaged in an ex-  
pedition of which no tidings were ever heard. Such a  
report might easily be spread respecting a great navi-  
gator who had disappeared from the public view; and the  
rumor might be adopted by an incautious historian.  
It is probable, that Verrazzani had only retired from  
the fatigues of the life of a mariner; and, while others  
believed him buried in the ocean, he may have long  
1537. enjoyed at Rome the friendship of men of letters, with  
the delights of tranquil employment.<sup>4</sup> Yet such is the  
obscurity of the accounts respecting his life, that cer-  
tainty cannot be established.<sup>5</sup>

1527. But the misfortunes of the French monarchy did not  
affect the industry of its fishermen; who, amidst the  
miseries of France, still resorted to Newfoundland.  
Aug. 3. There exists a letter<sup>6</sup> to Henry VIII., from the haven  
of St. John, in Newfoundland, written by an English

<sup>1</sup> Charlevoix, *Nouv. Fr.* i. 7, 8.

<sup>2</sup> Memoir of S. Cabot, 271—276.

<sup>3</sup> Hakl. *Divers Voyages*, 1582,  
quoted in *Mem. of Cabot*, p. 272.

<sup>4</sup> See Annibale Caro, *Lettere Familiari*, tom. 1. let. 12.

<sup>5</sup> Tiraboschi, vii. 263, ed. 1809.

Compare, also, *Ensayo Cronologico à la Historia de la Florida*, Año MDXXIV.

<sup>6</sup> Rut, in *Purchas*, iii. 809.

captain, in which he declares, he found in that one harbor CHAP.  
 eleven sail of Normans and one Breton, engaged in the <sup>I.</sup> ~~the~~  
 fishery. The French king, engrossed by the passionate 1527.  
 and unsuccessful rivalry with Charles V., could hardly  
 respect so humble an interest. But Chabot, admiral  
 of France,<sup>1</sup> a man of bravery and influence, acquainted  
 by his office with the fishermen, on whose vessels he  
 levied some small exactions for his private emolument,  
 interested Francis in the design of exploring and colo- 1534.  
 nizing the New World. James Cartier, a mariner of  
 St. Malo, was selected to lead the expedition.<sup>2</sup> His  
 several voyages are of great moment; for they had a  
 permanent effect in guiding the attention of France to  
 the region of the St. Lawrence. It was in April, that  
 the mariner, with two ships, left the harbor of St. Malo;  
 and prosperous weather brought him in twenty days  
 upon the coasts of Newfoundland. Having almost cir-  
 cumnavigated the island, he turned to the south, and,  
 crossing the gulf, entered the bay, which he called  
 Des Chaleurs, from the intense heats of midsummer.  
 Finding no passage to the west, he sailed along the  
 coast, as far as the smaller inlet of Gaspe. There, upon  
 a point of land, at the entrance of the haven, a lofty  
 cross was raised, bearing a shield, with the lilies of  
 France and an appropriate inscription. Henceforth the  
 soil was to be esteemed a part of the dominions of the  
 French king. Leaving the Bay of Gaspe, Cartier dis- Aug.  
 covered the great river of Canada, and sailed up its  
 channel, till he could discern land on either side. As  
 he was unprepared to remain during the winter, it then Aug.  
 became necessary to return; the little fleet embarked 9.

April  
20.May  
10.July  
12.

Aug.

Aug.  
9.<sup>1</sup> Charlevoix, *Nouv. Fr.* i. 8.levoix, *N. F.* i. 8, 9; *Purchas*, i.<sup>2</sup> See Cartier's account in Hak-  
luyt, iii. 250—262. Compare Char-931; *Ibid.* iv. 1605; Belknap's Am.  
*Biog.* i. 161—163.

CHAP. for Europe, and, in less than thirty days,<sup>1</sup> entered the  
<sup>I.</sup>  
 harbor of St. Malo in security. His native city and  
 1534. France were filled with the tidings of his discoveries.  
 Sept.

5. The voyage had been easy and successful. Even at  
 this day, the passage to and fro is not often made more  
 rapidly or more safely.

Could a gallant nation, which was then ready to  
 contend for power and honor with the united force of  
 Austria and Spain, hesitate to pursue the career of dis-  
 1534. covery, so prosperously opened? The court listened  
 to the urgency of the friends of Cartier; <sup>2</sup> a new com-  
 mission was issued; three well-furnished ships were  
 provided by the king; and some of the young nobility  
 of France volunteered to join the new expedition.  
 Solemn preparations were made for departure; religion  
 prepared a splendid pageant, previous to the embar-  
 kation; the whole company, repairing to the cathedral,  
 1535. received absolution and the bishop's blessing. The  
 May 19. adventurers were eager to cross the Atlantic; and the  
 squadron sailed<sup>3</sup> for the New World, full of hopes of  
 discoveries and plans of colonization in the territory  
 which now began to be known as New France.<sup>4</sup>

It was after a stormy voyage, that they arrived with-  
 in sight of Newfoundland. Passing to the west of that  
 1535. island on the day of St. Lawrence, they gave the  
 Aug. 10. name of that martyr to a portion of the noble gulf  
 which opened before them; a name which has gradu-

<sup>1</sup> Holmes's Annals, i. 65. "He returned in April." Not so. Compare Hakluyt, iii. 261, or Belknap, i. 163. The excellent annalist rarely is in error, even in minute particulars. He merits the gratitude of every student of American history. Purchas, i. 931, edition of 1617, says,—"Francis I. sent thither James Breton." This per-

son can be no other than James Cartier, a Breton.

<sup>2</sup> Charlevoix, N. F. i. 9.

<sup>3</sup> See the original account of the voyage in Hakluyt, iii. 262—285. Compare Charlevoix, N. F. i. 8—15; Belknap's Am. Biog. i. 164—178. Purchas is less copious.

<sup>4</sup> Hakluyt, iii. 285.

ally extended to the whole gulf, and to the river. Sail- CHAP.  
ing to the north of Anticosti, they ascended the stream I. in September, as far as a pleasant harbor in the isle, 1535. since called Orleans. The natives, Indians of Algonquin descent, received them with unsuspecting hospitality. Leaving his ships safely moored, Cartier, in a boat, sailed up the majestic stream to the chief Indian settlement on the island of Hochelaga. The language of its inhabitants proves them to have been of the Huron family of tribes.<sup>1</sup> The town lay at the foot of a hill, which he climbed. As he reached the summit, he was moved to admiration by the prospect before him of woods, and waters, and mountains. Imagination presented it as the future emporium of inland commerce, and the metropolis of a prosperous province ; filled with bright anticipations, he called the hill Mont-Real,<sup>2</sup> and time, that has transferred the name to the island, is realizing his visions. Cartier also gathered of the Indians some indistinct account of the countries now contained in the north of Vermont and New York. Rejoining his ships, the winter, rendered frightful by the ravages of the scurvy, was passed where they were anchored. At the approach of spring, a cross was solemnly erected upon land, and on it a shield was suspended, which bore the arms of France, and an inscription, declaring Francis to be the rightful king of these new-found regions. Having thus claimed possession of the territory, the Breton mariner returned to Europe, and once more entered St. Malo in security. July 6.

The description which Cartier gave of the country bordering on the St. Lawrence, furnished arguments<sup>3</sup> to 1536 1540. against attempting a colony. The intense severity of

<sup>1</sup> Charlevoix, i. 12. Cass, in N. <sup>2</sup> Hakluyt, iii. 272.  
A. Rev. XXIV. 421.

<sup>3</sup> Charlevoix, N. F. i. 20.

CHAP. the climate terrified even the inhabitants of the north  
<sup>I.</sup>  
 of France ; and no mines of silver and gold, no veins  
 1540. abounding in diamonds and precious stones, had been  
 promised by the faithful narrative of the voyage. Three  
 or four years, therefore, elapsed, before plans of coloni-  
 zation were renewed. Yet imagination did not fail to  
 anticipate the establishment of a state upon the fertile  
 banks of a river, which surpassed all the streams of  
 Europe in grandeur, and flowed through a country  
 situated between nearly the same parallels as France.  
 Soon after a short peace had terminated the third des-  
 perate struggle between Francis I. and Charles V., att-  
 tention to America was again awakened ; there were  
 not wanting men at court, who deemed it unworthy a  
 gallant nation to abandon the enterprise ; and a noble-  
 man of Picardy, Francis de la Roque, lord of Roberval,  
 a man of considerable provincial distinction, sought and  
 1540. obtained<sup>1</sup> a commission. It was easy to confer prov-  
<sup>Jan.</sup>  
<sup>15.</sup> inces and plant colonies upon parchment ; Roberval  
 could congratulate himself on being the acknowledged  
 lord of the unknown Norimbega, and viceroy, with full  
 regal authority, over the immense territories and islands  
 which lie near the gulf or along the river St. Lawrence.  
 But the ambitious nobleman could not dispense with  
 the services of the former naval commander, who pos-  
 sessed the confidence of the king ; and Cartier also re-  
 ceived a commission. Its terms merit consideration.  
 1540. He was appointed captain-general and chief pilot of  
<sup>Oct.</sup>  
<sup>17.</sup> the expedition ; he was directed to take with him per-  
 sons of every trade and art ; to repair to the newly-  
 discovered territory ; and to dwell there with the na-

<sup>1</sup> Charlevoix, N. F. i. 20, 21. original accounts in L'Escarbot and  
 The account in Charlevoix needs to Hakluyt.  
 be corrected by the documents and

tives. But where were the honest tradesmen and industrious mechanics to be found, who would repair to <sup>I.</sup> ~~the~~ this New World? The commission gave Cartier full authority to ransack the prisons; to rescue the unfortunate and the criminal; and to make up the complement of his men from their number. Thieves or homicides, the spendthrift or the fraudulent bankrupt, the debtors to justice or its victims, prisoners rightfully or wrongfully detained, excepting only those arrested for treason or counterfeiting money,—these were the people by whom the colony was, in part, to be established.<sup>1</sup>

The division of authority between Cartier and Roberval of itself defeated the enterprise.<sup>2</sup> Roberval was ambitious of power; and Cartier desired the exclusive honor of discovery. They neither embarked in company, nor acted in concert. Cartier sailed<sup>3</sup> from St. Malo the next spring after the date of his commission; he arrived at the scene of his former adventures, ascended the St. Lawrence, and, near the site of Quebec, built a fort for the security of his party;<sup>4</sup> but no considerable advances in geographical knowledge appear to have been made. The winter passed in sullenness and gloom. In June of the following year, he and his ships stole away and returned to France, just as Roberval arrived with a considerable reinforcement. Unsustained by Cartier, Roberval accomplished no more than a verification of previous discoveries. Remaining about

May  
23.

<sup>1</sup> Hazard, i. 19—21.

<sup>2</sup> Hakluyt, iii. 286—297.

<sup>3</sup> Holmes, in Annals, i. 70, 71, places the departure of Cartier May 23, 1540. He follows, undoubtedly, the date in Hak. iii. 286; which is, however, a misprint, or an error. For, first, the patent of Cartier was not issued till October, 1540; next, the annalist can find no occupation for Cartier in Canada for one whole

year; and, further, it is undisputed, that Roberval did not sail till April, 1542; and it is expressly said in the account of Roberval's voyage, Hak. iii. 295, that "Jaques Cartier and his company" were "sent with five sayles the yeere before." Belknap makes a similar mistake, i. 178.

<sup>4</sup> Chalmers, 82, places this event in 1545, without reason.

**CHAP.** a year in America, he abandoned his immense viceroyalty. Estates in Picardy were better than titles in

**1542.** Norimbega. His subjects must have been a sad company; during the winter, one was hanged for theft several were put in irons; and “divers persons, as well women as men,” were whipped. By these means quiet was preserved.<sup>1</sup> Perhaps the expedition on its return entered the Bay of Massachusetts;<sup>2</sup> the French diplomats always remembered, that Boston was built within the original limits of New France.

**1449.** The commission of Roberval was followed by no permanent results. It is confidently said,<sup>3</sup> that, at a later date, he again embarked for his viceroyalty, accompanied by a numerous train of adventurers; and, as he was never more heard of, he may have perished at sea.

**1550** Can it be a matter of surprise, that, for the next fifty years, no further discoveries were attempted by the government of a nation, which had become involved in the final struggle of feudalism against the central power of the monarch, of Calvinism against the ancient

**1562** religion of France? The colony of Huguenots at the

**1567.** South sprung from private enterprise; a government

**1572.** which could devise the massacre of St. Bartholomew, <sup>Aug.</sup> 24. was neither worthy nor able to found new states.

At length, under the mild and tolerant reign of Henry IV., the star of France emerged from the clouds of blood, treachery, and civil war, which had so long eclipsed her glory. The number and importance of the fishing stages had increased; in 1578 there were one hundred and fifty French vessels at Newfoundland, and regular voyages, for traffic with the natives, began to be successfully made. One French mariner, before 1609, had made more than forty voyages to the American coast. The purpose of founding a French empire in America was renewed, and an ample commission

was issued to the Marquis de la Roche, a nobleman of CHAP.  
I. Brittany. Yet his enterprise entirely failed. Sweep-  
ing the prisons of France, he established their tenants  
on the desolate Isle of Sable ; and the wretched exiles  
sighed for their dungeons. After some years, the few  
survivors received a pardon. The temporary residence  
in America was deemed a sufficient commutation for a  
long imprisonment.

The prospect of gain prompted the next enterprise. A monopoly of the fur-trade, with an ample patent, was obtained by Chauvin ; and Pontgravé, a merchant of 1600. St. Malo, shared the traffic. The voyage was repeated, 1601-2 for it was lucrative. The death of Chauvin prevented his settling a colony.

A firmer hope of success was entertained, when a 1603. company of merchants of Rouen was formed by the governor of Dieppe ; and Samuel Champlain, of Brouage, an able marine officer and a man of science, was appointed to direct the expedition. By his natural disposition, "delighting marvellously in these enterprises," Champlain became the father of the French settlements in Canada. He possessed a clear and penetrating understanding, with a spirit of cautious inquiry ; untiring perseverance, with great mobility ; indefatigable activity, with fearless courage. The account of his first expedition gives proof of sound judgment, accurate observation, and historical fidelity. It is full of exact details on the manners of the savage tribes, not less than the geography of the country ; and Quebec was already selected as the appropriate site for a fort.

Champlain returned to France just before an exclu- 1603. sive patent had been issued to a Calvinist, the able, Nov. 8. patriotic, and honest De Monts. The sovereignty of Acadia, the country from the fortieth to the forty-sixth

- CHAP. degree of latitude, that is, from Philadelphia to beyond  
Montreal; a still wider monopoly of the fur-trade; the  
**1603.** exclusive control of the soil, government, and trade; freedom of religion for Huguenot emigrants,—these were the privileges which the charter conceded. Idlers, and men without a profession, and all banished men, were doomed to lend him aid. A lucrative monopoly was added to the honors of territorial jurisdiction. Wealth and glory were alike expected.
- 1604.** An expedition was prepared without delay, and left  
**Mar. 7.** the shores of France, not to return till a permanent French settlement should be made in America. All New France was now contained in two ships, which followed the well-known path to Nova Scotia. The summer glided away, while the emigrants trafficked with the natives and explored the coasts. The harbor called Annapolis after the conquest of Acadia by Queen Anne, an excellent harbor, though difficult of access, possessing a small but navigable river, which abounded in fish, and is bordered by beautiful meadows, so pleased the imagination of Poutrincourt, a leader in the enterprise, that he sued for a grant of it from De Monts, and, naming it Port Royal, determined to reside there with his family. The company of De Monts made
- 1604.** their first attempt at a settlement on the island of St. Croix, at the mouth of the river of the same name.
- 1798.** The remains of their fortifications were still visible, when our eastern boundary was ascertained. Yet the island was so ill suited to their purposes, that, in the
- 1605.** following spring, they removed to Port Royal.
- For an agricultural colony, a milder climate was more desirable; in view of a settlement at the south, De
- 1605.** Monts explored and claimed for France the rivers, the coasts and the bays of New England, as far, at least, as Cape Cod. The numbers and hostility of the sav-

ages led him to delay a removal, since his colonists CHAP.  
I.  
were so few. Yet the purpose remained. Thrice, in ~~—~~<sup>1606.</sup> the spring of the following year, did Dupont, his lieu-  
tenant, attempt to complete the discovery. Twice he  
was driven back by adverse winds; and at the third Aug.  
attempt, his vessel was wrecked. Poutrincourt, who  
had visited France, and was now returned with sup-  
plies, himself renewed the design; but, meeting with Nov.  
disasters among the shoals of Cape Cod, he, too, re-  
turned to Port Royal. There the first French settle-  
ment on the American continent had been made; two  
years before James River was discovered, and three  
years before a cabin had been raised in Canada.

The possessions of Poutrincourt were confirmed by 1607.  
Henry IV.; the apostolic benediction of the Roman  
pontiff was solicited on families which exiled them-  
selves to evangelize infidels; Mary of Medici herself  
contributed money to support the missions, which the  
Marchioness de Guercheville protected; and by a com-  
pact with De Biencourt, the proprietary's son, the order  
of the Jesuits was enriched by an imposition on the  
fisheries and fur-trade.

The arrival of Jesuit priests was signalized by con- 1611.  
versions among the natives. In the following year, De June  
Biencourt and Father Biart explored the coast as far 12.  
as the Kennebec, and ascended that river. The Cani-  
bas, Algonquins of the Abenaki nations, touched by  
the confiding humanity of the French, listened rever-  
ently to the message of redemption; and, already hostile  
towards the English who had visited their coast, the  
tribes between the Penobscot and the Kennebec be-  
came the allies of France, and were cherished as a  
barrier against danger from English encroachments.

A French colony within the United States followed,  
under the auspices of De Guercheville and Mary of 1613.

CHAP. Medici; the rude intrenchments of St. Sauveur were <sup>I.</sup> raised by De Saussaye on the northern bank of the  
 1613. Penobscot. The conversion of the heathen was the motive to the settlement; the natives venerated Biart as a messenger from heaven; and under the summer sky, round a cross in the centre of the hamlet, matins and vespers were regularly chanted. France and the Roman religion had appropriated the soil of Maine.

Meantime the remonstrances of French merchants had effected the revocation of the monopoly of De Monts, and a company of merchants of Dieppe and St.

1608. Malo had founded Quebec. The design was executed July 3. by Champlain, who aimed not at the profits of trade, but at the glory of founding a state. The city of Quebec was begun; that is to say, rude cottages were framed, a few fields were cleared, and one or two gar-  
 1609. dens planted. The next year, that singularly bold adventurer, attended but by two Europeans, joined a mixed party of Hurons from Montreal, and Algonquins from Quebec, in an expedition against the Iroquois, or Five Nations, in the north of New York. He ascended the Sorel, and explored the lake which bears his name, and perpetuates his memory.

The Huguenots had been active in plans of coloniza-  
 1610. tion. The death of Henry IV. deprived them of their powerful protector. Yet the zeal of De Monts survived, and he quickened the courage of Champlain. After the  
 1611. short supremacy of Charles de Bourbon, the Prince of  
 1612. Condé, an avowed protector of the Calvinists, became  
 1615. viceroy of New France; through his intercession, merchants of St. Malo, Rouen, and La Rochelle, obtained a colonial patent from the king; and Champlain, now sure of success, embarked once more for the New World, accompanied by monks of the order of St. Francis. Again he invades the territory of the Iroquois in New York.

Wounded, and repulsed, and destitute of guides, he <sup>CHAP.</sup>  
<sup>I.</sup> spends the first winter after his return to America in ~~—~~  
 the country of the Hurons ; and a knight errant among <sup>1615,</sup>  
 the forests carries his language, religion, and influence, <sup>1616.</sup>  
 even to the hamlets of Algonquins, near Lake Nipissing.

Religious disputes combined with commercial jealousies to check the progress of the colony ; yet in the <sup>1617</sup> summer, <sup>to</sup> when the Pilgrims were leaving Leyden, in obedience to the wishes of the unhappy Montmorenci, the new viceroy, Champlain, began a fort. The merchants grudged the expense. “It is not best to yield to the passions of men,” was his reply ; “they sway but for a season ; it is a duty to respect the future ;” and in a few years the castle St. Louis, so long the place <sup>1624.</sup> of council against the Iroquois and against New England, was durably founded on “a commanding cliff.”

In the same year, the viceroyalty was transferred to <sup>1624.</sup> the religious enthusiast, Henry de Levi ; and through his influence, in <sup>1625.</sup> just a year after Jesuits had reached the sources of the Ganges and Thibet, the banks of the St. Lawrence received priests of the order, which was destined to carry the cross to Lake Superior and the West.

The presence of Jesuits and Calvinists led to dissensions. The savages caused disquiet. But the persevering founder of Quebec appealed to the Royal Council and to Richelieu ; and though disasters inter- <sup>1627.</sup> vened, CHAMPLAIN successfully established the authority of the French on the banks of the St. Lawrence, in the territory which became his country. “The father of New France” lies buried in the land which he colonized. Thus the humble industry of the fishermen of <sup>1635.</sup> Normandy and Brittany promised their country the acquisition of an empire.

## CHAPTER II.

## SPANIARDS IN THE UNITED STATES.

CHAP. II. I HAVE traced the progress of events, which, for a season, gave to France the uncertain possession of Acadia and Canada. The same nation laid claim to large and undefined regions at the southern extremity of our republic. The expedition of Francis I. discovered the continent in a latitude south of the coast which Cabot had explored ; but Verrazzani had yet been anticipated. The claim to Florida, on the ground of discovery, belonged to the Spanish, and was successfully asserted.

Extraordinary success had kindled in the Spanish nation an equally extraordinary enthusiasm. No sooner had the New World revealed itself to their enterprise, than the valiant men, who had won laurels under Ferdinand among the mountains of Andalusia, sought a new career of glory in more remote adventures. The weapons that had been tried in the battles with the Moors, and the military skill that had been acquired in the romantic conquest of Granada, were now turned against the feeble occupants of America. The passions of avarice and religious zeal were strangely blended ; and the heroes of Spain sailed to the west, as if they had been bound on a new crusade, where infinite wealth was to reward their piety. The Spanish nation had become infatuated with a fondness for novelties ; the “chivalry of the ocean” despised the range of Europe,

as too narrow, and offering to their extravagant ambition CHAP.  
nothing beyond mediocrity. America was the region <sup>II.</sup> ~~of~~ romance, where the heated imagination could indulge in the boldest delusions ; where the simple natives ignorantly wore the most precious ornaments ; and, by the side of the clear runs of water, the sands sparkled with gold. What way soever, says the historian of the ocean, the Spaniards are called, with a beck only, or a whispering voice, to any thing rising above water, they speedily prepare themselves to fly, and forsake certainties under the hope of more brilliant success. To carve out provinces with the sword ; to divide the spoils of empires ; to plunder the accumulated treasures of some ancient Indian dynasty ; to return from a roving expedition with a crowd of enslaved captives and a profusion of spoils,—soon became the ordinary dreams, in which the excited minds of the Spaniards delighted to indulge. Ease, fortune, life, all were squandered in the pursuit of a game, where, if the issue was uncertain, success was sometimes obtained, greater than the boldest imagination had dared to anticipate. Is it strange that these adventurers were often superstitious ? The New World and its wealth were in themselves so wonderful, that why should credit be withheld from the wildest fictions ? Why should not the hope be indulged, that the laws of nature themselves would yield to the desires of men so fortunate and so brave ?

Juan Ponce de Leon was the discoverer of Florida. 1512. His youth had been passed in military service in Spain ; and, during the wars in Granada, he had shared in the wild exploits of predatory valor. No sooner had the return of the first voyage across the Atlantic given an assurance of a New World, than he hastened to participate in the dangers and the spoils of adventure in

CHAP. America. He was a fellow voyager of Columbus in his  
II. second expedition. In the wars of Hispaniola he had  
1493. been a gallant soldier; and Ovando had rewarded him  
with the government of the eastern province of that  
island. From the hills in his jurisdiction, he could be-  
hold, across the clear waters of a placid sea, the magni-  
ficent vegetation of Porto Rico, which distance ren-  
dered still more admirable, as it was seen through the  
1508. transparent atmosphere of the tropics. A visit to the  
island stimulated the cupidity of avarice; and Ponce  
1509. aspired to the government. He obtained the station:  
inured to sanguinary war, he was inexorably severe in  
his administration: he oppressed the natives; he  
amassed wealth. But his commission as governor of  
Porto Rico conflicted with the claims of the family of  
Columbus; and policy, as well as justice, required his  
removal. Ponce was displaced.

Yet, in the midst of an archipelago, and in the vicin-  
ity of a continent, what need was there for a brave sol-  
dier to pine at the loss of power over a wild though fer-  
tile island? Age had not tempered the love of enter-  
prise: he longed to advance his fortunes by the con-  
quest of a kingdom, and to retrieve a reputation which  
was not without a blemish.<sup>1</sup> Besides; the veteran sol-  
dier, whose cheeks had been furrowed by hard service,  
as well as by years, had heard, and had believed the  
tale, of a fountain which possessed virtues to renovate  
the life of those who should bathe in its stream, or give  
a perpetuity of youth to the happy man who should  
drink of its ever-flowing waters. So universal was this  
tradition, that it was credited in Spain, not by all the  
people and the court only, but by those who were dis-

<sup>1</sup> Peter Martyr, d. iii. l. x.

tinguished for virtue and intelligence.<sup>1</sup> Nature was to CHAP.  
discover the secrets for which alchemy had toiled in <sup>II.</sup>  
vain ; and the elixir of life was to flow from a perpetual 1509.  
fountain of the New World, in the midst of a country  
glittering with gems and gold.

Ponce embarked at Porto Rico, with a squadron of 1512. Mar.  
three ships, fitted out at his own expense, for his voyage 3.  
to fairy land. He touched at Guanahani ; he sailed among the Bahamas ; but the laws of nature remained inexorable. On Easter Sunday, which the Spaniards call Pascua Florida, land was seen. It was supposed to be an island, and received the name of Florida, from the day on which it was discovered, and from the aspect of the forests, which were then brilliant with a profusion of blossoms, and gay with the fresh verdure of early spring. Bad weather would not allow the squadron to approach land : at length the aged soldier was able to go on shore, in the latitude of thirty degrees and eight minutes ; some miles, therefore, to the north of St. Augustine. The territory was claimed for Spain. Ponce remained for many weeks to investigate the coast which he had discovered ; though the currents of the gulf-stream, and the islands, between which the channel was yet unknown, threatened shipwreck. He doubled Cape Florida ; he sailed among the group which he named Tortugas ; and, despairing of entire success, he returned to Porto Rico, leaving a trusty follower to continue the research. The Indians had every where displayed determined hostility. Ponce de Leon remained an old man ; but Spanish commerce acquired a new channel through the Gulf of Florida, and Spain a new province, which imagination could esteem immeasurably rich, since its interior was unknown.

<sup>1</sup> Peter Martyr, d. vii. l. vii., and d. ii. c. x.

CHAP. II. The government of Florida was the reward which Ponce received from the king of Spain ; but the dignity was accompanied with the onerous condition, that he should colonize the country which he was appointed to rule. Preparations in Spain, and an expedition against the Caribbee Indians, delayed his return to Florida. When, after a long interval, he proceeded with two ships to take possession of his province and select a site for a colony, his company was attacked by the Indians with implacable fury. Many Spaniards were killed ; the survivors were forced to hurry to their ships ; Ponce de Leon himself, mortally wounded by an arrow, returned to Cuba to die. So ended the adventurer, who had coveted immeasurable wealth, and had hoped for perpetual youth. The discoverer of Florida had desired immortality on earth, and gained its shadow.<sup>1</sup>

1516. Meantime, commerce may have discovered a path to Florida ; and Diego Miruelo, a careless sea-captain, sailing from Havana, is said to have approached the coast, and trafficked with the natives. He could not tell distinctly in what harbor he had anchored ; he brought home specimens of gold, obtained in exchange for toys ; and his report swelled the rumors, already credited, of the wealth of the country. Florida had at once obtained a governor ; it now constituted a part of a bishopric.<sup>2</sup>

1517. The expedition of Francisco Fernandez, of Cordova, leaving the port of Havana, and sailing west by south,

<sup>1</sup> On Ponce de Leon, I have used Herrera, d. i. l. ix. c. x. xi. and xii., and d. i. l. x. c. xvi. Peter Martyr, d. iv. l. v., and d. v. l. i., and d. vii. l. iv. In Hakluyt, v. 320, 333, and 416. Gomara, Hist. Gen. de las Ind. c. xlv. Garcilaso de la Vega, Hist. de la Florida, l. i. c. iii., and l. vi. c. xxii. Cardenas z Cano, En-

sayo Cronologico para la Hist. Gen. de la Florida, d. i. p. 1, 2, and 5. Ed. 1723, folio. The author's true name is Andres Gonzalez de Barcia. Navarette, Coleccion, iii. 50—53. Compare, also, Eden and Willes, fol. 228, 229. Purchas, i. 957.

<sup>2</sup> Florida del Inca, Vega, l. i. c. ii. Ens. Cron. d. i. Año MDXVI.

discovered the province of Yucatan and the Bay of Campeachy. He turned his prow to the north; but, <sup>II.</sup> ~~—~~ whatever may be asserted by careless historians, he was by no means able to trace the coast to any harbor which Ponce de Leon had visited.<sup>1</sup> At a place where he had landed for supplies of water, his company was suddenly assailed, and he himself mortally wounded.

The pilot whom Fernandez had employed soon conducted another squadron to the same shores. The knowledge already acquired was extended, and under happier auspices; and Grijalva, the commander of the fleet, explored the coast from Yucatan towards Panuco. The masses of gold which he collected, the rumors of the empire of Montezuma, its magnificence and its extent, heedlessly confirmed by the costly presents of the unsuspecting natives, were sufficient to inflame the coldest imagination, and excited the enterprise of Cortes. The voyage did not reach the shores of Florida.<sup>2</sup>

But while Grijalva was opening the way to the conquest of Mexico, the line of the American coast, from the Tortugas to Panuco, is said to have been examined, yet not with care, by an expedition which was planned, if not conducted, by Francisco Garay, the governor of Jamaica. The general outline of the Gulf of Mexico now became known.<sup>3</sup> Garay encountered the determined hostility of the natives; a danger which eventually proved less disastrous to him than the rivalry of

<sup>1</sup> The *Ensayo Cronologico para la Historia General de la Florida* is not sufficiently discriminating. The error asserted with confidence in d. i. Año MDXVII., may be corrected from Gomara, c. lii. Ant. de Solis, l. i. c. vi. Peter Martyr, d. iv. l. i.

and ii. Herrera, d. ii. l. ii. c. xvii. and xviii.

<sup>2</sup> Peter Martyr, d. iv. l. iii. and iv. Herrera, d. ii. l. iii. c. ix. Ant. de Solis, l. i. c. vii., viii., ix. Gomara, c. xl ix.

<sup>3</sup> Peter Martyr, d. v. l. i. Gomara, c. xlvi.

CHAP. his own countrymen. The adventurers in New Spain <sup>II.</sup> would endure no independent neighbor: the governor <sup>1518.</sup> of Jamaica became involved in a career, which, as it ultimately tempted him to dispute the possession of a province with Cortes, led him to the loss of fortune and an inglorious death. The progress of discovery along the southern boundary of the United States was but little advanced by the expedition, of which the circumstances have been variously related.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1520.</sup> A voyage for slaves brought the Spaniards still further upon the northern coast. A company of seven, of whom the most distinguished was Lucas Vasquez de Ayllon, fitted out two slave ships from St. Domingo, in quest of laborers for their plantations and mines. From the Bahama Islands, they passed to the coast of South Carolina, a country which was called Chicora. The Combahee<sup>2</sup> River received the name of the Jordan: the name of St. Helena, given to a cape, now belongs to the sound. The natives of this region had not yet had cause to fear Europeans; their natural fastnesses had not yet been invaded; and if they fled at the approach of men from the slave ships, it was rather from timid wonder than from a sense of peril. Gifts were interchanged; a liberal hospitality was offered to the strangers; confidence was established. At length the natives were invited to visit the ships; they came in cheerful throngs; the decks were covered. Immediately the ships weighed anchor; the sails were unfurled, and the prows turned towards St. Domingo. Husbands were torn from their wives, and children from their parents. Thus the seeds of war were lavishly

<sup>1</sup> Peter Martyr, d. v. l. i. Go- T. Southey's History of the West  
mara, c. xlvii. *Ensayo Cronologico,* Indies, i. 135.  
3, 4. Herrera, d. ii. l. iii. c. vii. <sup>2</sup> Holmes's Annals, i. 47.

scattered where peace only had prevailed, and enmity CHAP.  
II.  
was spread through the regions where friendship had ~~~  
been cherished. The crime was unprofitable, and was 1520.  
finally avenged. One of the returning ships foundered  
at sea, and the guilty and guiltless perished ; many of  
the captives in the other sickened and died.

The events that followed mark the character of the times. Vasquez, repairing to Spain, boasted of his expedition, as if it entitled him to reward, and the emperor, Charles V., acknowledged his claim. In those days, the Spanish monarch conferred a kind of appointment, which, however strange its character may appear, still has its parallel in history. Not only were provinces granted ; countries were distributed to be subdued ; and Lucas Vasquez de Ayllon begged to be appointed to the conquest of Chicora. After long entreaty, he obtained his suit.

The issue of the new and bolder enterprise was 1524 disastrous to the undertaker. He wasted his fortune in preparations ; his largest ship was stranded in the 1525. River Jordan ; many of his men were killed by the natives, whom wrongs had quickened to active resistance ; he himself escaped only to suffer from wounded pride ; and, conscious of having done nothing worthy of being remembered, the sense of humiliation is said to have hastened his death.<sup>1</sup>

The love of adventure did not wholly extinguish the 1524. desire for maritime discovery. When Cortes was able to pause from his success in Mexico, and devise further schemes for ingratiating himself with the Spanish monarch, he proposed to solve the problem of a north-

<sup>1</sup> Peter Martyr, d. vii. c. ii. Gomara, c. xlvi. Herrera, d. iii. l. viii. c. viii. Herrera's West Indies, in Purchas, iv. 869. Galvano, in Hakluyt, iv. 429. *Ensayo Cronologico*, 4, 5, 6, 8, 9, and 160. Roberts's Florida, 27, 28. The Portuguese Relation, c. xiv.

CHAP. west passage—the secret which has so long baffled  
 II. the enterprise of the most courageous and persevering  
 1524. navigators. He deemed the existence of the passage  
 unquestionable, and, by simultaneous voyages along the  
 American coast, on the Pacific, and on the Atlantic, he  
 hoped to complete the discovery, to which Sebastian  
 Cabot had pointed the way.<sup>1</sup>

The design of Cortes remained but the offer of  
 1525. loyalty. A voyage to the north-west was really undertaken by Stephen Gomez, an experienced naval officer, who had been with Magellan in the first memorable passage into the Pacific Ocean. The expedition was decreed by the council for the Indies, in the hope of discovering the northern route to India, which, notwithstanding it had been sought for in vain, was yet universally believed to exist. His ship entered the bays of New York and New England; on old Spanish maps, that portion of our territory is marked as the land of Gomez. Failing to discover a passage, and fearful to return without success and without a freight, he filled his vessel with robust Indians, to be sold as slaves. Brilliant expectations had been raised; and the conclusion was esteemed despicably ludicrous. The Spaniards scorned to repeat their voyages to the cold and frozen north; in the south, and in the south only, they looked for “great and exceeding riches.”<sup>2</sup> The adventure of Gomez had no political results. It had been furthered by the enemies of Cabot, who was, at that time, in the service of Spain; and it established the reputation of the Bristol mariner.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Quarta Carta, o Relacion de Don Fernando Cortes. S. xix. in Barcia's Historiadores Primitivos, i. 151, 152. The same may be found in the Italian of Ramusio, iii. fol. 294, ed. 1665.

<sup>2</sup> Peter Martyr, d. viii. l. x.  
<sup>3</sup> Peter Martyr, d. vi. l. x., and d. viii. l. x. Gomara, c. xl. Herrera, d. iii. l. viii. c. viii.

But neither the fondness of the Spanish monarch for CHAP.  
extensive domains, nor the desire of the nobility for ~~new~~<sup>II.</sup> new governments, nor the passion of adventurers for 1525. undiscovered wealth, would permit the abandonment of the conquest of Florida. Permission to invade that 1526 territory was next sought for and obtained by Pamphilo de Narvaez, a man of no great virtue or reputation. This is the same person who had been sent by the jealous governor of Cuba to take Cortes prisoner, and who, after having declared him an outlaw, was himself easily defeated. He lost an eye in the affray, and his own troops deserted him. When brought into the presence of the man whom he had promised to arrest, he said to him, "Esteem it great good fortune, that you have taken me captive." Cortes replied, and with truth, "It is the least of the things I have done in Mexico."<sup>1</sup>

The territory, placed at the mercy of Narvaez, extended to the River of Palms; further, therefore, to the west, than the territory which was afterwards included in Louisiana. His expedition was as unsuccessful as his attempt against Cortes, but it was memorable for its disasters. Of three hundred men, of 1528. whom eighty were mounted, but four or five returned. The valor of the natives, thirst, famine, and pestilence, the want of concert between the ships and the men set on shore, the errors of judgment in the commanders, rapidly melted away the unsuccessful company. It is not possible to ascertain, with exactness, the point where Narvaez first landed in Florida; probably it April. was at a bay a little east of the meridian of Cape St. Antony, in Cuba; it may have been, therefore, not far

<sup>1</sup> Cortes, *Carta de Relacion*, c. i. 44. Gomara, *Cronica de la Nueva s. xxxv.—xxxvii. in Barcia, i. 36—Espana*, c. xcvi.—ci.

CHAP. from the bay now called Appalachee. The party soon  
<sup>II.</sup> struck into the interior; they knew not where they  
1528. were, nor whither they were going; and followed the  
directions of the natives. These, with a sagacity  
careful to save themselves from danger, described the  
distant territory as full of gold, and freed themselves  
from the presence of troublesome guests, by exciting a  
hope that covetousness could elsewhere be amply grati-  
fied. The town of Appalachee, which was thought to  
contain immense accumulations of wealth, proved to be  
an inconsiderable collection of wigwams. It was prob-  
ably in the region of the Bay of Pensacola, that the  
remnant of the party, after a ramble of eight hundred  
miles, finally came again upon the sea, in a condition  
June. of extreme penury. Here they manufactured rude  
22. boats, in which none but desperate men would have  
embarked; and Narvaez and most of his companions,  
after having passed nearly six months in Florida, per-  
ished in a storm near the mouth of the Mississippi.<sup>1</sup>

Sept. One ship's company was wrecked upon an island; most  
22. of those who were saved died of famine. The four  
1528. who ultimately reached Mexico by land succeeded only  
to 1536. after years of hardships. The simple narrative of their  
wanderings, their wretchedness, and their courageous  
1536. enterprise, could not but have been full of marvels;  
May 15. their rambles, extending across Louisiana and the  
northern part of Mexico to the shores of the Pacific  
Ocean in Sonora, were almost as wide as those of Lewis  
and Clark to the sources of the Missouri and the mouth  
of the Columbia River; the story, which one of them  
published, and of which the truth was affirmed, on oath,  
before a magistrate, is disfigured by bold exaggerations

<sup>1</sup> Prince, 86, a safe interpreter.

and the wildest fictions.<sup>1</sup> The knowledge of the bays and rivers of Florida, on the Gulf of Mexico, was not essentially increased; the strange tales of miraculous cures, of natural prodigies and of the resuscitation of the dead, were harmless falsehoods; the wanderers, on their return, persevered in the far more fatal assertion, that Florida was the richest country in the world.<sup>2</sup>

The assertion was readily believed, even by those to whom the wealth of Mexico and Peru was familiarly known. To no one was credulity more disastrous than to Ferdinand de Soto, a native of Xeres, and now an ambitious courtier. He had himself gained fame and fortune by military service in the New World. He had been the favorite companion of Pizarro in the conquest of Peru, where he had distinguished himself for conduct and valor. At the storming of Cusco, he had surpassed his companions in arms. He assisted in arresting the unhappy Atahualpa; and he shared in the immense ransom with which the credulous inca purchased the promise of freedom. Perceiving the angry divisions which were threatened by the jealousy of the Spaniards in Peru, Soto had seasonably withdrawn, with his share of the spoils, and now appeared in Spain to enjoy his reputation, to display his opulence, and to solicit ad-

<sup>1</sup> On Narvaez, the original work is, *Naufragios de Alvar Nuñez Cabeca de Vaca, en la Florida*; in Barcia, ii. 1—43. There is an Italian version in Ramusio, iii. fol. 310—330. The English version, in Purchas, iv. 1499—1528, is from the Italian. Compare Gomara, c. xlvi.; Herrera, d. iv. l. iv. c. iv—vii., and d. iv. l. v. c. v.; Purchas, i. 957, 958—962. *Examen Apologetico*, in Barcia, i. at the end, does not confer authority on Nuñez. The skepticism of Benzo, in Calveto's *Nova Novi Orbis Historiae*, l. ii. c. xiii.

206, is praiseworthy. Compare, also, Roberts's *Florida*, 28—32, and a note in Holmes's *Annals*, i. 59; *Ensayo Cronologico*, 10; Vega, l. ii. p. ii. c. vi. Hints may also be found scattered through Vega's *Historia de la Florida*, and in the Portuguese account in Hakluyt. Humboldt, *Nouv. Esp.* ii. 435.

<sup>2</sup> Virginia Valued; the Portuguese Account; Dedication in Hakluyt, v. 479; Herrera, d. iii. l. viii. c. viii.; Hakluyt, v. 484; Vega, l. i. c. v.

CHAP. vancement. His reception was triumphant; success  
<sup>II.</sup>  
 of all kinds awaited him. The daughter of the distin-  
 1537. guished nobleman, under whom he had first served as  
 a poor adventurer, became his wife;<sup>1</sup> and the special  
 favor of Charles V. invited his ambition to prefer a large  
 request. It had ever been believed, that the depths of  
 the continent at the north concealed cities as magnifi-  
 cent, and temples as richly endowed, as any which had  
 yet been plundered within the limits of the tropics. Soto  
 desired to rival Cortes in glory, and surpass Pizarro in  
 wealth. Blinded by avarice and the love of power, he  
 repaired to Valladolid, and demanded permission to con-  
 quer Florida at his own cost; and Charles V. readily  
 conceded to so renowned a commander the government  
 of the Isle of Cuba, with absolute power over the im-  
 mense territory, to which the name of Florida was still  
 vaguely applied.<sup>2</sup>

No sooner was the design of the new expedition published in Spain, than the wildest hopes were indulged. How brilliant must be the prospect, since even the conqueror of Peru was willing to hazard his fortune and the greatness of his name! Adventurers assembled as volunteers; many of them, people of noble birth and good estates. Houses and vineyards, lands for tillage, and rows of olive-trees in the Ajarrafe of Seville, were sold, as in the times of the crusades, to  
 1538. obtain the means of military equipments. The port of San Lucar of Barrameda was crowded with those who hastened to solicit permission to share in the enterprise. Even soldiers of Portugal desired to be enrolled for the service. A muster was held; the Portuguese appeared

<sup>1</sup> Portuguese Relation, c. i.; in Vega, l. i. c. i.; Herrera, d. iv. l. i.  
 Hakluyt, v. 483.  
<sup>c. iii.</sup>

<sup>2</sup> Portuguese Relation, c. i. 483;

in the glittering array of burnished armor; and the CHAP.  
Castilians, brilliant with hopes, were "very gallant with <sup>II.</sup> silk upon silk." Soto gave directions as to the arma- 1538.  
ment; from the numerous aspirants, he selected for his  
companions six hundred men in the bloom of life, the  
flower of the peninsula; many persons of good account,  
who had sold estates for their equipments, were obliged  
to remain behind.<sup>1</sup>

The fleet sailed as gayly as if it had been but a  
holiday excursion of a bridal party. In Cuba, the pre-  
caution was used to send vessels to Florida to explore  
a harbor; and two Indians, brought as captives to  
Havana, invented such falsehoods as they perceived  
would be acceptable. They conversed by signs; and  
the signs were interpreted as affirming that Florida  
abounded in gold. The news spread great content-  
ment; Soto and his troops were restless with longing  
for the hour of their departure to the conquest of "the  
richest country which had yet been discovered."<sup>2</sup> The  
infection spread in Cuba; and Vasco Porcallo, an aged  
and a wealthy man, lavished his fortune in magnificent  
equipments.<sup>3</sup>

Soto had been welcomed in Cuba by long and bril- 1539.  
liant festivals and rejoicings. At length, all prepa- May.  
rations were completed; leaving his wife to govern the  
island, he and his company, full of unbounded expec-  
tations, embarked for Florida; and, in about a fortnight,  
his fleet anchored in the Bay of Spiritu Santo.<sup>4</sup> The  
soldiers went on shore; the horses, between two and

<sup>1</sup> Port. Rel. c. ii. and iii.; Vega, l. i. c. v. and vi. When the author-  
ties vary, I follow that which is least highly colored, and give the smaller number. Vega says there were a thousand men, and he strenuously vindicates his own integrity and love of truth. He wrote from

the accounts of eye-witnesses, whom he examined; he was not himself an eye-witness.

<sup>2</sup> Portuguese Relation, c. i.

<sup>3</sup> Vega, l. i. c. xii.

<sup>4</sup> Portuguese Relation, c. vii.; Vega, l. i. part i. c. i. 23.

CHAP. three hundred in number, were disembarked ; and the  
<sup>II.</sup>  
 ~~~~~ men of the expedition stood upon the soil which they  
 1539. had so eagerly desired to tread. Soto would listen to no augury but that of success ; and, like Cortes, he refused to retain his ships, lest they should afford a temptation to retreat. Most of them were sent to Havana.<sup>1</sup> The aged Porcallo, a leading man in the enterprise, soon grew alarmed, and began to remember his establishments in Cuba. It had been a principal object with him to obtain slaves for his estates and mines ; despairing of success, and terrified with the marshes and thick forests, he also sailed for the island, where he could enjoy his wealth in security. Soto was indignant at the desertion, but concealed his anger.<sup>2</sup>

And now began the nomadic march of the adventurers ; a numerous body of horsemen, besides infantry, completely armed ; a force exceeding in numbers and equipments the famous expeditions against the empires of Mexico and Peru. Every thing was provided that experience in former invasions and the cruelty of avarice could suggest ; chains<sup>3</sup> for captives, and the instruments of a forge ; arms of all kinds then in use, and bloodhounds as auxiliaries against the feeble natives ;<sup>4</sup> ample stores of food, and, as a last resort, a drove of hogs, which would soon swarm in the favoring climate, where the forests and the Indian maize furnished abundant sustenance. It was a roving expedition of gallant freebooters in quest of fortune. It was a romantic stroll of men whom avarice rendered ferocious, through unexplored regions, over unknown paths ; wherever rumor might point to the residence of some chieftain with more than Peruvian wealth, or the ill-

<sup>1</sup> Portuguese Relation, c. x.

<sup>2</sup> Portuguese Relation, c. x.; Vega, l. ii. part i. c. xi. and xii.

<sup>3</sup> Port. Rel. c. xi. and xii.

<sup>4</sup> Port. Rel. c. xi. and elsewhere.

interpreted signs of the ignorant natives might seem to CHAP.  
promise a harvest of gold. The passion for cards now ~~II.~~  
first raged among the groves of the south; and often 1539  
at the resting-places groups of listless adventurers  
clustered together to enjoy the excitement of desperate  
gaming. Religious zeal was also united with avarice:  
there were not only cavalry and foot-soldiers, with all  
that belongs to warlike array; twelve priests, besides  
other ecclesiastics, accompanied the expedition.  
Florida was to become Catholic during scenes of  
robbery and carnage. Ornaments, such as are used at  
the service of mass,<sup>1</sup> were carefully provided; every  
festival was to be kept; every religious practice to be  
observed. As the troop marched through the wilder-  
ness, the solemn processions, which the usages of the  
church enjoined, were scrupulously instituted.<sup>2</sup>

The wanderings of the first season brought the com- 1539.  
pany from the Bay of Spiritu Santo to the country of  
the Appalachians, east of the Flint River, and not far  
from the head of the Bay of Appalachee.<sup>3</sup> The names  
of the intermediate places cannot be identified. The  
march was tedious and full of dangers. The Indians  
were always hostile; the two captives of the former  
expedition escaped; a Spaniard, who had been kept in  
slavery from the time of Narvaez, could give no accounts  
of any country where there was silver or gold.<sup>4</sup> The  
guides would purposely lead the Castilians astray, and  
involve them in morasses; even though death, under  
the fangs of the bloodhounds, was the certain punish-  
ment. The whole company grew dispirited, and

June  
to  
Oct.  
27.

<sup>1</sup> Portuguese Relation, c. xix.

Herrera confirms the statement.

<sup>2</sup> Portuguese Relation, c. xx., and  
in various places, speaks of the  
friars and priests. Vega, l. i. c.  
vi. 9; l. iv. c. vi. and elsewhere.

<sup>3</sup> Portuguese Relation, c. xii.;  
Vega, l. ii. part ii. c. iv.; McCul-  
loh's Researches, 524.

<sup>4</sup> Port. Relation, c. ix.

- CHAP. desired the governor to return, since the country opened  
<sup>II.</sup>  
 no brilliant prospects. "I will not turn back," said  
**1539.** Soto, "till I have seen the poverty of the country with  
 my own eyes."<sup>1</sup> The hostile Indians, who were taken  
 prisoners, were in part put to death, in part enslaved.  
 These were led in chains, with iron collars about their  
 necks; their service was, to grind the maize and to  
 carry the baggage. An exploring party discovered  
 Ochus,<sup>2</sup> the harbor of Pensacola; and a message was  
 sent to Cuba, desiring that in the ensuing year supplies  
 for the expedition might be sent to that place.<sup>3</sup>
- 1540.** Early in the spring of the following year, the wan-  
<sup>Mar.</sup>  
<sup>3.</sup> derers renewed their march, with an Indian guide, who  
 promised to lead the way to a country, governed, it was  
 said, by a woman, and where gold so abounded, that  
 the art of melting and refining it was understood. He  
 described the process so well, that the credulous Span-  
 iards took heart, and exclaimed, "He must have seen  
 it, or the devil has been his teacher!" The Indian  
 appears to have pointed towards the Gold Region of  
 North Carolina.<sup>4</sup> The adventurers, therefore, eagerly  
 hastened to the north-east; they passed the Alata-  
 maha; they admired the fertile valleys of Georgia,  
 rich, productive, and full of good rivers. They passed  
 a northern tributary of the Alatamaha, and a southern  
 branch of the Ogeechee; and, at length, came upon the  
**April.** Ogeechee itself, which, in April, flowed with a full  
 channel and a strong current. Much of the time, the  
 Spaniards were in wild solitudes; they suffered for  
 want of salt and of meat. Their Indian guide affected  
 madness; but "they said a gospel over him, and the

<sup>1</sup> Portuguese Relation, c. xi.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid, c. xii.

<sup>3</sup> Portuguese Relation, c. vii.—

xii. Vega, l. ii. part i. and ii.

<sup>4</sup> Silliman's Journal, xxiii. 8, 9.

fit left him." Again he involved them in pathless CHAP.  
wilds ; and then he would have been torn in pieces by ~~the~~<sup>II.</sup> the dogs, if he had not still been needed to assist the <sup>1540</sup> interpreter. Of four Indian captives, who were questioned, one bluntly answered, he knew no country such as they described ; the governor ordered him to be burnt, for what was esteemed his falsehood. The sight of the execution quickened the invention of his companions ; and the Spaniards made their way to the small Indian settlement of Cutifa-Chiqui. A dagger and a rosary were found here ; the story of the Indians traced them to the expedition of Vasquez de Ayllon ; and a two days' journey would reach, it was believed, the harbor of St. Helena. The soldiers thought of home, and desired either to make a settlement on the fruitful soil around them, or to return. The governor was "a stern man, and of few words." Willingly hearing the opinions of others, he was inflexible, when he had once declared his own mind ; and all his followers, "condescending to his will," continued to indulge delusive hopes.<sup>1</sup>

The direction of the march was now to the north ; May  
to the comparatively sterile country of the Cherokees,<sup>2</sup> 3. and in part through a district in which gold is now found. The inhabitants were poor, but gentle ; they liberally offered such presents as their habits of life permitted—deer skins and wild hens. Soto could hardly have crossed the mountains, so as to enter the basin of the Tennessee River ;<sup>3</sup> it seems, rather, that he passed from the head-waters of the Savannah, or the Chattahoochee, to the head-waters of the Coosa. The name

<sup>1</sup> Portuguese Relation, c. xiii. and xiv.; Vega, l. iii. c. ii.—xvii. Compare Belknap, i. 188. I cannot follow McCulloh, 524. <sup>2</sup> Nuttall's Arkansas, 124; McCulloh's Researches, 524. <sup>3</sup> Martin's Louisiana, i. 11.

CHAP. of Canasauga, a village at which he halted, is still  
<sup>II.</sup>  
~~—~~ given to a branch of the latter stream. For several  
1540. months, the Spaniards were in the valleys which send  
their waters to the Bay of Mobile ; Chiaha was an  
island distant about a hundred miles from Canasauga.  
An exploring party, which was sent to the north, were  
appalled by the aspect of the Appalachian chain, and  
pronounced the mountains impassable. They had  
looked for mines of copper and gold ; and their only  
plunder was a buffalo robe.<sup>1</sup>

July 26. In the latter part of July, the Spaniards were at Coosa. In the course of the season, they had occasion to praise the wild grape of the country, the same, perhaps, which has since been thought worthy of culture, and to admire the luxuriant fields of maize, which were springing from the fertile plains of Alabama. A southerly direction led the train to Tuscaloosa ; nor was it long before the wanderers reached a considerable town on the Alabama, above the junction of the Tombecbee, and about one hundred miles, or six days' journey, from Pensacola. The town was called Mavilla, or Mobile, a name which is still preserved, and applied, not to the bay only, but to the river, after the union of its numerous tributaries. The Spaniards, tired of lodging in the fields, desired to occupy the town ; the Indians rose to resist the invaders, whom they distrusted and feared. A battle ensued ; the terrors of their cavalry gave the victory to the Spaniards. I know not if a more bloody Indian fight ever occurred on the soil of the United States : the town was set on fire ; and two thousand five hundred Indians are said to have been slain, suffocated, or burned. They had

<sup>1</sup> Portuguese Relation, c. xv. 504—506 ; Vega, l. iii. c. xvii.—xxii. 134—141.

fought with desperate courage ; and, but for the flames, which consumed their light and dense settlements, they would have effectually repulsed the invaders. “ Of the Christians, eighteen died ; ” one hundred and fifty were wounded with arrows ; twelve horses were slain, and seventy hurt. The flames had not spared the baggage of the Spaniards ; it was within the town, and was entirely consumed.<sup>1</sup>

Meanwhile, ships from Cuba had arrived at Ochus, now Pensacola. Soto was too proud to confess his failure. He had made no important discoveries ; he had gathered no stores of silver and gold, which he might send to tempt new adventurers ; the fires of Mobile had consumed the curious collections which he had made. It marks the resolute cupidity and stubborn pride with which the expedition was conducted, that he determined to send no news of himself, until, like Cortes, he had found some rich country.<sup>2</sup>

But the region above the mouth of the Mobile was populous and hostile, and yet too poor to promise plunder. Soto retreated towards the north ; his troops already reduced, by sickness and warfare, to five hundred men. A month passed away, before he reached winter-quarters at Chicaça, a small town in the country of the Chickasaws, in the upper part of the state of Mississippi ; probably on the western bank of the Yazoo. The weather was severe, and snow fell ; but maize was yet standing in the open fields. The Spaniards were able to gather a supply of food, and the deserted town, with such rude cabins as they added, afforded them shelter through the winter. Yet no

Nov.  
18.

Dec.  
17.

<sup>1</sup> Port. Rel. c. xvii.—xix. 508—512. Vega is very extravagant in his account of the battle. L. iii. c. xxvii.—xxx. On localities, compare Belknap, i. 189, 190; McCulloh, 525; and T. Irving's Florida, ii. 37.

<sup>2</sup> Portuguese Relation, c. xix.

CHAP. mines of Peru were discovered ; no ornaments of gold  
<sup>II.</sup> adorned the rude savages ; their wealth was the har-  
1541. vest of corn, and wigwams were their only palaces ;  
they were poor and independent ; they were hardy and  
Mar. loved freedom. When spring<sup>1</sup> opened, Soto, as he  
had usually done with other tribes, demanded of the  
chieftain of the Chickasaws two hundred men to carry  
the burdens of his company. The Indians hesitated.  
Human nature is the same in every age and in every  
climate. Like the inhabitants of Athens in the days  
of Themistocles, or those of Moscow of a recent day,  
the Chickasaws, unwilling to see strangers and enemies  
occupy their homes, in the dead of night, deceiving the  
sentinels, set fire to their own village, in which the  
Castilians were encamped.<sup>2</sup> On a sudden, half the  
houses were in flames ; and the loudest notes of the  
war-whoop rung through the air. The Indians, could  
they have acted with calm bravery, might have gained  
an easy and entire victory ; but they trembled at their  
own success, and feared the unequal battle against  
weapons of steel. Many of the horses had broken  
loose ; these, terrified and without riders, roamed  
through the forest, of which the burning village illumi-  
nated the shades, and seemed to the ignorant natives  
the gathering of hostile squadrons. Others of the  
horses perished in the stables ; most of the swine were  
consumed ; eleven of the Christians were burned, or  
lost their lives in the tumult. The clothes which had  
been saved from the fires of Mobile, were destroyed,  
and the Spaniards, now as naked as the natives,  
suffered from the cold. Weapons and equipments  
were consumed or spoiled. Had the Indians made a

<sup>1</sup> Vega says January. L. iii. c. xxxvi.

<sup>2</sup> Vega, l. iii. c. xxxvi., xxxvii. and  
xxxviii. Port. Account, c. xx. xxi.

resolute onset on this night or the next, the Spaniards CHAP.  
would have been unable to resist. But in a respite of <sup>II.</sup>  
a week, forges were erected, swords newly tempered, <sup>1541.</sup>  
and good ashen lances were made, equal to the best of  
Biscay. When the Indians attacked the camp, they <sup>Mar.  
15.</sup>  
found "the Christians" prepared.

All the disasters which had been encountered, far from diminishing the boldness of the governor, served only to confirm his obstinacy by wounding his pride. Should he, who had promised greater booty than Mexico or Peru had yielded, now return as a defeated fugitive, so naked that his troops were clad only in skins and mats of ivy? The search for some wealthy region was renewed; the caravan marched still further to the west. For seven days, it struggled through a wilderness of forests and marshes; and, at length, came to Indian settlements in the vicinity of the Mississippi. Soto was the first of Europeans to behold the magnificent river, which rolled its immense mass of waters through the splendid vegetation of a wide alluvial soil. The lapse of nearly three centuries has not changed the character of the stream; it was then described as more than a mile broad; flowing with a strong current, and, by the weight of its waters, forcing a channel of great depth. The water was always muddy; trees and timber were continually floating down the stream.<sup>1</sup>

April  
25.

The Spaniards were guided to the Mississippi by natives; and were directed to one of the usual crossing places, probably at the lowest Chickasaw Bluff,<sup>2</sup> not far from the thirty-fifth parallel of latitude.<sup>3</sup> The

<sup>1</sup> Portuguese Account, c. xxii. the more diffuse account of Vega, l. Vega, l. iv. c. iii. I never rely on iv. c. v.  
Vega alone.

<sup>2</sup> Portuguese Account, c. xxxii. <sup>3</sup> Belknap, i. 192: "Within the  
and xxxiii. taken in connection with thirty-fourth degree." Andrew El-  
licott's Journal, 125: "Thirty-four

CHAP. arrival of the strangers awakened curiosity and fear.  
 II. — A multitude of people from the western banks of the  
 1541. river, painted and gayly decorated with great plumes  
 of white feathers, the warriors standing in rows with  
 bow and arrows in their hands, the chieftains sitting  
 under awnings as magnificent as the artless manufac-  
 tures of the natives could weave, came rowing down  
 the stream in a fleet of two hundred canoes, seeming to  
 the admiring Spaniards "like a fair army of galleys." They brought gifts of fish, and loaves made of the  
 fruit of the persimmon. At first they showed some  
 desire to offer resistance; but, soon becoming conscious  
 of their relative weakness, they ceased to defy an  
 enemy who could not be resisted, and suffered injury  
 without attempting open retaliation. The boats of  
 the natives were too weak to transport horses; almost  
 a month expired, before barges large enough to hold  
 three horsemen each, were constructed for crossing the  
 May. river. At length the Spaniards embarked upon the  
 Mississippi; and Europeans were borne to its western  
 bank.

The Kaskaskias Indians, at that time, occupied a  
 June. province south-west of the Missouri;<sup>1</sup> Soto had heard  
 its praises; he believed in its vicinity to mineral  
 wealth; and he determined to visit its towns. In  
 ascending the Mississippi, the party was often obliged  
 to wade through morasses; at length they came, as  
 it would seem, upon the district of Little Prairie, and  
 the dry and elevated lands which extend towards  
 New Madrid. Here the religion of the invaders and

degrees and ten minutes." Martin's Louisiana, i. 12: "A little  
 below the lowest Chickasaw Bluff." Nuttall's Travels in Arkansas, 248:  
 "The lowest Chickasaw Bluff." McCulloh's Researches, 526:

"Twenty or thirty miles below the mouth of the Arkansas River."

<sup>1</sup> Charlevoix, Journal Historique, let. xxviii. Nuttall's Arkansas, 82,  
 250 and 251. McCulloh disagrees: 526—528.

the natives came in contrast. The Spaniards were adored as children of the sun, and the blind were brought into their presence, to be healed by the sons of light. "Pray only to God, who is in heaven, for whatsoever ye need," said Soto in reply; and the sublime doctrine, which, thousands of years before, had been proclaimed in the deserts of Arabia, now first found its way into the prairies of the Far West. The wild fruits of that region were abundant; the pecan nut, the mulberry, and the two kinds of wild plums, furnished the natives with articles of food. At Pacaha, the northernmost point which Soto reached near the Mississippi, he remained forty days. The spot cannot be identified; but the accounts of the amusements of the Spaniards confirm the truth of the narrative of their ramblings. Fish were taken, such as are now found in the fresh waters of that region; one of them, the spade fish,<sup>1</sup> the strangest and most whimsical production of the muddy streams of the west, so rare, that, even now, it is hardly to be found in any museum, is accurately described by the best historian of the expedition.<sup>2</sup>

June  
19,  
to  
July  
29.

An exploring party, which was sent to examine the regions to the north, reported that they were almost a desert. The country still nearer the Missouri was said by the Indians to be thinly inhabited; the bison abounded there so much, that no maize could be cultivated; and the few inhabitants were hunters. Soto turned, therefore, to the west and north-west, and plunged still more deeply into the interior of the continent. The highlands of White River, more than two hundred miles from the Mississippi, were probably the limit of

<sup>1</sup> Platirostra Edentula.

lip, it was made like a phee. It

had no scales." Compare Flint's

Geography, i. 85. Journal of Phil.

Acad. of Nat. Science, i. 227—229.

Nuttall's Arkansas, 254.

<sup>2</sup> Portuguese Relation, c. xxiv. "There was another fish, called a phee fish; it had a snout of a cubit long, and at the end of the upper

CHAP. his ramble in this direction. The mountains offered  
<sup>II.</sup>  
 neither gems nor gold ; and the disappointed adven-  
 1541. turers marched to the south.<sup>1</sup> They passed through a  
 succession of towns, of which the position cannot be  
 fixed ; till, at length, we find them among the Tunicas,<sup>2</sup>  
 near the hot springs and saline tributaries of the  
 Washita.<sup>3</sup> It was at Autiamque, a town on the same  
 river,<sup>4</sup> that they passed the winter ; they had arrived  
 at the settlement through the country of the Kappaws.

The native tribes, every where on the route, were found in a state of civilization beyond that of nomadic hordes. They were an agricultural people, with fixed places of abode, and subsisted upon the produce of the fields, more than upon the chase. Ignorant of the arts of life, they could offer no resistance to their unwelcome visitors ; the bow and arrow were the most effective weapons with which they were acquainted. They seem not to have been turbulent or quarrelsome ; but as the population was moderate, and the earth fruitful, the tribes were not accustomed to contend with each other for the possession of territories. Their dress was, in part, mats wrought of ivy and bulrushes, of the bark and lint of trees ; in cold weather, they wore mantles woven of feathers. The settlements were by tribes ; each tribe occupied what the Spaniards called a province ; their villages were generally near together, but were composed of few habitations. The Spaniards treated them with no other forbearance than their own selfishness demanded, and enslaved such as offended, employing them as porters and guides. On a slight suspicion, they would cut off the hands of

<sup>1</sup> Portuguese Rel. c. xxv.—xxvii.

<sup>2</sup> Charlevoix, Jour. Hist. l. xxxi.

<sup>3</sup> Portuguese Narrative, c. xxvi. Nuttall's Arkansas, 215, 216, 257.

<sup>4</sup> The river of Autiamque, Cayas,

the saline regions, and afterwards

of Nilco, was the same. Portuguese Relation, c. xxviii.

numbers of the natives, for punishment or intimidation;<sup>1</sup> while the young cavaliers, from desire of seeming valiant, ceased to be merciful, and exulted in cruelties and carnage. The guide who was unsuccessful, or who purposely led them away from the settlements of his tribe, would be seized and thrown to the hounds. Sometimes a native was condemned to the flames. Any trifling consideration of safety would induce the governor to set fire to a hamlet. He did not delight in cruelty; but the happiness, the life, and the rights of the Indians, were held of no account. The approach of the Spaniards was heard with dismay; and their departure hastened by the suggestion of wealthier lands at a great distance.

In the spring of the following year, Soto determined to descend the Washita to its junction, and to get tidings of the sea. As he advanced, he was soon lost amidst the bayous and marshes which are found along the Red River and its tributaries. Near the Mississippi, he came upon the country of Nilco, which was well peopled. The river was there larger than the Guadalquivir at Seville. At last, he arrived at the province where the Washita, already united with the Red River, enters the Mississippi.<sup>2</sup> The province was called Guachoya. Soto anxiously inquired the distance to the sea; the chieftain of Guachoya could not tell. Were there settlements extending along the river to its mouth? It was answered that its lower banks were an uninhabited waste. Unwilling to believe so disheartening a tale, Soto sent one of his men, with eight

<sup>1</sup> Calveto, from Benzo, Hist. N. Orbis N. l. ii. c. xiii. in De Bry, iv. 47.

<sup>2</sup> McCulloch places Guachoya near the Arkansas. He does not make sufficient allowance for an exag-

geration of distances, and for delays on the Mississippi during the night-time; 529—531. Nuttall, Martin, and others, agree with the statement in the text.

1542  
Mar. 6.

April 17.

CHAP. horsemen, to descend the banks of the Mississippi, and  
II. ~~and~~ explore the country. They travelled eight days, and  
**1542.** were able to advance not much more than thirty miles,  
they were so delayed by the frequent bayous, the im-  
passable cane-brakes, and the dense woods.<sup>1</sup> The gov-  
ernor received the intelligence with concern; he suf-  
fered from anxiety and gloom. His horses and men  
were dying around him, so that the natives were be-  
coming dangerous enemies. He attempted to overawe  
a tribe of Indians near Natchez by claiming a super-  
natural birth, and demanding obedience and tribute.  
“ You say you are the child of the sun,” replied the un-  
daunted chief; “ dry up the river, and I will believe you.  
Do you desire to see me? Visit the town where I dwell.  
If you come in peace, I will receive you with special  
good-will; if in war, I will not shrink one foot back.”  
But Soto was no longer able to abate the confidence, or  
punish the temerity of the natives. His stubborn pride  
was changed by long disappointments into a wasting mel-  
ancholy; and his health sunk rapidly and entirely under  
a conflict of emotions. A malignant fever ensued,  
during which he had little comfort, and was neither  
visited nor attended as the last hours of life demand.  
Believing his death near at hand, he held the last  
solemn interview with his faithful followers; and, yield-  
ing to the wishes of his companions, who obeyed him  
May to the last, he named a successor. On the next day he  
21. died. Thus perished Ferdinand de Soto, the governor  
of Cuba, the successful associate of Pizarro. His mis-  
erable end was the more observed, from the greatness  
of his former prosperity. His soldiers pronounced his  
eulogy by grieving for their loss; the priests chanted over  
his body the first requiems that were ever heard on the

<sup>1</sup> Portuguese Account, c. xxix.

waters of the Mississippi. To conceal his death, his body was wrapped in a mantle, and, in the stillness of midnight, was silently sunk in the middle of the stream. <sup>II.</sup> 1542. The discoverer of the Mississippi slept beneath its waters. He had crossed a large part of the continent in search of gold, and found nothing so remarkable as his burial-place.<sup>1</sup>

No longer guided by the energy and pride of Soto, the company resolved on reaching New Spain without delay. Should they embark in such miserable boats as they could construct, and descend the river? Or should they seek a path to Mexico through the forests? They were unanimous in the opinion, that it was less dangerous to go by land; the hope was still cherished, that some wealthy state, some opulent city, might yet be discovered, and all fatigues be forgotten in the midst of victory and spoils. Again they penetrated the western wilderness; in July, they found themselves in the country of the Natchitoches;<sup>2</sup> but the Red River was so swollen, that it was impossible for them to pass. They soon became bewildered. As they proceeded, the Indian guides purposely led them astray; "they went up and down through very great woods," without making any progress. The wilderness, into which they had at last wandered, was sterile and scarcely inhabited; they had now reached the great buffalo prairies of the west, the hunting-grounds of the Pawnees and Comanches, the migratory tribes on the confines of Mexico. The Spaniards believed themselves to be at least one hundred and fifty leagues west of the Mississippi. Desperate as the

<sup>1</sup> Portuguese Relation, c. xxx. Vega, l. v. p. i. c. vii. viii. Vega embellishes. Herrera d. vii. l. vii. c. iii.

<sup>2</sup> Vega introduces the Natchitoches too soon. L. v. p. i. c. i. See Portuguese Account, c. xxxii. and xxxiii. Compare Nuttall, 264.

CHAP. resolution seemed, it was determined to return once  
<sup>II.</sup>  
 more to its banks, and follow its current to the sea.

1542. There were not wanting men, whose hopes and whose courage were not yet exhausted, who wished rather to die in the wilderness, than to leave it in poverty; but Moscoso, the new governor, had long "desired to see himself in a place where he might sleep his full sleep."<sup>1</sup>

Dec. They came upon the Mississippi at Minoya, a few leagues above the mouth of Red River, often wading through deep waters, and grateful to God if, at night, they could find a dry resting-place. The Indians, whom they had enslaved, died in great numbers; in Minoya, many Christians died; and most of them were attacked by a dangerous epidemic.

1543. Nor was the labor yet at an end; it was no easy task for men in their condition to build brigantines.

<sup>Jan.  
to  
July.</sup> Erecting a forge, they struck off the fetters from the slaves; and, gathering every scrap of iron in the camp, they wrought it into nails. Timber was sawed by hand with a large saw, which they had always carried with them. They calked their vessels with a weed like hemp; barrels, capable of holding water, were with difficulty made; to obtain supplies of provision, all the hogs and even the horses were killed, and their flesh preserved by drying; and the neighboring townships of Indians were so plundered of their food, that the miserable inhabitants would come about the Spaniards begging for a few kernels of their own maize, and often died from weakness and want of food. The rising of the Mississippi assisted the launching of the seven brigantines; they were frail barks, which had no decks; and as, from the want of iron, the nails were of necessity short, they were constructed of very

<sup>1</sup> Portuguese Relation, c. xxxiv.

thin planks, so that the least shock would have broken them in pieces. Thus provided, in seventeen days the fugitives reached the Gulf of Mexico; the distance seemed to them two hundred and fifty leagues, and was not much less than five hundred miles. They were the first to observe, that for some distance from the mouth of the Mississippi the sea is not salt, so great is the volume of fresh water which the river discharges. Following, for the most part, the coast, it was more than fifty days before the men, who finally escaped, now no more than three hundred and eleven in number, entered the River Panuco.<sup>1</sup>

Such is the history of the first visit of Europeans to the Mississippi; the honor of the discovery belongs, without a doubt, to the Spaniards. There were not wanting adventurers, who desired to make one more attempt to possess the country by force of arms; their request was refused.<sup>2</sup> Religious zeal was more per-

<sup>1</sup> On Soto's expedition, by far the best account is that of the Portuguese Eye-witness, first published in 1557, and by Hakluyt, in English, in 1609. There is an imperfect abridgment of it in Purchas, iv. 1528—1556; and a still more imperfect one in Roberts's Florida, 33—79. This narrative is remarkably good, and contains internal evidence of its credibility. Nuttall erroneously attributes it to Vega. In the work of Vega, numbers and distances are magnified; and every thing embellished with great boldness. His history is not without its value, but must be consulted with extreme caution. Herrera, d. vi. l. vii. c. ix.—xii., and d. vii. l. vii. c. i.—xi. is not an original authority. The *Ensayo Cronologico* contains nothing of moment on the subject. L'Escarbot, N. Fr. i. 36, De Laet, l. iv. c. iv.—ix., and Charlevoix, N. Fr. i. 24, and iii. 408, offer no new views. Du Pratz is unnece-

sarily skeptical. The French translator of Vega has not a word of valuable criticism. Of English authors, neither Purchas nor Harris has furnished any useful illustrations. Of books published in America, Belknap, in Am. Biog. i. 185—195, comments with his usual care. McCulloh, in his Researches, Appendix, iii. 523—531, makes an earnest attempt to trace the route of Soto. So Nuttall, in his Travels in Arkansas, Appendix, 247—267. Nuttall had himself roved through the same regions, and his opinions are justly entitled to much deference. Flint only glances at the subject. Stoddard, in his Sketches, 4, is vague and without detail. I have compared all these authors: the account in Hakluyt, with good modern maps, can lead to firm conclusions.

<sup>2</sup> *Ensayo Cronologico*, Año MDXLIV.

Sept.  
10.

II.

July

1543.

CHAP. severing ; Louis Cancello, a missionary of the Dominican order, gained, through Philip, then heir apparent in Spain, permission to visit Florida, and attempt the peaceful conversion of the natives. Christianity was to conquer the land against which so many expeditions had failed. The Spanish governors were directed to favor the design ; all slaves, that had been taken from the northern shore of the Gulf of Mexico, were to be manumitted and restored to their country. The ship was fitted out with much solemnity ; but the priests, who sought the first interview with the natives, were feared as enemies, and, being immediately attacked, Louis and two others fell martyrs to their zeal.<sup>1</sup>

Florida was abandoned. It seemed as if death guarded the avenues to the country.<sup>2</sup> While the Castilians were every where else victorious, Florida was wet with the blood of the invaders, who had still been unable to possess themselves of her soil. The coast of our republic on the Gulf of Mexico was not, at this time, disputed by any other nation with Spain ; while that power claimed, under the name of Florida, the whole seacoast as far as Newfoundland,<sup>3</sup> and even to the remotest north. In Spanish geography, Canada was a part of Florida.<sup>4</sup> Yet within that whole extent, not a Spanish fort was erected, not a harbor was occupied, not one settlement was planned. The first permanent establishment of the Spaniards in Florida was the result of jealous bigotry.

<sup>1</sup> *Ensayo Cronologico*, 25, 26; Vega, l. vi. c. xxii.; Gomara, c. xlvi.; Urbani Calvetonis de Gallorum in Floridam Expeditione Brevis Historia, c. i., annexed to Nov. Nov. Orbis Hist. 432, 433; Eden and Willes, fol. 229; De Bry's introduction and parergon to his *Brevis*

Narratio eorum quæ in Florida Gallis acciderunt. Thuani Hist. l. xliv.

<sup>2</sup> Gom. c. xlvi.; Vega, l. vi. c. xxii.

<sup>3</sup> Herrera's West Indies, c. viii. in Purchas, iv. 868.

<sup>4</sup> Bolvio à la Florida Champlain; entrò en Quebec, &c. *Ensayo Cronologico*, 179.

For France had begun to settle the region with a CHAP.  
colony of Protestants ; and Calvinism, which, with the <sup>II.</sup> ~  
special coöperation of Calvin himself, had, for a short 1562.  
season, occupied the coasts of Brazil and the harbor of 1555.  
Rio Janeiro,<sup>1</sup> was now to be planted on the borders of  
Florida. Coligny had long desired to establish a  
refuge for the Huguenots, and a Protestant French  
empire, in America. Disappointed in his first effort, by  
the apostasy and faithlessness of his agent, Ville-  
gagnon, he still persevered ; moved alike by religious  
zeal, and by a passion for the honor of France. The  
expedition which he now planned was intrusted to the 1562.  
command of John Ribault of Dieppe, a brave man, of  
maritime experience, and a firm Protestant, and was  
attended by some of the best of the young French  
nobility, as well as by veteran troops. The feeble  
Charles IX. conceded an ample commission, and the  
squadron set sail for the shores of North America.  
Desiring to establish their plantation in a genial  
clime, land was first made in the latitude of St. Augus-  
tine ; the fine river which we call the St. Johns,<sup>2</sup> was  
discovered, and named the River of May. It is the St. May.  
Matheo<sup>3</sup> of the Spaniards. The forests of mulberries  
were admired, and caterpillars readily mistaken for silk-  
worms. The cape received a French name ; as the  
ships sailed along the coast, the numerous streams  
were called after the rivers of France ; and America,  
for a while, had its Seine, its Loire, and its Garonne.  
In searching for the Jordan or Combahee, they came  
upon Port Royal entrance,<sup>4</sup> which seemed the outlet

Feb.  
18.

<sup>1</sup> De Thou's Hist. l. xvi. Lery, Hist. Nav. in Bras. An abridg-  
ment of the description, but not of the personal narrative, appears in Purchas, iv. 1325—1347. L'Escarbot, N. F. i. 143—214; Southey's Brazil, part i. c. ix.

<sup>2</sup> Compare the criticism of Holmes's Annals, i. 567.

<sup>3</sup> Ensayo Cronologico, p. 43.

<sup>4</sup> Laudonnier, in Hakluyt, iii. 373. The description is sufficiently minute and accurate; removing all doubt. Before the geography of the coun-

CHAP. of a magnificent river. The greatest ships of France  
<sup>II.</sup>  
 and the argosies of Venice could ride securely in the  
 1562. deep water of the harbor. The site for a first settle-  
 ment is apt to be injudiciously selected; the local  
 advantages which favor the growth of large cities, are  
 revealed by time. It was perhaps on Lemon Island,  
 that a monumental stone, engraved with the arms of  
 France, was proudly raised; and as the company look-  
 ed round upon the immense oaks, which were venera-  
 ble from the growth of centuries, the profusion of wild  
 fowls, the groves of pine, the flowers so fragrant that  
 the whole air was perfumed, they already regarded the  
 country as a province of their native land. Ribault de-  
 termined to leave a colony; twenty-six composed the  
 whole party, which was to keep possession of the con-  
 tinent. Fort Charles, the Carolina,<sup>1</sup> so called in honor  
 of Charles IX. of France, first gave a name to the  
 country, a century before it was occupied by the Eng-  
 lish. The name remained, though the early colony  
 perished.<sup>2</sup>

July  
20.

Ribault and the ships arrived safely in France. But  
 the fires of civil war had been kindled in all the  
 provinces of the kingdom; and the promised reinforce-  
 ments for Carolina were never levied. The situation  
 of the French became precarious. The natives were  
 friendly; but the soldiers themselves were insubordi-  
 nate; and dissensions prevailed. The commandant  
 at Carolina repressed the turbulent spirit with arbitrary  
 cruelty, and lost his life in a mutiny which his ungov-  
 ernable passion had provoked. The new commander

try was well known, there was room  
 for the error of Charlevoix, *Nouv. Fr.*  
 i. 25, who places the settlement at  
 the mouth of the Edisto, an error  
 which is followed by Chalmers, 513.  
 It is no reproach to Charlevoix, that  
 his geography of the coast of Florida

is confused and inaccurate. Com-  
 pare Johnson's *Life of Greene*, i. 477.

<sup>1</sup> *Munitioem Carolinam, de re-*  
*gis nomine dictum. De Thou, l.*  
*xliv. 531, edition of 1626.*

<sup>2</sup> *Hening, i. 552; and Thurloe,*  
*ii. 273, 274.*

succeeded in restoring order. But the love of his CHAP.  
native land is a passion easily revived in the breast of <sup>II.</sup>  
a Frenchman ; and the company resolved to embark in 1562.  
such a brigantine as they could themselves construct.  
Intoxicated with joy at the thought of returning home, 1563.  
they neglected to provide sufficient stores ; and they  
were overtaken by famine at sea, with its attendant  
crimes. A small English bark at length boarded their  
vessel, and, setting the most feeble on shore upon the  
coast of France, carried the rest to the queen of Eng-  
land. Thus fell the first attempt of France in French  
Florida, near the southern confines of South Carolina.  
The country was still a desert.<sup>1</sup>

After the treacherous peace between Charles IX. 1564.  
and the Huguenots, Coligny renewed his solicitations  
for the colonization of Florida. The king gave con-  
sent ; three ships were conceded for the service ; and  
Laudonniere, who, in the former voyage, had been  
upon the American coast, a man of great intelligence,  
though a seaman rather than a soldier, was appointed  
to lead forth the colony. Emigrants readily appeared ;  
for the climate of Florida was so celebrated, that, ac-  
cording to rumor, the duration of human life was  
doubled under its genial influences ;<sup>2</sup> and men still  
dreamed of rich mines of gold in the interior. Coligny  
was desirous of obtaining accurate descriptions of the  
country ; and James le Moyne, called De Morgues, an  
ingenious painter, was commissioned to execute colored  
drawings of the objects which might engage his curi-  
osity. A voyage of sixty days brought the fleet, by  
the way of the Canaries and the Antilles, to the shores

April  
22 to  
June  
22.

<sup>1</sup> Laudonniere, in Hakluyt, iii. logico, 42—45; L'Escarbot, Nouv. 371—384. Compare De Thou, a Fr. i. 41—62.  
contemporary, l. xliv.; Charlevoix, <sup>2</sup> De Thou, l. xliv.; Hakluyt, iv. N. Fr. i. 24—35; Ensayo Crono- 389.

CHAP. of Florida. The harbor of Port Royal, rendered gloomy  
<sup>II.</sup>  
 by recollections of misery, was avoided; and after  
 1564. searching the coast, and discovering places which were  
 so full of amenity, that melancholy itself could not but  
 change its humor, as it gazed, the followers of Calvin  
 planted themselves on the banks of the River May.  
 They sung a psalm of thanksgiving, and gathered  
 courage from acts of devotion. The fort now erected  
 was also named Carolina. The result of this attempt  
 to procure for France immense dominions at the south  
 of our republic, through the agency of a Huguenot  
 colony, has been very frequently narrated:<sup>1</sup> in the  
 history of human nature it forms a dark picture of  
 vindictive bigotry.

The French were hospitably welcomed by the natives; a monument, bearing the arms of France, was crowned with laurels, and its base encircled with baskets of corn. What need is there of minutely relating the simple manners of the natives; the dissensions of rival tribes; the largesses offered to the strangers to secure their protection or their alliance; the improvident prodigality with which careless soldiers wasted the supplies of food; the certain approach of scarcity; the gifts and the tribute levied from the Indians by entreaty, menace, or force? By degrees the confidence

<sup>1</sup> There are four original accounts by eye-witnesses: Laudonniere, in Hakluyt, iii. 384—419: Le Moyne, in De Bry, part ii., together with the Epistola Supplicatoria, from the widows and orphans of the sufferers, to Charles IX.; also in De Bry, part ii.: Challus, or Challusius, of Dieppe, whose account I have found annexed to Calveto's Nov. Nov. Orb. Hist. under the title De Gallorum Expeditione in Floridam, 433—469: and the Spanish account by Solis de las Meras, the brother-in-law

and apologist of Melendez, in Ensayo Cronologico, 85—90. On Solis, compare Crisis del Ensayo, 22, 23. I have drawn my narrative from a comparison of these four accounts; consulting also the admirable De Thou, a genuine worshipper at the shrine of truth, l. xliv.; the diffuse Barcia's Ensayo Cronologico, 42—94; the elaborate and circumstantial narrative of Charlevoix, N. Fr. i. 24—106; and the account of L'Escarbot, i. 62—129. The accounts do not essentially vary. Voltaire and many others have repeated the tale.

of the natives was exhausted ; they had welcomed powerful guests, who promised to become their benefactors, and who now robbed their humble granaries. 1564.

But the worst evil in the new settlement was the character of the emigrants. Though patriotism and religious enthusiasm had prompted the expedition, the inferior class of the colonists was a motley group of dissolute men. Mutinies were frequent. The men were mad with the passion for sudden wealth ; and a party, under the pretence of desiring to escape from famine, compelled Laudonniere to sign an order, permitting their embarkation for New Spain. No sooner 1564.  
were they possessed of this apparent sanction of the chief, than they equipped two vessels, and began a career of piracy against the Spanish. Thus the French were the aggressors in the first act of hostility in the New World ; an act of crime and temerity which was soon avenged. The pirate vessel was taken, and most of the men disposed of as prisoners or slaves. A few escaped in a boat ; these could find no shelter but at Fort Carolina, where Laudonniere sentenced the ringleaders to death.

Meantime, the scarcity became extreme ; and the friendship of the natives was entirely forfeited by unprofitable severity. March was gone, and there were no supplies from France ; April passed away, and the expected recruits had not arrived ; May came, but it brought nothing to sustain the hopes of the exiles. It was resolved to return to Europe in such miserable brigantines as despair could construct. Just then, Sir John Hawkins,<sup>1</sup> the slave-merchant, arrived from the West Indies. He came fresh from the sale of a cargo of Africans, whom he had kidnapped with signal ruth-

Aug.  
3.

<sup>1</sup> Hawkins, in Hakluyt, iii. 615, 616.

CHAP. lessness; and he now displayed the most generous  
<sup>II.</sup> sympathy, not only furnishing a liberal supply of pro-  
1565. visions, but relinquishing a vessel from his own fleet.

Preparations were continued; the colony was on the point of embarking, when sails were descried. Ribault had arrived to assume the command; bringing with him supplies of every kind, emigrants with their families, garden seeds, implements of husbandry, and the various kinds of domestic animals. The French, now wild with joy, seemed about to acquire a home, and Calvinism to become fixed in the inviting regions of Florida.

But Spain had never relinquished her claim to that territory; where, if she had not planted colonies, she had buried many hundreds of her bravest sons. Should the proud Philip II. abandon a part of his dominions to France? Should he suffer his commercial monopoly to be endangered by a rival settlement in the vicinity of the West Indies? Should the bigoted Romanist permit the heresy of Calvinism to be planted in the neighborhood of his Catholic provinces? There had appeared at the Spanish court a bold commander, well fitted for acts of reckless hostility. Pedro Melendez de Avilès had, in a long career of military service, become accustomed to scenes of blood; and his natural ferocity had been confirmed by his course of life. The wars against the Protestants of Holland had nourished his bigotry; and, as a naval commander, often encountering pirates, whom the laws of nations exclude from mercy, he had become inured to acts of prompt and unsparing vengeance. He had acquired wealth in Spanish America, which was no school of benevolence; and his conduct there had provoked an inquiry, which, after a long arrest, ended in his conviction. The nature of his offences is not apparent; the justice of

the sentence is confirmed, for the king, who knew him well, esteemed his bravery, and received him again into his service, remitted only a moiety of his fine. The heir of Melendez had been shipwrecked among the Bermudas; the father desired to return and search among the islands for tidings of his only son. Philip II. suggested the conquest and colonization of Florida; and a compact was soon framed and confirmed, by which Melendez, who desired an opportunity to retrieve his honor, was constituted the hereditary governor of a territory of almost unlimited extent.<sup>1</sup>

Mar.  
20.

The terms of the compact<sup>2</sup> are curious. Melendez, on his part, promised, at his own cost, in the following May, to invade Florida with at least five hundred men; to complete its conquest within three years; to explore its currents and channels, the dangers of its coasts, and the depth of its havens; to establish a colony of at least five hundred persons, of whom one hundred should be married men; to introduce at least twelve ecclesiastics, besides four Jesuits. It was further stipulated, that he should transport to his province all kinds of domestic animals. The bigoted Philip II. had no scruples respecting slavery; Melendez contracted to import into Florida five hundred negro slaves. The sugar-cane was to become a staple of the country.

The king, in return, promised the adventurer various commercial immunities; the office of governor for life, with the right of naming his son-in-law as his successor; an estate of twenty-five square leagues in the immediate vicinity of the settlement; a salary of two thousand ducats, chargeable on the revenues of the province; and a fifteenth part of all royal perquisites.

<sup>1</sup> *Ensayo Cronolog.* 57—65.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.* 66.

CHAP. Meantime, news arrived, as the French writers assert,  
II. through the treachery of the court of France, that the  
1565. Huguenots had made a plantation in Florida, and that  
Ribault was preparing to set sail with reinforcements.  
The cry was raised, that the heretics must be extir-  
pated; the enthusiasm of fanaticism was kindled, and  
Melendez readily obtained all the forces which he  
required. More than twenty-five hundred persons—  
soldiers, sailors, priests, Jesuits, married men with their  
families, laborers, and mechanics, and, with the excep-  
tion of three hundred soldiers, all at the cost of Melen-  
dez—engaged in the invasion. After delays occasioned  
July. by a storm, the expedition set sail; and the trade-  
winds soon bore them rapidly across the Atlantic. A  
tempest scattered the fleet on its passage; it was with  
only one third part of his forces, that Melendez arrived  
Aug. 9. at the harbor of St. John in Porto Rico. But he es-  
teemed celerity the secret of success; and, refusing to  
await the arrival of the rest of his squadron, he sailed  
for Florida. It had ever been his design to explore the  
coast; to select a favorable site for a fort or a settle-  
ment; and, after the construction of fortifications, to  
Aug. 28. attack the French. It was on the day which the cus-  
toms of Rome have consecrated to the memory of one  
of the most eloquent sons of Africa, and one of the  
most venerated of the fathers of the church, that he  
came in sight of Florida.<sup>1</sup> For four days, he sailed  
Sept. 2. along the coast, uncertain where the French were es-  
tablished; on the fifth day, he landed, and gathered  
from the Indians accounts of the Huguenots. At the  
same time, he discovered a fine haven and beautiful  
river; and, remembering the saint, on whose day he  
came upon the coast, he gave to the harbor and to the

<sup>1</sup> Ensayo Cronolog. 68—70.

stream the name of St. Augustine.<sup>1</sup> Sailing, then, to CHAP. the north, he discovered a portion of the French fleet, <sup>II.</sup> and observed the nature of the road where they were <sup>1565.</sup> anchored. The French demanded his name and objects. "I am Melendez of Spain," replied he; "sent with strict orders from my king to gibbet and behead all the Protestants in these regions. The Frenchman who is a Catholic, I will spare; every heretic shall die."<sup>2</sup> The French fleet, unprepared for action, cut its cables; the Spaniards, for some time, continued an ineffectual chase.

It was at the hour of vespers, on the evening preceding the festival of the nativity of Mary, that the Spaniards returned to the harbor of St. Augustine. At noonday of the festival itself, the governor went on shore, to take possession of the continent in the name of his king. The bigoted Philip II. was proclaimed monarch of all North America. The solemn mass of Our Lady was performed, and the foundation of St. Augustine was immediately laid.<sup>3</sup> It is, by more than forty years, the oldest town in the United States. Houses in it are yet standing, which are said to have been built many years before Virginia was colonized.<sup>4</sup>

By the French it was debated, whether they should improve their fortifications, and await the approach of the Spaniards, or proceed to sea, and attack their enemy. Against the advice of his officers, Ribault resolved upon the latter course. Hardly had he left the harbor for the open sea, before there arose a fearful storm, which continued till October, and wrecked every

Sept. 7.

Sept. 8.

Sept. 8.

Sept. 10.

<sup>1</sup> *Ensayo Cronolog.* 71.

soldiers, victual, and munition, on land." *Hakluyt*, iii. 433. *Ensayo Cronologico*, 76, 77. Prince Murat, in *Am. Q. Rev.* ii. 216. *De Thou*, l. xliv.

<sup>2</sup> *El que fuere herege, morirà.* *Ensayo Cronologico*, 75, 76. It is the account of the apologist and admirer of Melendez.

<sup>3</sup> *Laudonniere*. "They put their

<sup>4</sup> *Stoddard's Sketches*, 120.

CHAP. ship of the French fleet on the Florida coast. The  
<sup>II.</sup> vessels were dashed against the rocks about fifty  
1565. leagues south of Fort Carolina; most of the men es-  
caped with their lives.

The Spanish ships also suffered, but not so severely; and the troops at St. Augustine were entirely safe. They knew that the French settlement was left in a defenceless state: with a fanatical indifference to toil, Melendez led his men through the lakes, and marshes, and forests, that divided the St. Augustine from the St. Johns, and, with a furious onset, surprised the weak garrison, who had looked only towards the sea for the approach of danger. After a short contest, the Spaniards were masters of the fort. A scene of carnage ensued; soldiers, women, children, the aged, the sick, were alike massacred. The Spanish account asserts, that Melendez ordered women and young children to be spared; yet not till after the havoc had long been raging.

Sept.  
21. Nearly two hundred persons were killed. A few escaped into the woods, among them Laudonniere, Challus, and Le Moyne, who have related the horrors of the scene. But whither should they fly? Death met them in the woods; and the heavens, the earth, the sea, and men, all seemed conspired against them. Should they surrender, appealing to the sympathy of their conquerors? "Let us," said Challus, "trust in the mercy of God, rather than of these men." A few gave themselves up, and were immediately murdered. The others, after the severest sufferings, found their way to the sea-side, and were received on board two small French vessels which had remained in the harbor. The Spaniards, angry that any should have escaped, insulted the corpses of the dead with wanton barbarity.

The victory had been gained on the festival of St. <sup>CHAP.</sup>  
Matthew; and hence the Spanish name of the River <sup>II.</sup> ~~May~~  
May. After the carnage was completed, mass was <sup>1565.</sup> ~~Sept.~~  
said; a cross was raised; and the site for a church  
selected, on ground still smoking with the blood of a  
peaceful colony. So willingly is the human mind the  
dupe of its prejudices; so easily can fanaticism connect  
acts of savage ferocity with the rites of a merciful  
religion.

The shipwrecked men were, in their turn, soon discovered. They were in a state of helpless weakness, wasted by their fatigues at sea, half famished, destitute of water and of food. Should they surrender to the Spaniards? Melendez invited them to rely on his compassion;<sup>1</sup> the French capitulated, and were received among the Spaniards in such successive divisions as a boat could at once ferry across the intervening river. As the captives stepped upon the bank which their enemies occupied, their hands were tied behind them; and in this way they were marched towards St. Augustine, like a flock of sheep driven to the slaughter-house. As they approached the fort, a signal was given; and, amidst the sound of trumpets and drums, the Spaniards fell upon the unhappy men, who had confided in their humanity, and who could offer no resistance. A few Catholics were spared; some mechanics were reserved as slaves; the rest were massacred, “not as Frenchmen, but as Calvinists.” The whole number of the victims of bigotry, here and at the fort, is said, by the French, to have been about nine hundred;<sup>2</sup> the Spanish accounts diminish the

<sup>1</sup> So says his apologist. Si ellos quieren entregarle las Vanderas, è las armas, è ponerse en su misericordia, lo pueden hacer, para que él haga de ellos lo que Dios le diere de gracia. Is not this an implied promise of mercy?

<sup>2</sup> Epist. Sup. in De Bry, ii.

CHAP. number of the slain, but not the atrocity of the deed.  
II. — Melendez returned to Spain, impoverished, but triumphant. The French government heard of the outrage with apathy, and made not even a remonstrance on the ruin of a colony, which, if it had been protected, would have given to its country a flourishing empire in the south, before England had planted a single spot on the new continent. History has been more faithful, and has assisted humanity by giving to the crime of Melendez an infamous notoriety. The first town in the United States sprung from the unrelenting bigotry of the Spanish king. We admire the rapid growth of our larger cities; the sudden transformation of portions of the wilderness into blooming states. St. Augustine presents a stronger contrast, in its transition from the bigoted policy of Philip II. to the American principles of religious liberty. Its origin should be carefully remembered, for it is a fixed point, from which to measure the liberal influence of time; the progress of modern civilization; the victories of the American mind, in its contests for the interests of humanity.

1567. The Huguenots and the French nation did not share in the apathy of the court. Dominic de Gourgues—a bold soldier of Gascony, whose life had been a series of adventures, now employed in the army against Spain, now a prisoner and a galley-slave among the Spaniards, taken by the Turks with the vessel in which he rowed, and redeemed by the commander of the knights of Malta—burned with a desire to avenge his own wrongs and the honor of his country. The sale of his property, and the contributions of his friends, furnished the means of equipping three ships, in  
Aug. 22. which, with one hundred and fifty men, he embarked

for Florida. His strength was not sufficient to occupy CHAP.  
the country permanently; he desired only to destroy ~~the~~<sup>II.</sup> and revenge. He was able to surprise two forts<sup>1568.</sup> near the mouth of the St. Matheo; and, as terror magnified the number of his followers, the consternation of the Spaniards enabled him to gain possession of the larger fort, near the spot which the French colony had fortified. But he was not strong enough to maintain his position; he, therefore, hastily retreated, and sailed to Europe, having first hanged his prisoners upon the trees, and placed over them the inscription, "I do not this as unto Spaniards or mariners, but as unto traitors, robbers, and murderers."<sup>1</sup> The natives, who had been ill treated both by the Spaniards and the French, enjoyed the savage consolation of seeing their enemies butcher one another.

May  
3

The attack of the fiery Gascon was but a passing storm. France disavowed the expedition, and relinquished all pretension to Florida. Spain grasped at it, as a portion of her dominions; and, if discovery could confer a right, her claim was founded in justice. Cuba now formed the centre of her West Indian possessions, and every thing around it was included within her empire. Sovereignty was asserted, not only over the archipelagos within the tropics, but over the whole continent round the inner seas. From the remotest southeastern cape of the Caribbean, along the whole shore to the Cape of Florida and beyond it, all was hers. The Gulf of Mexico lay embosomed within her territories.

<sup>1</sup> Hakluyt, iii. 426—432. De Bry, 135—138. L'Escarbot, i. 129—141.  
ii. De Thou, l. xliv. Ens. Cron. Charlevoix, i. 95, &c.

## CHAPTER III.

ENGLAND TAKES POSSESSION OF THE UNITED STATES.

**CHAP.** THE attempts of the French to colonize Florida,  
<sup>III.</sup> though unprotected and unsuccessful, were not without  
 an important influence on succeeding events. About  
 the time of the return of De Gourgues, Walter Raleigh,<sup>1</sup>  
 a young Englishman, had abruptly left the university  
<sup>1569</sup> of Oxford, to take part in the civil contests between the  
<sup>to</sup>  
**1575.** Huguenots and the Catholics in France, and with the  
 prince of Navarre, afterwards Henry IV., was learning  
 the art of war under the veteran Coligny. The Pro-  
 testant party was, at that time, strongly excited with  
 indignation at the massacre which De Gourgues had  
 avenged; and Raleigh could not but gather from his  
 associates and his commander intelligence respecting  
 Florida and the navigation to those regions. Some of  
 the miserable men who escaped from the first expe-  
 dition, had been conducted to Elizabeth,<sup>2</sup> and had  
 kindled in the public mind in England a desire for the  
 possession of the southern coast of our republic; the  
 reports of Hawkins,<sup>3</sup> who had been the benefactor of  
 the French on the River May, increased the national  
 excitement; and De Morgues,<sup>4</sup> the painter, who had  
 sketched in Florida the most remarkable appearances  
 of nature, ultimately found the opportunity of finishing  
 his designs, through the munificence of Raleigh.

<sup>1</sup> Oldys' Raleigh, 16, 17. Tyt-  
 ler's Raleigh, 19—23.

<sup>2</sup> Hakluyt, iii. 384.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. iii. 612—617.

<sup>4</sup> Hakluyt, iii. 364. Compare a  
 marginal note to iii. 425.

The progress of English maritime enterprise had prepared the way for vigorous efforts at colonization. <sup>CHAP. III.</sup> The second expedition of the Cabots was, as we have seen, connected with plans for settlements. Other commissions, for the same object, were issued by Henry VII. In the patent, which an American historian has recently published,<sup>1</sup> the design of establishing emigrants in the New World is distinctly proposed, and encouraged by the concession of a limited monopoly of the colonial trade and of commercial privileges. It is probable, that at least one voyage was made under the authority of this commission; for in the year after it was granted, natives of North America, in their wild attire, were exhibited to the public wonder of England.<sup>2</sup>

Yet if a voyage was actually made, its success was inconsiderable. A new patent,<sup>3</sup> with larger concessions, was issued, in part to the same patentees; and there is reason to believe, that the king now favored by gratuities<sup>4</sup> the expedition, which no longer appeared to promise any considerable returns. Where no profits followed adventure, navigation soon languished. Yet the connection between England and the New-Found Land was never abandoned. Documentary evidence exists of voyages<sup>5</sup> favored by the English, till the time when the Normans, the Biscayans, and the Bretons, began to frequent the fisheries on the American coast. Is it probable, that English mariners ever wholly resigned to a rival nation the benefits arising from their own discoveries?

Nor was the reign of Henry VIII. unfavorable to <sup>1509 to</sup> 1547.

<sup>1</sup> Memoir of Cabot, 306—314.

<sup>4</sup> Mem. of Cabot, 226. Note.

<sup>2</sup> Stow, An. 1502, 483, 484.

<sup>5</sup> Mem. of Cabot, 229, 230.

<sup>3</sup> Rymer's *Fœdera*, xiii. 37—42.

Bacon's Henry VII.

CHAP. the mercantile interests of his kingdom; and that  
 III. monarch, while his life was still unstained by profligacy, and his passions not yet hardened into the stubborn selfishness of despotism, considered the discovery of the north as his “charge and duty,” and made such experiments as the favorable situation of England appeared to demand.<sup>1</sup> An account has already been  
 1517. given of the last voyage of discovery in which Sebastian Cabot was personally engaged for his native land. Is it not probable, that other expeditions were made, with the favor of King Henry and of Wolsey, although no distinct account of them has been preserved? Of  
 1527. one such voyage for the discovery of a north-west passage, there exists a relation,<sup>2</sup> written by Rut, the commander of one of the ships, and forwarded from the haven of St. John in Newfoundland. This implies a direct and established intercourse between England and the American coast. Some part of the country was explored; for the English never abandoned the hope of planting a colony on the continent which Cabot had discovered.

The jealousy of the Spanish nation was excited, and already began to fear English rivalry in the New World.<sup>3</sup> Henry VIII. was vigorous in his attempts to check piracy; and the navigation of his subjects was extended under the security of his protection. The banner of St. George was often displayed in the harbors of Northern Africa and in the Levant;<sup>4</sup> and when commerce, emancipated from the confinement of the inner seas, went boldly forth to make the ocean its chief highway, England became more emulous to

<sup>1</sup> Thorne's letter, in 1527, to Henry VIII., in Hakluyt, i. 236.

<sup>2</sup> Purchas, iii. 809. Hakluyt, iii. 167, 168. Mem. of S. Cabot, part ii. c. ix.

<sup>3</sup> Herrera, d. ii. l. v. c. iii. Compare Oviedo, l. xix. c. xiii. in Ramusio, iii. fol. 204.

<sup>4</sup> Hill's Naval History, 267.

engage in a competition, in which her position gave <sup>CHAP.</sup>  
her a pledge of success. When voyages for traffic <sup>III.</sup> ~  
were already made by English merchants between 1530.  
the coasts of Africa and Brazil, it may be safely be-  
lieved, that the nearer shores of North America were  
not neglected.

An account exists of one expedition, which was conducted by Hore, and “assisted by the good countenance of Henry VIII.” But the incidents, as they were related to the inquisitive Hakluyt by “the only man then alive, that had been in the discovery,” are embellished with improbable aggravations of distress. Memory, at all periods of life, is easily deceived by the imagination; and men who relate marvellous tales of personal adventure, are the first to become the dupes of their own inventions. The old sailor, perhaps, believed his story, in which frequent repetition may have gradually deepened the shades of horror. Cannibalism 1536. is the crime of famine at sea; men do not often devour one another on shore, least of all on a coast abounding in wild fowl and fish. The English may have suffered from want; and as a French ship, “well furnished with vittails,” approached Newfoundland, they obtained possession of it by a stroke of “policie,” which, if dishonest, seems not to have been regarded as disgraceful, and set sail for England. The French followed in the English ship, and complained of the exchange. It shows the favor of Henry VIII. to maritime enterprise, that he pardoned his subjects the wrong, and of his own private purse “made full and royal recompense to the French.”<sup>1</sup>

The statute books of England soon gave proof, that 1541. the “new land” of America had engaged the attention

<sup>1</sup> Hakluyt, iii. 168—170.

CHAP. III. of parliament ;<sup>1</sup> and, after the accession of Edward, the fisheries of Newfoundland obtained the protection of a 1548. special act.<sup>2</sup> The preamble to this latter statute declares the navigation to have been burdened for years by exactions from the officers of the admiralty ; and its enactments forbid the continuance of the oppression. An active commerce must have long existed, since exactions, levied upon it, had almost become prescriptive.

But India was still esteemed the great region of wealth ; and England, then having no anticipation of one day becoming the sovereign of Hindostan, hoped for a peaceful intercourse only by the discovery of a new and nearer passage to Southern Asia. Thrice, at least, perhaps thrice by Cabot alone, the attempt at a north-western passage had been made, and always in 1553. vain. A north-east passage was now proposed ; the fleet of Willoughby and Chancellor was to reach the rich lands of Cathay by doubling the northern promontory of Lapland. The ships parted company. The fate of Willoughby was as tragical as the issue of the voyage of Chancellor was successful. The admiral, with one of the ships, was driven, by the severity of the polar autumn, to seek shelter in a Lapland harbor, which afforded protection against storms, but not against the rigors of the season. When search was made for him in the following spring, Willoughby himself was found dead in his cabin ; and his journal, detailing his sufferings from the polar winter, was complete probably to the day when his senses were suspended by the intolerable cold. His ship's company lay dead in various parts of the vessel, some alone, some in groups. The other ship reached the harbor 1554.

<sup>1</sup> 33 Henry VIII., c. ii. Ruffhead, ii. 304.

412. Hakluyt, iii. 170. Hazard, i. 22, 23.

<sup>2</sup> 2 Edward VI., in Ruffhead, ii.

of Archangel. This was "the discovery of Russia," <sup>CHAP.  
III.</sup> and the commencement of maritime commerce with ~~the~~<sup>1554</sup> that empire. A Spanish writer calls the result of the voyage "a discovery of new Indies."<sup>1</sup> The Russian nation, one of the oldest and least mixed in Europe, now awakening from a long lethargy, emerged into political distinction. We have seen that, about eleven years from this time, the first town in the United States' territory was permanently built. So rapid are the changes on the theatre of nations! One of the leading powers of the age, but about two and a half centuries ago became known to Western Europe; another had not then one white man within its limits.

The principle of joint stock companies, so favorable to every enterprise of uncertain result, by dividing the risks, and by nourishing a spirit of emulous zeal in behalf of an inviting scheme, was applied to the purposes of navigation; and a company of merchant adventurers <sup>1555</sup> was incorporated for the discovery of unknown lands.<sup>2</sup>

For even the intolerance of Queen Mary could not <sup>1553</sup> check the passion for maritime adventure. The sea <sup>to  
1558.</sup> was becoming the element on which English valor was to display its greatest boldness; English sailors neither feared the sultry heats and consuming fevers of the tropics, nor the intense severity of northern cold. The trade to Russia, now that the port of Archangel had been discovered, gradually increased and became very lucrative; and a regular and as yet an innocent <sup>1553.</sup> commerce was carried on with Africa.<sup>3</sup> The marriage <sup>1554.</sup> of Mary with the king of Spain tended to excite the <sup>July  
25.</sup> emulation which it was designed to check. The en-

<sup>1</sup> Hakluyt, i. 251—284. Turner's England, iii. 298—301. Purchas, iii. 462, 463.

<sup>3</sup> The Viage to Guinea in 1553, in Eden and Willes, fol. 336, 337—353.

<sup>2</sup> Hakluyt, i. 298—304.

CHAP. thusiasm awakened by the brilliant pageantry with  
 III. which King Philip was introduced into London, excited  
 Richard Eden<sup>1</sup> to gather into a volume the history of  
 the most memorable maritime expeditions. Religious  
 restraints, the thirst for rapid wealth, the desire of  
 strange adventure, had driven the boldest spirits of  
 Spain to the New World ; their deeds had been com-  
 memorated by the copious and accurate details of the  
 Spanish historians ; and the English, through the alli-  
 ance of their sovereign made familiar with the Spanish  
 language and literature, became emulous of Spanish  
 success beyond the ocean.

1558. The firmness of Elizabeth seconded the enterprise  
 of her subjects. They were rendered the more proud  
 and intractable for the short and unsuccessful effort to  
 make England an appendage to Spain ; and the tri-  
 umph of Protestantism, quickening the spirit of nation-  
 ality, gave a new impulse to the people. England, no  
 longer the ally, but the antagonist of Philip, claimed  
 the glory of being the mistress of the northern seas, and  
 prepared to extend its commerce to every clime. The  
 queen strengthened her navy, filled her arsenals, and  
 encouraged the building of ships in England : she ani-  
 mated the adventurers to Russia and to Africa by her  
 1561 special protection ; and while her subjects were en-  
 to 1568. deavoring to penetrate into Persia by land, and enlarge  
 their commerce with the East<sup>2</sup> by combining the use of  
 ships and caravans, the harbors of Spanish America  
 were at the same time visited by their privateers in  
 pursuit of the rich galleons of Spain, and at least from  
 1574-8 thirty to fifty English ships came annually to the bays  
 and banks of Newfoundland.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Eden's Decades, published in  
 1555.

<sup>2</sup> Eden and Willes. The Voyages  
 of Persia, traveled by the Mer-

chants of London, &c. in 1561,  
 1567, 1568, fol. 321, and ff.

<sup>3</sup> Parkhurst, in Hakluyt, iii. 171.

The possibility of effecting a north-west passage had ever been maintained by Cabot. The study of geography had now become an interesting pursuit; the press teemed with books of travels, maps and descriptions of the earth; and Sir Humphrey Gilbert, reposing from the toils of war, engaged deeply in the science of cosmography. A judicious and well-written argument<sup>1</sup> in favor of the possibility of a north-western passage was the fruit of his literary industry.

The same views were entertained by one of the boldest men who ever ventured upon the ocean. For fifteen years, Martin Frobisher, an Englishman, well versed in various navigation, had revolved the design of accomplishing the discovery of the north-western passage; esteeming it "the only thing of the world, that was yet left undone, by which a notable minde might be made famous and fortunate."<sup>2</sup> Too poor himself to provide a ship, it was in vain that he conferred with friends; in vain he offered his services to merchants. After years of desire, his representations found a hearing at court; and Dudley, earl of Warwick, liberally promoted his design.<sup>3</sup> Two small barks of twenty-five and of twenty tons, with a pinnace of ten tons' burden, composed the whole fleet, which was to enter gulfs that none but Cabot had visited. As they dropped down the Thames, Queen Elizabeth waved her hand in token of favor, and, by an honorable message, transmitted her approbation of an adventure which her own treasures had not contributed to advance. During a storm on the voyage, the pinnace was swallowed up by the sea; the mariners in the Michael became terrified, and turned their prow home-

June  
8.

<sup>1</sup> Hakluyt, iii. 32—47.

<sup>2</sup> Best, in Hakluyt, iii. 86.

<sup>3</sup> Willes's Essay for M. Frobish-

er's voyage, in Eden and Willes, fol. 230, and ff.; in Hakluyt, iii.

47—52.

CHAP. wards ; but Frobisher, in a vessel not much surpassing  
<sup>III.</sup> in tonnage the barge of a man-of-war, made his way,  
1576. fearless and unattended, to the shores of Labrador,  
and to a passage or inlet north of the entrance of  
Hudson's Bay. A strange perversion has transferred  
the scene of his discoveries to the eastern coast of  
Greenland ;<sup>1</sup> it was among a group of American  
islands, in the latitude of sixty-three degrees and eight  
minutes, that he entered what seemed to be a strait.  
Hope suggested that his object was obtained ; that the  
land on the south was America ; on the north was the  
continent of Asia ; and that the strait opened into the  
immense Pacific. Great praise is due to Frobisher,  
even though he penetrated less deeply than Cabot into  
the bays and among the islands of this Meta Incognita,  
this unknown goal of discovery. Yet his voyage was  
a failure. To land upon an island, and, perhaps, on  
the main ; to gather up stones and rubbish, in token of  
having taken possession of the country for Elizabeth ;  
to seize one of the natives of the north for exhibition  
to the gaze of Europe ;—these were all the results  
which he accomplished.

1577. What followed marks the insane passions of the age. America and mines were always thought of together. A stone, which had been brought from the frozen regions, was pronounced by the refiners of London to contain gold. The news excited the wakeful avarice of the city : there were not wanting those who endeavored to purchase of Elizabeth a lease of the new lands, of which the loose minerals were so full of the precious metal. A fleet was immediately fitted out, to procure more of the gold, rather than to make any

<sup>1</sup> Forster's Northern Voyages, 274—284; Hist. des Voyages, t. xv. 94—100.

further research for the passage into the Pacific; and CHAP.  
 the queen, who had contributed nothing to the voyage ~~—~~<sup>III.</sup> of discovery, sent a large ship of her own to join the 1577.  
 expedition, which was now to conduct to infinite  
 opulence. More men than could be employed volunteered their services; those who were discharged resigned their brilliant hopes with reluctance. The mariners, having received the communion, embarked May 27.  
 for the arctic El Dorado, "and with a merrie wind" soon arrived at the Orkneys. As they reached the north-eastern coast of America, the dangers of the polar seas became imminent; mountains of ice encompassed them on every side; but as the icebergs were brilliant in the high latitude with the light of an almost perpetual summer's day, the worst perils were avoided. Yet the mariners were alternately agitated with fears of shipwreck and joy at escape. At one moment they expected death; and at the next they looked for gold. The fleet made no discoveries; it did not advance so far as Frobisher alone had done.<sup>1</sup> But it found large heaps of earth, which, even to the incredulous, seemed plainly to contain the coveted wealth; besides, spiders abounded; and "spiders were" affirmed to be "true signs of great store of gold."<sup>2</sup> In freighting the ships, the admiral himself toiled like a painful laborer. How strange, in human affairs, is the mixture of sublime courage and ludicrous folly! What bolder maritime enterprise, than, in that day, a voyage to lands lying north of Hudson's Straits! What folly more egregious, than to have gone there for a lading of useless earth!

But credulity is apt to be self-willed. What is there which the passion for gold will not prompt? It defies

<sup>1</sup> Best, in Hakluyt, iii. 95.

<sup>2</sup> Settle, in Hakluyt, iii. 63.

How rich, then, the alcoves of a

library!

CHAP. danger, and laughs at obstacles ; it resists loss, and anti-  
 III. cipates treasures ; unrelenting in its pursuit, it is deaf to the voice of mercy, and blind to the cautions of judgment ; it can penetrate the prairies of Arkansas, and covet the moss-grown barrens of the Esquimaux. I  
 1578. have now to relate the first attempt of the English, under the patronage of Elizabeth, to plant an establishment in America.<sup>1</sup>

It was believed that the rich mines of the polar regions would countervail the charges of a costly adventure ; the hope of a passage to Cathay increased ; and for the security of the newly-discovered lands, soldiers and discreet men were selected to become their inhabitants. A magnificent fleet of fifteen sail was assembled, in part at the expense of Elizabeth ; the sons of the English gentry embarked as volunteers ; one hundred persons were chosen to form the colony, which was to secure to England a country more desirable than Peru, a country too inhospitable to produce a tree or a shrub, yet where gold lay, not charily concealed in mines, but glistening in heaps upon the surface. Twelve vessels were to return immediately with cargoes of the ore ; three were ordered to remain and aid the settlement. The north-west passage was now become of less consideration ; Asia itself could not vie with the riches of this hyperborean archipelago.

1578. But the entrance to these wealthy islands was ren-  
 May 31, dered difficult by frost ; and the fleet of Frobisher, as  
 to Sept. 28. it now approached the American coast, was bewildered among immense icebergs, which were so vast, that, as they melted, torrents poured from them in sparkling waterfalls. One vessel was crushed and sunk, though the men on board were saved. In the dangerous

<sup>1</sup> Hakluyt, iii. 71—73.

mists, the ships lost their course, and came into the CHAP.  
straits which have since been called Hudson's, and ~~III.~~  
which lie south of the imagined gold regions. The 1578.  
admiral believed himself able to sail through to the  
Pacific, and resolve the doubt respecting the passage.  
But his duty as a mercantile agent controlled his desire  
of glory as a navigator. He struggled to regain the  
harbor where his vessels were to be laden ; and, after  
encountering peril of every kind ; “getting in at one  
gap and out at another ;” escaping only by miracle  
from hidden rocks and unknown currents, ice, and a  
lee shore, which was, at one time, avoided only by a  
prosperous breath of wind in the very moment of ex-  
treme danger,—he at last arrived at the haven in the  
Countess of Warwick’s Sound. The zeal of the vol-  
unteer colonists had moderated ; and the disheartened  
sailors were ready to mutiny. One ship, laden with  
provisions for the colony, deserted and returned ; and  
an island was discovered with enough of the black ore  
“to suffice all the gold-gluttons of the world.” The  
plan of the settlement was abandoned. It only re-  
mained to freight the home-bound ships with a store  
of minerals. They who engage in a foolish project,  
combine, in case of failure, to conceal their loss ; for a  
confession of the truth would be an impeachment of  
their judgment ; so that unfortunate speculations are  
promptly consigned to oblivion. The adventurers and  
the historians of the voyage are silent about the dispo-  
sition which was made of the cargo of the fleet. The  
knowledge of the seas was not extended ; the credulity  
of avarice met with a rebuke ; and the belief in regions  
of gold among the Esquimaux was dissipated ; but  
there remained a firm conviction, that a passage to the

CHAP. Pacific Ocean might yet be threaded among the icebergs  
 III. and northern islands of America.<sup>1</sup>

While Frobisher was thus attempting to obtain wealth and fame on the north-east coast of America, the western limits of the territory of the United States became known. Embarking on a voyage in quest of fortune, Francis Drake acquired immense treasures as a freebooter in the Spanish harbors on the Pacific, and, having laden his ship with spoils, gained for himself enduring glory by circumnavigating the globe. But before following in the path which the ship of Magellan had thus far alone dared to pursue, Drake determined to explore the north-western coast of America, in the hope of discovering the strait which connects the oceans. With this view, he crossed the equator, sailed beyond the peninsula of California, and followed the continent to the latitude of forty-three degrees, corresponding to the latitude of the southern borders of New Hampshire.<sup>2</sup> Here the cold seemed intolerable to men who had just left the tropics. Despairing of success, he retired to a harbor in a milder latitude, within the limits of Mexico; and, having repaired his ship, and named the country New Albion, he sailed for England, through the seas of Asia. Thus was the southern part of the Oregon territory first visited by Englishmen, yet not till after a voyage of the Spanish from Acapulco, commanded by Cabrillo, a Portuguese, had traced the American continent to within two and a half degrees of the mouth of Columbia River;<sup>3</sup> while, thirteen years after the

<sup>1</sup> On Frobisher, consult the original accounts of Hall, Settle, Ellis, and Best, with R. Hakluyt's instructions, in Hak. iii. 52—129.

<sup>2</sup> Course of Sir Francis Drake, in Hak. iii. 524; Johnson's Life of Drake.

<sup>3</sup> Forster's Northern Voyages, b.

voyage of Drake, John de Fuca, a mariner from the CHAP.  
 Isles of Greece, then in the employ of the viceroy of <sup>III.</sup>  
 Mexico, sailed into the bay which is now known as 1593  
 the Gulf of Georgia, and, having for twenty days  
 steered through its intricate windings and numerous  
 islands, returned with a belief, that the entrance to  
 the long-desired passage into the Atlantic had been  
 found.<sup>1</sup>

The lustre of the name of Drake is borrowed from 1578 his success. In itself, this part of his career was but a splendid piracy against a nation with which his sovereign and his country professed to be at peace. Oxenham, a subordinate officer, who had ventured to imitate his master, was taken by the Spaniards and hanged; nor was his punishment either unexpected or censured in England as severe. The exploits of Drake, except so far as they nourished a love for maritime affairs, were injurious to commerce; the minds of the sailors were debauched by a passion for sudden acquisitions; and to receive regular wages seemed base and unmanly, when, at the easy peril of life, there was hope of boundless plunder. Commerce and colonization rest on regular industry; the humble labor of the English fishermen, who now frequented the Grand Bank, bred mariners for the navy of their country, and prepared the way for its settlements in the New World. Already four hundred vessels came annually from the harbors of Portugal and Spain, of France and England, to the shores of Newfoundland. The English were not there in such numbers as other nations, for they still frequented the fisheries of Iceland; but

iii. c. iv. s. ii. Humboldt, *Nouv. Esp.* ii. 436, 437. Compare Viage de las Goletas Sutil y Mexicana, 34. 36. 57.

<sup>1</sup> Purchas, iv. 849—852. Forster is skeptical; b. iii. c. iv. s. iv. Belknap's Am. Biog. i. 224—230.

CHAP. yet they “were commonly lords in the harbors,” and  
 III. ~ in the arrogance of naval supremacy, exacted payment  
 1578. for protection.<sup>1</sup> It is an incident honorable to the  
 humanity of the early voyagers, that, on one of the  
 American islands, not far from the fishing stations,  
 hogs and horned cattle were purposely left, that they  
 might multiply and become a resource to some future  
 generation of colonists.<sup>2</sup>

While the queen and her adventurers were dazzled  
 by the glittering prospects of mines of gold in the  
 frozen regions of the remote north, Sir Humphrey Gil-  
 bert, with a sounder judgment and a better knowledge,  
 watched the progress of the fisheries, and formed  
 healthy plans for colonization. He had been a soldier  
 and a member of parliament. He was a judicious  
 writer on navigation;<sup>3</sup> and though censured for his  
 ignorance of the principles of liberty,<sup>4</sup> he was esteemed  
 for the sincerity of his piety. He was one of those who  
 alike despise fickleness and fear: danger never turned  
 him aside from the pursuit of honor or the service of  
 his sovereign; for he knew that death is inevitable, and  
 the fame of virtue immortal.<sup>5</sup> It was not difficult for  
 June 11. Gilbert to obtain a liberal patent,<sup>6</sup> formed according to  
 the tenor of a previous precedent, and to be of per-  
 petual efficacy, if a plantation should be established  
 within six years. To the people who might belong to  
 his colony, the rights of Englishmen were promised;  
 to Gilbert, the possession for himself or his assigns of  
 the soil which he might discover, and the sole jurisdic-  
 tion, both civil and criminal, of the territory within two

<sup>1</sup> See the letter of Ant. Park-  
 hurst, who had himself been for four  
 years engaged in the Newfound-  
 land trade, in Hakluyt, iii. 170  
 —174.

<sup>2</sup> Hakluyt, iii. 197.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. iii. 32—47.

<sup>4</sup> D'Ewes's Journal, 168 and 175.

<sup>5</sup> Gilbert, in Hakluyt, iii. 47.

<sup>6</sup> The patent may be found in  
 Hakluyt, iii. 174—176; Stith's Vir-  
 ginia, 4, 5, 6; Hazard, i. 24—28.

hundred leagues of his settlement, with supreme executive and legislative authority. Thus the attempts at colonization, in which Cabot and Frobisher had failed, were renewed under a patent that conferred every immunity on the leader of the enterprise, and abandoned the colonists themselves to the mercy of an absolute proprietary.

CHAP.  
III.

Under this patent, Gilbert began to collect a company of volunteer adventurers, contributing largely from his own fortune to the preparation. Jarrings and divisions ensued, before the voyage was begun; many abandoned what they had inconsiderately undertaken; the general and a few of his assured friends—among them, perhaps, his step-brother, Walter Raleigh—put to sea: 1579. one of his ships was lost; and misfortune compelled the remainder to return.<sup>1</sup> The vagueness of the accounts of this expedition is ascribed to a conflict with a Spanish fleet, of which the issue was unfavorable to the little squadron of emigrants.<sup>2</sup> Gilbert attempted to keep his patent alive by making grants of lands. None of his assigns succeeded in establishing a colony; and he was himself too much impoverished to renew his efforts.

But the pupil of Coligny was possessed of an active genius, which delighted in hazardous adventure. To prosecute discoveries in the New World, lay the foundation of states, and acquire immense domains, appeared to the daring enterprise of Raleigh as easy designs, which would not interfere with the pursuit of favor and the career of glory in England. Before the limit of the charter had expired, Gilbert, assisted by his brother, equipped a new squadron. The fleet em- 1583. barked under happy omens; the commander, on the

<sup>1</sup> Hayes, in Hakluyt, iii. 186.<sup>2</sup> Oldys, 28, 29. Tytler, 26, 27.

CHAP. eve of his departure, received from Elizabeth a golden  
<sup>III.</sup> anchor guided by a lady, a token of the queen's regard ;  
1583. a man of letters from Hungary accompanied the expe-  
dition ; and some part of the United States would have  
then been colonized, had not the unhappy projector of  
the design been overwhelmed by a succession of dis-  
asters. Two days after leaving Plymouth, the largest  
June 13. ship in the fleet, which had been furnished by Raleigh,  
who himself remained in England, deserted, under a  
pretence of infectious disease, and returned into harbor.  
Gilbert was incensed, but not intimidated. He sailed  
Aug. 5. for Newfoundland ; and, entering St. Johns, he sum-  
moned the Spaniards and Portuguese, and other stran-  
gers, to witness the feudal ceremonies by which he took  
possession of the country for his sovereign. A pillar, on  
which the arms of England were infix'd, was raised as  
a monument ; and lands were granted to the fishermen  
in fee, on condition of the payment of a quit-rent.  
The "mineral-man" of the expedition, an honest and  
religious Saxon, was especially diligent ; it was gen-  
erally agreed that "the mountains made a show of  
mineral substance ;" the Saxon protested on his life  
that silver ore abounded ; he was charged to keep the  
discovery a profound secret ; and, as there were so  
many foreign vessels in the vicinity, the precious ore  
was carried on board the larger ship with such mystery,  
that the dull Portuguese and Spaniards suspected  
nothing of the matter.

It was not easy for Gilbert to preserve order in the  
little fleet. Many of the mariners, infected with the  
vices which at that time degraded their profession,  
were no better than pirates, and were perpetually  
bent upon pillaging whatever ships fell in their way.  
At length, having abandoned one of their barks, the

English, now in three vessels only, sailed on further CHAP.  
discoveries, intending to visit the coast of the United <sup>III.</sup>  
States. But they had not proceeded towards the <sup>1583.</sup>  
south beyond the latitude of Wiscasset, when the  
largest ship, from the carelessness of the crew, struck  
and was wrecked. Nearly a hundred men perished ;  
the “mineral-man” and the ore were all lost ; nor was  
it possible to rescue Parmenius, the Hungarian scholar,  
who should have been the historian of the expedition.

Aug.  
27.

It now seemed necessary to hasten to England. Gilbert had sailed in the Squirrel, a bark of ten tons only, and therefore convenient for entering harbors and approaching the coast. On the homeward voyage, the brave admiral would not forsake his little company, with whom he had encountered so many storms and perils. A desperate resolution ! The weather was extremely rough ; the oldest mariner had never seen “more outrageous seas.” The little frigate, not more than twice as large as the long-boat of a merchantman, “too small a bark to pass through the ocean sea at that season of the year,” was nearly wrecked. The general, sitting abaft with a book in his hand, cried out to those in the Hind, “We are as neere to heaven by sea as by land.” That same night, about twelve o’clock, the lights of the Squirrel suddenly disappeared ; and neither the vessel, nor any of its crew, was ever again seen. The Hind reached Falmouth in safety.<sup>1</sup>

Sept.  
22.

The bold spirit of Raleigh was not disheartened by <sup>1584.</sup> the sad fate of his step-brother ; but his mind revolved a settlement in a milder climate ; and he was deter-

<sup>1</sup> On Gilbert, see Hayes, in Hakluyt, iii. 184—203 ; Parmenius to Hakluyt, iii. 203—205 ; Clark’s Relation, *ibid.* 206—208 ; Gilbert to

Peckham, in Purchas, iii. 808 ; Raleigh to Gilbert, in Tytler’s Raleigh, 45.

CHAP. <sup>III.</sup> mined to secure to England those delightful countries from which the Protestants of France had been ex-  
 1584. pelled. Having presented a memorial, he readily Mar. 25. obtained from Elizabeth a patent<sup>1</sup> as ample as that which had been conferred on Gilbert. It was drawn according to the principles of feudal law, and with strict regard to the Christian faith, as professed in the church of England. Raleigh was constituted a lord proprietary, with almost unlimited powers; holding his territories by homage and an inconsiderable rent, and possessing jurisdiction over an extensive region, of which he had power to make grants according to his pleasure.

Expectations rose high, since the balmy regions of the south were now to be colonized; and the terrors of icy seas were forgotten in the hope of gaining a province in a clime of perpetual fertility, where winter hardly intruded to check the productiveness of nature. Two vessels, well laden with men and provisions, under the command of Philip Amidas and Arthur Barlow, buoyant with hope, set sail for the New World. They pursued the circuitous route by the Canaries and the islands of the West Indies; after a short stay in those islands, they sailed for the north, and were soon April 27. opposite the shores of Carolina. As they drew near July 2. land, the fragrance was "as if they had been in the midst of some delicate garden, abounding with all kinds of odoriferous flowers." They ranged the coast for a distance of one hundred and twenty miles, in search of a convenient harbor; they entered the first haven which offered, and, after thanks to God for their safe arrival, they landed to take possession of the country for the queen of England.

The spot on which this ceremony was performed,

<sup>1</sup> Hakluyt, iii. 297—301. Hazard, i. 33—38.

was in the Island of Wocoken, the southernmost of the CHAP.  
islands forming Ocracock Inlet. The shores of North <sup>III.</sup> Carolina, at some periods of the year, cannot safely 1584. be approached by a fleet, from the hurricanes which sweep the air in those regions, and against which the formation of the coast offers no secure roadsteads and harbors. But in the month of July, the sea was tranquil ; the skies were clear ; no storms were gathering ; the air was agitated by none but the gentlest breezes ; and the English commanders were in raptures with the beauty of the ocean, seen in the magnificence of repose, gemmed with islands, and expanding in the clearest transparency from cape to cape. The vegetation of that southern latitude struck the beholders with admiration ; the trees had not their paragons in the world ; the luxuriant vines, as they clambered up the loftiest cedars, formed graceful festoons ; grapes were so plenty upon every little shrub, that the surge of the ocean, as it lazily rolled in upon the shore with the quiet winds of summer, dashed its spray upon the clusters ; and natural arbors formed an impervious shade, that not a ray of the suns of July could penetrate. The forests were filled with birds ; and, at the discharge of an arquebuss, whole flocks would arise, uttering a cry, which the many echoes redoubled, till it seemed as if an army of men had shouted together.

The gentleness of the native inhabitants appeared in harmony with the loveliness of the scene. The desire of traffic overcame the timidity of the natives, and the English received a friendly welcome. On the Island of Roanoke, they were entertained by the wife of Granganimeo, father of Wingina, the king, with the refinements of Arcadian hospitality. “The people were most gentle, loving and faithful, void of all guile

CHAP. III. and treason, and such as lived after the manner of the golden age." They had no cares but to guard against 1584. the moderate cold of a short winter, and to gather such food as the earth almost spontaneously produced. And yet it was added, with singular want of comparison, that the wars of these guileless men were cruel and bloody; that domestic dissensions had almost exterminated whole tribes; that they employed the basest stratagems against their enemies; and that the practice of inviting men to a feast, that they might be murdered in the hour of confidence, was not merely a device of European bigots, but was known to the natives of Secotan. The English, too, were solicited to engage in a similar enterprise, under promise of lucrative booty.

The adventurers were satisfied with observing the general aspect of the new world; no extensive examination of the coast was undertaken; Pamlico and Albemarle Sound and Roanoke Island were explored, and some information gathered by inquiries from the Indians; the commanders had not the courage or the activity to survey the country with exactness. Having made but a short stay in America, they arrived in September in the west of England, accompanied by Manteo and Wanchese, two natives of the wilderness; and the returning voyagers gave such glowing descriptions of their discoveries, as might be expected from men who had done no more than sail over the smooth waters of a summer's sea, among "the hundred islands" of North Carolina.<sup>1</sup> Elizabeth, as she heard their reports,

<sup>1</sup> Amidas and Barlow's account, in Hakluyt, iii. 301—307. I have compared, on this and the following voyages, Smith's Virginia, i. 80—85; Stith, 8—12; Tytler's Raleigh, 47—54; Oldys, 55; Birch, 580, 581;

Cayley, i. 33—46; Thomson, 32; Williamson's North Carolina, i. 28—37; and Martin's North Carolina, i. 9—12. I have followed exclusively the contemporaneous account, deriving, in the comparison of local-

esteemed her reign signalized by the discovery of the CHAP.  
enchanting regions, and, as a memorial of her state of  
life, named them Virginia. III.  
1584.

Nor was it long before Raleigh, elected to represent in parliament the county of Devon, obtained a bill confirming his patent of discovery;<sup>1</sup> and while he received the honor of knighthood, as the reward of his valor, he also acquired a lucrative monopoly of wines, which enabled him to continue with vigor his schemes of colonization.<sup>2</sup> The prospect of becoming the proprietary of a delightful territory, with a numerous tenantry, who should yield him not only a revenue, but allegiance, inflamed his ambition; and, as the English nation listened with credulity to the descriptions of Amidas and Barlow, it was not difficult to gather a numerous company of emigrants. While a new patent<sup>3</sup> was issued to his friend, for the discovery of the north-western passage, and the well-known voyages of Davis, sustained, in part, by the contributions of Raleigh himself, were increasing the acquaintance of Europe with the Arctic sea, the plan of colonizing Virginia was earnestly and steadily pursued.

The new expedition was composed of seven vessels, 1585. and carried one hundred and eight colonists to the shores of Carolina. Ralph Lane, a man of considerable distinction, and so much esteemed for his services as a soldier, that he was afterwards knighted by Queen Elizabeth, was willing to act for Raleigh as governor of the colony. Sir Richard Grenville, the most able and celebrated of Raleigh's associates, distinguished for bravery among the gallant spirits of a gallant age, assumed the command of the fleet. It sailed from Ply-

Dec  
18.

April  
9.

ties, much benefit from a MS. in my possession, by J. S. Jones, of Shocco, North Carolina.

<sup>1</sup> D'Ewes's Journal, 339. 341.

<sup>2</sup> Tytler, 54, 55. Oldys, 58, 59.

<sup>3</sup> Hakluyt, iii. 129—157.

CHAP. mouth, accompanied by several men of merit, whom the  
 III.  
 ~ world remembers ;—by Cavendish, who soon after cir-  
 1585. cumnavigated the globe ; Hariot, the inventor of the  
 system of notation in modern algebra,<sup>1</sup> the historian of  
 the expedition ; and With, an ingenious painter, whose  
 sketches<sup>2</sup> of the natives, their habits and modes of life,  
 were taken with beauty and exactness, and were the  
 means of encouraging an interest in Virginia, by dif-  
 fusing a knowledge of its productions.

To sail by the Canaries and the West Indies, to  
 conduct a gainful commerce with the Spanish ports by  
 intimidation ; to capture Spanish vessels ;—these were  
 but the expected preliminaries of a voyage to Virginia.

June 20. At length the fleet fell in with the main land of  
 24. Florida ; it was in great danger of being wrecked on  
 the cape which was then first called the Cape of Fear ;  
 26. and two days after it came to anchor at Wocoken. The perils of the navigation on the shoals of that coast  
 became too evident ; the largest ship of the squadron,  
 as it entered the harbor, struck, but was not lost. It  
 was through Ocracock Inlet that the fleet made its way  
 to Roanoke.

But the fate of this colony was destined to be in-  
 fluenced by the character of the natives. Manteo, the  
 friend of the English, and who returned with the fleet  
 from a visit to England, was sent to the main to an-  
 nounce their arrival. Grenville, accompanied by Lane,  
 July 11. Hariot, Cavendish, and others, in an excursion of eight  
 to 18. days, explored the coast as far as Secotan, and, as  
 they relate, were well entertained of the savages. At  
 one of the Indian towns, a silver cup had been stolen ;  
 its restoration was delayed ; with hasty cruelty, Gren-

<sup>1</sup> Tytler, 66. Stith, 20. Play-

fair's Dissertation, p. i. s. i.

<sup>2</sup> In De Bry, part ii. They are  
 also imitated in Beverley's Virginia.

ville ordered the village to be burnt and the standing corn to be destroyed. Not long after this action of inconsiderate revenge, the ships, having landed the colony, sailed for England ; a rich Spanish prize, made by Grenville on the return voyage, secured him a courteous welcome as he entered the harbor of Plymouth. The transport ships of the colony were at the same time privateers.<sup>1</sup>

The employments of Lane and his colonists, after the departure of Sir Richard Grenville, could be none other than to explore the country ; and in a letter, which he wrote while his impressions were yet fresh, he expressed himself in language of enthusiastic admiration. “ It is the goodliest soil under the cope of heaven ; the most pleasing territory of the world ; the continent is of a huge and unknown greatness, and very well peopled and towned, though savagely. The climate is so wholesome, that we have not one sick, since we touched the land. If Virginia had but horses and kine, and were inhabited with English, no realm in Christendom were comparable to it.”<sup>2</sup>

The keenest observer was Hariot ; and he was often employed in dealing with “ the natural inhabitants.” He carefully examined the productions of the country, those which would furnish commodities for commerce, and those which were in esteem among the natives. He observed the culture of tobacco ; accustomed himself to its use, and was a firm believer in its healing virtues. The culture of maize, and the extraordinary productiveness of that grain, especially attracted his admiration ; and the tuberous roots of the potato, when boiled, were found to be very good food. The inhab-

<sup>1</sup> The Voyage, in Hakluyt, iii. 307—310.      <sup>2</sup> Lane, in Hakluyt, iii. 311.

CHAP. itants are described as too feeble to inspire terror,  
<sup>III.</sup> clothed in mantles and aprons of deer-skins ; having no  
1585. weapons but wooden swords and bows of witch-hazel  
with arrows of reeds ; no armor but targets of bark and  
sticks wickered together with thread. Their towns  
were small ; the largest containing but thirty dwellings.  
The walls of the houses were made of bark, fastened  
to stakes ; and sometimes consisted of poles fixed up-  
right, one by another, and at the top bent over and  
fastened ; as arbors are sometimes made in gardens.  
But the great peculiarity of the Indians consisted in  
the want of political connection. A single town often  
constituted a government ; a collection of ten or  
twenty wigwams was an independent state. The  
greatest chief in the whole country could not muster  
more than seven or eight hundred fighting men. The  
dialect of each government seemed a language by  
itself. The country which Hariot explored was on  
the boundary of the Algonquin race ; where the Lenni  
Lenape tribes melted into the widely-differing nations  
of the south. The wars among themselves rarely led  
them to the open battle-field ; they were accustomed  
rather to sudden surprises at daybreak or by moonlight,  
to ambushes and the subtle devices of cunning falsehood.  
Destitute of the arts, they yet displayed excellency  
of wit in all which they attempted. Nor were  
they entirely ignorant of religion ; but to the credulity  
of polytheism, they joined a confused belief in the  
existence of one supreme power. It is natural to the  
human mind to desire immortality ; the natives of  
Carolina believed in continued existence after death,  
and in retributive justice. The mathematical instru-  
ments, the burning-glass, guns, clocks, and the use of  
letters, seemed the works of gods, rather than of men ;

and the English were reverenced as the pupils and <sup>CHAP.</sup>  
 favorites of Heaven. In every town which Hariot <sup>III.</sup>  
 entered, he displayed the Bible, and explained its 1585  
 truths ; the Indians revered the volume rather than its  
 doctrines ; and, with a fond superstition, they embraced  
 the book, kissed it, and held it to their breasts and  
 heads, as if it had been an amulet. As the colonists  
 enjoyed uniform health, and had no women with them,  
 there were some among the Indians who imagined the  
 English were not born of woman, and therefore not  
 mortal ; that they were men of an old generation, risen  
 to immortality. The terrors of fire-arms the natives  
 could neither comprehend nor resist ; every sickness  
 which now prevailed among them, was attributed to  
 wounds from invisible bullets, discharged by unseen  
 agents, with whom the air was supposed to be peopled.  
 They prophesied, that “ there were more of the  
 English generation yet to come, to kill theirs and take  
 their places ; ” and some believed, that the purpose  
 of extermination was already matured, and its execution  
 begun.<sup>1</sup>

Was it strange, then, that the natives desired to be 1586.  
 delivered from the presence of guests by whom they  
 feared to be supplanted ? The colonists were mad  
 with the passion for gold ; and a wily savage invented, Mar.  
 respecting the River Roanoke and its banks, extrav-  
 agant tales, which nothing but cupidity could have  
 credited. The river, it was said, gushed forth from a  
 rock, so near the Pacific Ocean, that the surge of the  
 sea sometimes dashed into its fountain ; its banks were  
 inhabited by a nation skilled in the art of refining the  
 rich ore in which the country abounded. The walls  
 of the city were described as glittering from the abun-

<sup>1</sup> Hariot, in Hakluyt, iii. 324—340.

CHAP. III. dance of pearls. Lane was so credulous, that he at-  
tempted to ascend the rapid current of the Roanoke ;  
1586. and his followers, infatuated with greedy avarice, would  
not return till their stores of provisions were exhausted,  
and they had killed and eaten the very dogs which  
bore them company. On this attempt to explore the  
interior, the English hardly advanced higher up the  
river than some point near the present village of Wil-  
liamstown.

April. The Indians had hoped to destroy the English by thus dividing them ; but the prompt return of Lane prevented open hostilities. They next conceived the plan of leaving their lands unplanted ; and they were willing to abandon their fields, if famine would in conse-  
quence compel the departure of their too powerful guests. The suggestion was defeated by the moderation of one of their aged chiefs ; but the feeling of

May. enmity could not be restrained. The English believed that a general conspiracy was preparing ; that fear of a foreign enemy was now teaching the natives the necessity of union ; and that a grand alliance was forming to destroy the strangers by a general massacre.

Perhaps the English, whom avarice had certainly ren-  
dered credulous, were now precipitate in giving faith to the whispers of jealousy ; it is certain that, in the con-  
test of dissimulation, they proved themselves the more successful adepts. Desiring an audience of Wingina,

the most active among the native chiefs, Lane and his attendants were quickly admitted to his presence. No

June 1. hostile intentions were displayed by the Indians ; their reception of the English was proof of their confidence. Immediately a preconcerted watchword was given ; and the Christians, falling upon the unhappy king and his principal followers, put them without mercy to death.

It was evident that Lane did not possess the qualities suited to his station. He had not the sagacity which could rightly interpret the stories or the designs of the natives; and the courage, like the eye, of a soldier, differs from that of a traveler. His discoveries were inconsiderable: to the south they had extended only to Secotan, in the present county of Carteret, between the Pamlico and the Neuse; to the north they reached no farther than the small River Elizabeth, which joins the Chesapeake Bay below Norfolk; in the interior, the Chowan had been examined beyond the junction of the Meherrin and the Nottaway; and we have seen, that the hope of gold attracted Lane to make a short excursion up the Roanoke. Yet some general results of importance were obtained. The climate was found to be salubrious; during the year not more than four men had died, and of these, three brought the seeds of their disease from Europe.<sup>1</sup> The hope of finding better harbors at the north was confirmed; and the Bay of Chesapeake was already regarded as the fit theatre for early colonization. But in the Island of Roanoke, the men began to despond; they looked in vain towards the ocean for supplies from England; they were sighing for the luxuries of the cities in their native land; when of a sudden it was rumored, that the sea was white with the sails of three-and-twenty ships; and within three days, Sir Francis Drake had anchored his fleet at sea outside of Roanoke Inlet, in “the wild road of their bad harbor.”

He had come, on his way from the West Indies to England, to visit the domain of his friend. With the celerity of genius, he discovered the measures which the exigency of the case required, and supplied the

June  
8.

<sup>1</sup> Hariot, in Hakluyt, iii. 340. True Declaration of Virginia, 32.

CHAP. wants of Lane to the uttermost ; giving him a bark of  
 III. ~~~~~ seventy tons, with pinnaces and small boats, and all  
 1586. needed provisions for the colony. Above all, he induced two experienced sea-captains to remain and employ themselves in the action of discovery. Every thing was furnished to complete the surveys along the coast and the rivers, and, in the last resort, if suffering became extreme, to reconvey the emigrants to England.

At this time, an unwonted storm suddenly arose, and had nearly wrecked the fleet, which lay in a most dangerous position, and which had no security but in weighing anchor and standing away from the shore. When the tempest was over, nothing could be found of the boats and the bark, which had been set apart for the colony. The humanity of Drake was not weary ; he instantly devised measures for supplying the colony with the means of continuing their discoveries ; but Lane shared the despondency of his men ; and Drake yielded to their unanimous desire of permission to embark in his ships for England. Thus ended the first actual settlement of the English in America. The exiles of a year had grown familiar with the favorite amusement of the lethargic Indians ; and they introduced into England the general use of tobacco.<sup>1</sup>

June  
19.

The return of Lane was a precipitate desertion ; a little delay would have furnished the colony with ample supplies. A few days after its departure, a ship arrived, laden with all stores needed by the infant settlement.

<sup>1</sup> On the settlement, see Lane in Hakluyt, iii. 311—322, the original account. The reader may compare Camden, in Kennett, ii. 509, 510; Stith, 12—21; Smith, i. 86—99; Belknap, i. 213—216; Williamson, i. 37—51; Martin, i. 12—24; Tytler, 56—68; Thomson, c. i. and ii., and Appendix B.; Oldys, c. 65—71; Cayley, i. 46—81; Birch, 582. 584.

It had been despatched by Raleigh ; but finding "the CHAP.  
paradise of the world" deserted, it could only return ~  
to England. Another fortnight had hardly elapsed, 1586  
when Sir Richard Grenville appeared off the coast with  
three well-furnished ships, and renewed the vain search  
for the departed colony. Unwilling that the English  
should lose possession of the country, he left fifteen  
men on the Island of Roanoke, to be the guardians of  
English rights.<sup>1</sup>

Raleigh was not dismayed by ill success, nor borne 1587.  
down by losses. The enthusiasm of the people of  
England was diminished by the reports of the unsuc-  
cessful company of Lane ; but the decisive testimony  
of Hariot to the excellence of the country still ren-  
dered it easy to collect a new colony for America.  
The wisdom of Raleigh was particularly displayed in  
the policy which he now adopted. He determined to  
plant an agricultural state ; to send emigrants with  
wives and families, who should at once make their  
homes in the New World ; and, that life and property  
might be secured, he granted a charter of incorporation  
for the settlement, and established a municipal govern-  
ment for "the city of Raleigh." John White was  
appointed its governor ; and to him, with eleven as-  
sistants, the administration of the colony was intrusted.  
A fleet of transport ships was prepared at the expense  
of the proprietary ; "Queen Elizabeth, the godmother  
of Virginia," declined contributing "to its education."  
The company, as it embarked, was cheered by the April  
presence of women ; and an ample provision of the im-  
plements of husbandry gave a pledge for successful  
industry. In July, they arrived on the coast of North  
Jan.  
7.  
April  
26.

<sup>1</sup> Hakluyt, iii. 323. Stith, 22, and roneously. Smith, i. 99, began the Belknap, i. 217, say fifty men, er- error.

CHAP. Carolina ; they were saved from the dangers of Cape  
<sup>III.</sup> Fear ; and, passing Cape Hatteras, they hastened to  
1587. the Isle of Roanoke, to search for the handful of men  
whom Grenville had left there as a garrison. They  
found the tenements deserted and overgrown with  
weeds ; human bones lay scattered on the field ; wild  
deer were reposing in the untenanted houses, and  
were feeding on the productions which a rank vegeta-  
tion still forced from the gardens. The fort was in  
ruins. No vestige of surviving life appeared. The  
miserable men whom Grenville had left, had been  
murdered by the Indians.

The instructions of Raleigh had designated the place  
for the new settlement on the Bay of the Chesapeake.  
It marks but little union, that Fernando, the naval  
officer, eager to renew a profitable traffic in the West  
Indies, refused his assistance in exploring the coast,  
and White was compelled to remain on Roanoke.  
The fort of Governor Lane, "with sundry decent  
dwelling-houses," had been built at the northern ex-  
tremity of the island ; it was there that the foundations  
of the city of Raleigh were laid. The Island of Roan-  
oke is now almost uninhabited ; commerce has selected  
securer harbors for its pursuits ; the intrepid pilot and  
the hardy "wrecker," rendered adventurously daring  
by their familiarity with the dangers of the coast, and  
in their natures wild as the storms to which their skill  
bids defiance, unconscious of the associations by which  
they are surrounded, are the only tenants of the spot  
where the inquisitive stranger may yet discern the ruins  
of the fort, round which the cottages of the new settle-  
ment were erected.

July  
23.

But disasters thickened. A tribe of savages dis-  
played implacable jealousy, and murdered one of the

assistants. The mother and the kindred of Manteo <sup>CHAP.</sup> III. welcomed the English to the Island of Croatan; and ~~—~~ a mutual friendship was continued. But even this 1587. alliance was not unclouded. A detachment of the English, discovering a company of the natives whom they esteemed their enemies, fell upon them by night, as the harmless men were sitting fearlessly by their fires; and the havoc was begun, before it was perceived that these were friendly Indians.

The vanities of life were not forgotten in the New <sup>Aug.</sup> 13. World; and Manteo, the faithful Indian chief, "by the commandment of Sir Walter Raleigh," received Christian baptism, and was invested with the rank of a feudal baron, as the Lord of Roanoke. It was the first peerage erected by the English in America, and remained a solitary dignity, till Locke and Shaftesbury suggested the establishment of palatinates in Carolina, and Manteo shared his honors with the admired philosopher of his age.

As the time for the departure of the ship for England drew near, the emigrants became gloomy with apprehensions; they were conscious of their dependence on Europe; and they, with one voice, women as well as men, urged the governor to return and use his vigorous intercession for the prompt despatch of reinforcements and supplies. It was in vain that he pleaded a sense of honor, which called upon him to remain and share in person the perils of the colony, which he was appointed to govern. He was forced to yield to the general importunity.

Yet, previous to his departure, his daughter, Eleanor Dare, the wife of one of the assistants, gave birth to a female child, the first offspring of English parents on the soil of the United States. The infant was named <sup>Aug.</sup> 18.

CHAP. from the place of its birth. The colony, now com-  
 III.  
 ~~~~~ posed of eighty-nine men, seventeen women, and two  
 1587. children, whose names are all preserved, might reason-  
 Aug. ably hope for the speedy return of the governor, who,  
 27. as he sailed for England, left with them, as hostages,  
 his daughter and his grandchild, VIRGINIA DARE.

And yet even those ties were insufficient. The colony received no seasonable relief; and the further history of this neglected plantation is involved in gloomy uncertainty. The inhabitants of "the city of Raleigh," the emigrants from England and the first-born of America, failed, like their predecessors, in establishing an enduring settlement; but, unlike their predecessors, they awaited death in the land of their adoption. If America had no English town, it soon had English graves.<sup>1</sup>

For when White reached England, he found its whole attention absorbed by the threats of an invasion from Spain; and Grenville, Raleigh, and Lane, not less than Frobisher, Drake, and Hawkins, were engaged in planning measures of resistance. Yet Raleigh, whose patriotism did not diminish his generosity, found means to despatch White with supplies in two vessels. But the company, desiring a gainful voyage rather than a safe one, ran in chase of prizes; till, at last, one of them fell in with men-of-war from Rochelle, and, after a bloody fight, was boarded and rifled. Both ships were compelled to return immediately to England, to the ruin of the colony and the displeasure of its author.<sup>2</sup> The delay was fatal; the independence of the English kingdom, and the security

<sup>1</sup> The original account of White, Martin, Thomson, Tytler, and others. in Hakluyt, iii. 340—348. The story is repeated by Smith, Stith, Keith, Burk, Belknap, Williamson,

<sup>2</sup> Hakluyt, edition 1589, 771; quoted in Oldys, 98, 99.

of the Protestant reformation, were in danger ; nor could the poor colonists of Roanoke be again remembered, till after the discomfiture of the Invincible Armada.

Even when complete success against the Spanish fleet had crowned the arms of England, Sir Walter Raleigh, who had already incurred a fruitless expense of forty thousand pounds, found himself unable to continue the attempts at colonizing Virginia. Yet he did not despair of ultimate success ; he admired the invincible constancy which would bury the remembrance of past dangers in the glory of annexing fertile provinces to his country ; and as his fortune did not permit him to renew his exertions, he used the privilege of his patent to form a company of merchants and adventurers, who were endowed by his liberality with large concessions, and who, it was hoped, would replenish Virginia with settlers. Among the men who thus obtained an assignment of the proprietary's rights in Virginia, is found the name of Richard Hakluyt ; it is the connecting link between the first efforts of England in North Carolina and the final colonization of Virginia. The colonists at Roanoke had emigrated with a charter ; the new instrument<sup>1</sup> was not an assignment of Raleigh's patent, but extended a grant, already held under its sanction, by increasing the number to whom the rights of that charter belonged.

Yet the enterprise of the adventurers languished, for it was no longer encouraged by the profuse liberality of Raleigh. More than another year elapsed, before 1590 White<sup>2</sup> could return to search for his colony and his daughter ; and then the Island of Roanoke was a

1589  
Mar.  
7.

<sup>1</sup> Hazard, i. 42—45.

<sup>2</sup> White, in Hakluyt, iii. 348, 349, and 350—357.

CHAP. desert. An inscription on the bark of a tree pointed to  
~~III.~~ Croatan ; but the season of the year and the dangers  
1590. from storms were pleaded as an excuse for an imme-  
diately return. Had the emigrants already perished ?  
or had they escaped with their lives to Croatan, and,  
through the friendship of Manteo, become familiar with  
the Indians ? The conjecture has been hazarded,<sup>1</sup>  
that the deserted colony, neglected by their own coun-  
trymen, were hospitably adopted into the tribe of  
Hatteras Indians, and became amalgamated with the  
sons of the forest. This was the tradition of the  
natives at a later day, and was thought to be con-  
firmed by the physical character of the tribe, in which  
the English and the Indian race seemed to have been  
blended. Raleigh long cherished the hope of discov-  
ering some vestiges of their existence ; and though he  
had abandoned the design of colonizing Virginia, he  
yet sent at his own charge, and, it is said, at five sev-  
eral times,<sup>2</sup> to search for his liege-men. But it was all  
in vain ; imagination received no help in its attempts to  
trace the fate of the colony of Roanoke.

The name of Raleigh stands highest among the statesmen of England, who advanced the colonization of the United States ; and his fame belongs to Amer-  
ican history. No Englishman of his age possessed so  
various or so extraordinary qualities. Courage which  
was never daunted, mild self-possession, and fertility of  
invention, insured him glory in his profession of arms ;  
and his services in the conquest of Cadiz, or the cap-  
ture of Fayal, were alone sufficient to establish his  
fame as a gallant and successful commander. In  
every danger, his life was distinguished by valor, and  
his death was ennobled by true magnanimity.

<sup>1</sup> Lawson's N. Carolina, 62.

<sup>2</sup> Purchas, iv. 1653.

He was not only admirable in active life as a soldier ; he was an accomplished scholar. No statesman in retirement ever expressed the charms of tranquil leisure more beautifully than Raleigh ; and it was not entirely with the language of grateful friendship, that Spenser described his “ sweet verse as sprinkled with nectar,” and rivaling the melodies of “ the summer’s nightingale.”<sup>1</sup> When an unjust verdict, contrary to probability and the evidence, “ against law and against equity,” on a charge which seems to have been a pure invention, left him to languish for years in prison, with the sentence of death suspended over his head, his active genius plunged into the depths of erudition ; and he who had been a soldier, a courtier, and a seaman, now became the elaborate author of a learned History of the World.

His career as a statesman was honorable to the pupil of Coligny and the contemporary of L’Hopital. In his public policy, he was thoroughly an English patriot ; jealous of the honor, the prosperity, and the advancement of his country ; the inexorable antagonist of the pretensions of Spain. In parliament, he defended the freedom of domestic industry. When, by the operation of unequal laws, taxation was a burden upon industry rather than wealth, he argued for a change :<sup>2</sup> himself possessed of a lucrative monopoly, he gave his voice for the repeal of all monopolies ;<sup>3</sup> and, while he pertinaciously used his influence with his sovereign to mitigate the severity of the judgments against the non-conformists,<sup>4</sup> as a legislator he resisted the sweeping enactment of persecuting laws.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Sonnet prefixed to Faery Queen. Faery Queen, b. iii. Int. st. iv. Compare, also, Spenser’s Colin Clout’s come home again, verses 68—75, and Faery Queen, b. iii. c. vii. st. 36—41.

<sup>2</sup> Tytler, 238, 239. <sup>3</sup> D’Ewes, 646. Tytler, 239. <sup>4</sup> Oldys, 137—139. <sup>5</sup> Thomson, 55. Oldys, 165, 166. D’Ewes, 517. Tytler, 122.

CHAP.  
III. In the career of discovery, his perseverance was never baffled by losses. He joined in the risks of Gilbert's expedition; contributed to the discoveries of Davis in the north-west; and himself personally explored "the insular regions and broken world" of Guiana. The sincerity of his belief in the wealth of the latter country has been unreasonably questioned. If Elizabeth had hoped for a hyperborean Peru in the arctic seas of America, why might not Raleigh expect to find the city of gold on the banks of the Oronoco? His lavish efforts in colonizing the soil of our republic, his sagacity which enjoined a settlement within the Chesapeake Bay, the publications of Hariot and Hakluyt which he countenanced, if followed by losses to himself, diffused over England a knowledge of America, as well as an interest in its destinies, and sowed the seeds, of which the fruits were to ripen during his lifetime, though not for him.

Raleigh had suffered from palsy<sup>1</sup> before his last expedition. He returned broken-hearted by the defeat of his hopes, by the decay of his health, and by the death of his eldest son. What shall be said of King James, who would open to an aged paralytic no other hope of liberty but through success in the discovery of mines in Guiana? What shall be said of a monarch who could, at that time, under a sentence which was originally unjust,<sup>2</sup> and which had slumbered for fifteen years, order the execution of the decrepit man, whose genius and valor shone brilliantly through the ravages

<sup>1</sup> Thomson, Appendix, note U. The original document.

<sup>2</sup> Hume, Rapin, Lingard, are less favorable to Raleigh. Even Hallam, i. 482—484, vindicates him with wavering boldness. A careful comparison of the accounts of these

historians, the trial, and the biographies of Raleigh, proves him to have been, on his trial, a victim of jealousy, and entirely innocent of crime. No doubt he despised King James. See Tytler, 285—290.

of physical decay, and whose English heart, within a CHAP.  
palsied frame, still beat with an undying love for his ~~—~~<sup>III.</sup> country?

The judgments of the tribunals of the Old World are often reversed at the bar of public opinion in the New. The family of the chief author of early colonization in the United States was reduced to beggary by the government of England, and he himself was beheaded. After a lapse of nearly two centuries, the 1792. state of North Carolina, by a solemn act of legislation, revived in its capital "THE CITY OF RALEIGH,"<sup>1</sup> and thus expressed its confidence in the integrity, and a grateful respect for the memory, of the extraordinary man, who united in himself as many kinds of glory as were ever combined in an individual, and whose name is indissolubly connected with the early period of American history.

Some traffic with Virginia may perhaps have been continued. But at the north, the connection of the English merchants was become so intimate, that, in 1593, Sir Walter Raleigh, in the House of Commons, 1593. declared the fishing of Newfoundland to be the stay of the west countries.<sup>2</sup> These voyages, and the previous exertions of Raleigh, had trained men for the career of discovery; and Bartholomew Gosnold, who, perhaps, had already sailed to Virginia,<sup>3</sup> in the usual route, by the Canaries and West Indies, now conceived the idea of a direct voyage to America, and, with the concurrence of Raleigh, had well nigh secured to New England the honor of the first permanent English colony. Steering, in a small bark, directly 1602. across the Atlantic, in seven weeks he reached the Mar. 26.

<sup>1</sup> Laws of North Carolina, session of 1792, c. xiv.

<sup>2</sup> D'Ewes's Journal, 509.

<sup>3</sup> Beverley's Virginia, 10. Oldmixon, i. 218. Belknap's Biog. i. 101. Baylies, iv. 153, 154.

CHAP. continent of America in the Bay of Massachusetts, not  
 III. far to the north of Nahant.<sup>1</sup> He failed to observe a  
 1602. good harbor, and, standing for the south, discovered  
 May 14. the promontory which he called Cape Cod—a name  
 which would not yield to that of the next monarch of  
 England. Here he and four of his men landed; Cape  
 Cod was the first spot in New England ever trod by Eng-  
 lishmen. Doubling the cape, and passing Nantucket,  
 May 24. they again landed on a little island, now called No  
 Man's land, and afterwards passed round the promon-  
 tory of Gay Head, naming it Dover Cliff. At length  
 they entered Buzzard's Bay—a stately sound, which  
 they called Gosnold's Hope. The westernmost of the  
 islands was named Elizabeth, from the queen—a name  
 which has been transferred to the whole group. Here  
 they beheld the rank vegetation of a virgin soil; the  
 noble forests; the wild fruits and the flowers, bursting  
 from the earth; the eglantine, the thorn, and the  
 honeysuckle, the wild pea, the tansy, and young sassa-  
 fras; strawberries, raspberries, grape-vines, all in pro-  
 fusion. There is on the island a pond, and within it  
 lies a rocky islet; this was the position which the ad-  
 venturers selected for their residence. Here they  
 built their storehouse and their fort; and here the  
 foundations of the first New England colony were to  
 be laid. The natural features remain unchanged; the  
 island, the pond, the islet, are all yet visible; the  
 forests are gone; the shrubs are as luxuriant as of old;  
 but the ruins of the fort can no longer be discerned.

A traffic with the natives on the main land, soon  
 enabled Gosnold to complete his freight, which con-  
 sisted chiefly of sassafras root, then greatly esteemed  
 in pharmacy as a sovereign panacea. The little

<sup>1</sup> Belknap's Biog. ii. 103. Williamson's Maine, i. 184, 185.

band, which was to have nestled on the Elizabeth CHAP.  
Islands, finding their friends about to embark for <sup>III.</sup>  
Europe, despaired of obtaining seasonable supplies of 1602.  
food, and determined not to remain. Fear of an as-  
sault from the Indians, who had ceased to be friendly,  
the want of provisions, and jealousy respecting the  
distribution of the risks and profits, defecated the de-  
sign. The whole party soon set sail and bore for  
England. The return voyage lasted but five weeks ; June  
18.  
and the expedition was completed in less than four  
months, during which entire health had prevailed.<sup>1</sup>

Gosnold and his companions spread the most favor-  
able reports of the regions which he had visited.  
Could it be that the voyage was so safe, the climate  
so pleasant, the country so inviting ? The merchants  
of Bristol, with the ready assent of Raleigh,<sup>2</sup> and at  
the instance of Richard Hakluyt, the enlightened  
friend and able documentary historian of these com-  
mercial enterprises, a man whose fame should be vin-  
dicated and asserted in the land which he helped to  
colonize, determined to pursue the career of investiga-  
tion. The Speedwell, a small ship of fifty tons and  
thirty men, the Discoverer, a bark of twenty-six tons  
and thirteen men, under the command of Martin  
Pring, set sail for America a few days after the death  
of the queen. It was a private undertaking, and  
therefore not retarded by that event. The ship was  
well provided with trinkets and merchandise, suited to  
a traffic with the natives ; and this voyage also was  
successful. It reached the American coast among the

<sup>1603.</sup>  
<sup>April</sup>  
<sup>10.</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Gosnold to his father, in Purchas, iv. 1646. Archer's Relation, ibid. iv. 1647—1651. Rosier's Notes, ibid. iv. 1651—1653. Brier-ton's Relation, in Smith, i. 105—

108. Compare, particularly, Bel-knap's Life of Gosnold, in Am. Biog. ii. 100—123.

<sup>2</sup> Purchas, iv. 1614.

CHAP. islands which skirt the harbors of Maine. The mouth  
 III. of the Penobscot offered good anchorage and fishing.  
 ~~~ Pring made a discovery of the eastern rivers and harbors—the Saco, the Kennebunk, and the York; and the channel of the Piscataqua was examined for three or four leagues. Meeting no sassafras, he steered for the south; doubled Cape Ann; and went on shore in Massachusetts; but, being still unsuccessful, he again pursued a southerly track, and finally anchored in Old Town harbor, on Martha's Vineyard. The whole absence lasted about six months, and was completed  
 1606. without disaster or danger.<sup>1</sup> Pring, a few years later, repeated his voyage, and made a more accurate survey of Maine.

Enterprises for discovery were now continuous. Bartholomew Gilbert,<sup>2</sup> returning from the West Indies, made an unavailing search for the colony of Raleigh. It was the last attempt to trace the remains of those unfortunate men. But as the testimony of Pring had confirmed the reports of Gosnold, the career of navigation was vigorously pursued. An expedition, promoted by the Earl of Southampton and Lord Arundel, of Wardour, and commanded by George Weymouth, who, in attempting a north-west passage, had already explored the coast of Labrador, now discovered the Penobscot River. Weymouth left England in March, and, in about six weeks, came in sight of the American continent near Cape Cod. Turning to the north, he approached the coast of Maine, and ascended the western branch of the Penobscot beyond Belfast Bay; where the deep channel of the broad stream, the abundance of its spacious harbors, the neighboring

<sup>1</sup> Purchas, iv. 1654—1656. Compare Belknap, ii. 123—133; Williamson's Maine, i. p. 185—187.

<sup>2</sup> Purchas, iv. 1656—1658.

springs and copious rivulets, compelled the experienced CHAP.  
mariner to admire the noble river, which is just now ~~~~~~~  
<sup>III.</sup> beginning to have upon its banks and in its ports the 1605.  
flourishing settlements and active commerce that it is  
by nature so well adapted to sustain. Five natives  
were decoyed on board the ship, and Weymouth, re-  
turning to England, gave three of them to Sir Ferdi-  
nand Gorges, a friend of Raleigh, and governor of  
Plymouth.<sup>1</sup>

Such were the voyages which led the way to the colonization of the United States. The daring and skill of these earliest adventurers upon the ocean deserve the highest admiration. The difficulties of crossing the Atlantic were new, and it required the greater courage to encounter hazards which ignorance exaggerated. The character of the prevalent winds and currents was unknown. The possibility of making a direct passage was but gradually discovered. The imagined dangers were infinite; the real dangers, exceedingly great. The ships at first employed for discovery were generally of less than one hundred tons burthen; Frobisher sailed in a vessel of but twenty-five tons; two of those of Columbus were without a deck; and so perilous were the voyages deemed, that the sailors were accustomed, before embarking, to perform solemn acts of devotion, as if to prepare for eternity. The anticipation of disasters was not visionary; Columbus was shipwrecked twice, and once remained for eight months on an island, without any communication with the civilized world;

<sup>1</sup> Rosier's Virginian Voyage, &c. Williamson's Maine, i. 191—195. in Purchas, iv. 1659—1667. Gorges, Strange with what reckless confidence Oldmixon, i. 219, 220, can Brief Narration, c. ii. Compare Belknap's Am. Biog. ii. 134—150; blunder!

CHAP. Hudson was turned adrift in a small boat by a crew  
<sup>III.</sup> whom suffering had rendered mutinous ; Willoughby perished with cold ; Roberval, Parmenius, Gilbert,—and how many others ?—went down at sea ; and such was the state of the art of navigation, that intrepidity and skill were unavailing against the elements without the favor of Heaven.

## CHAPTER IV.

## COLONIZATION OF VIRGINIA.

THE period of success in planting colonies in Virginia had arrived ; yet not till changes had occurred, affecting the character of European politics and society, 1606 and moulding the forms of colonization. The reformation had interrupted the harmony of religious opinion in the west of Europe ; and differences in the church began to constitute the basis of political parties. Commercial intercourse equally sustained a revolution. It had been conducted on the narrow seas and by land ; it now launched out upon the broadest waters ; and, after the East Indies had been reached by doubling the southern promontory of Africa, the great commerce of the world was performed upon the ocean. The art of printing had become known ; and the press diffused intelligence and multiplied the facilities of instruction. The feudal institutions which had been reared in the middle ages, were already undermined by the current of time and events, and, swaying from their base, threatened to fall. Productive industry had, on the one side, built up the fortunes and extended the influence of the active classes ; while habits of indolence and of expense had impaired the estates and diminished the power of the nobility. These changes also produced corresponding results in the institutions which were to rise in America.

CHAP. IV. A revolution had equally occurred in the purposes for which voyages were undertaken. The hope of 1606. Columbus, as he sailed to the west, had been the discovery of a new passage to the East Indies. The passion for rapidly amassing gold soon became the prevailing motive. Next, the islands and countries near the equator were made the tropical gardens of the Europeans for the culture of such luxuries as the warmest regions only can produce. At last, the higher design was matured, not to plunder, nor to destroy, nor to enslave ; but to found states, to plant permanent Christian colonies, to establish for the oppressed and the enterprising places of refuge and abode, with all the elements of independent national existence.

The condition of England favored adventure in America. A redundant population had existed even before the peace with Spain ;<sup>1</sup> and the timid character of King James, throwing out of employment the gallant men who had served under Elizabeth by sea and land, left them no option, but to engage as mercenaries in the quarrels of strangers, or incur the hazards of “seeking a New World.”<sup>2</sup> The minds of many persons of intelligence, rank, and enterprise, were directed to Virginia. The brave and ingenious Gosnold, who had himself witnessed the fertility of the western soil, long solicited the concurrence of his friends for the establishment of a colony,<sup>3</sup> and at last prevailed with Edward Maria Wingfield, a groveling merchant of the west of England, Robert Hunt, a clergyman of persevering fortitude and modest worth, and John Smith, the adventurer of rare genius and undying fame, to consent to risk their own lives and

<sup>1</sup> Bacon on Queen Elizabeth.

<sup>2</sup> Gorges' Brief Narration, c. ii.

<sup>3</sup> Edmund Howes' Continuation

of Stowe, 1018—a prime authority

on Virginia. See Stith, 229.

their hope of fortune in an expedition.<sup>1</sup> For more than a year, this little company revolved the project of a plantation. At the same time, Sir Ferdinand Gorges was gathering information of the native Americans, whom he had received from Weymouth, and whose descriptions of the country, joined to the favorable views which he had already imbibed, filled him with the strongest desire of becoming a proprietary of domains beyond the Atlantic. Gorges was a man of wealth, of rank, and of influence ; he readily persuaded Sir John Popham, lord chief justice of England, to share his intentions.<sup>2</sup> Nor had the assigns of Raleigh become indifferent to “western planting ;” the most distinguished of them all, Richard Hakluyt, the historian of maritime enterprise, still favored the establishment of a colony by his personal exertions and the firm enthusiasm of his character. Possessed of whatever information could be derived from foreign sources and a correspondence with the eminent navigators of his times, and anxiously watching the progress of the attempts of Englishmen in the west, his extensive knowledge made him a counsellor in the enterprises which were attempted, and sustained in him and his associates the confidence which repeated disappointments did not exhaust.<sup>3</sup> Thus the cause of colonization obtained in England zealous and able defenders, who, independent of any party in religion or politics, believed that a prosperous state could be established by Englishmen in the temperate regions of North America.

<sup>1</sup> Smith, i. 149, or Purchas, iv. 1705. Stith, 35. Compare Hillard's Life of Smith, in Sparks's American Biography, ii. 177—407 ; also Belknap, i. 239, 252.

<sup>2</sup> Gorges, c. ii.—v.  
<sup>3</sup> Hakluyt, iii. *passim*; v. Dedication of Virginia Valued. The first Virginia charter contains his name.

CHAP. IV. The king of England, too timid to be active, yet too vain to be indifferent, favored the design of enlarging his dominions. He had attempted in Scotland the introduction of the arts of life among the Highlanders and the Western Isles, by the establishment of colonies;<sup>1</sup> and the English plantations which he formed in the northern counties of Ireland, are said to have contributed to the affluence and the security of that island.<sup>2</sup> When, therefore, a company of men of business and men of rank, formed by the experience of Gosnold, the enthusiasm of Smith, the perseverance of Hakluyt, the hopes of profit and the extensive influence of Popham and Gorges,<sup>3</sup> applied to James I. for leave "to deduce a colony into Virginia," the monarch promoted the noble work by readily issuing an ample patent.

April 10.

The first colonial charter,<sup>4</sup> under which the English were planted in America, deserves careful consideration. A belt of twelve degrees on the American coast, embracing the soil from Cape Fear to Halifax, excepting perhaps the little spot in Acadia then actually possessed by the French, was set apart to be colonized by two rival companies. Of these, the first was composed of noblemen, gentlemen, and merchants, in and about London; the second, of knights, gentlemen, and merchants, in the west. The London adventurers, who alone succeeded, had an exclusive right to occupy the regions from thirty-four to thirty-eight degrees of north latitude, that is, from Cape Fear to the southern limit of Maryland; the western men had

<sup>1</sup> Robertson's Scotland, b. viii.

51—58; Stith's Appendix, 1—8;

<sup>2</sup> Leland's History of Ireland, ii. 204—213. Lord Bacon's speech as Chancellor to the Speaker, Works, iii. 405.

Hening's Statutes of Virginia at large, i. 57—66. In referring to this collection, I cannot but add, that no other state in the Union possesses so excellent a work on its legislative history.

<sup>3</sup> Gorges, c. v. and vi.

<sup>4</sup> See the charter, in Hazard, i.

equally an exclusive right to plant between forty-one and forty-five degrees. The intermediate district, from thirty-eight to forty-one degrees, was open to the competition of both companies. Yet collision was not possible ; for each was to possess the soil extending fifty miles north and south of its first settlement ; so that neither could plant within one hundred miles of a colony of its rival. The conditions of tenure were homage and rent ; the rent was no other than one fifth of the net produce of gold and silver, and one fifteenth of copper. The right of coining money was conceded, perhaps to facilitate commerce with the natives, who, it was hoped, would receive Christianity and the arts of civilized life. The superintendence of the whole colonial system was confided to a council in England ; the local administration of each colony was intrusted to a council residing within its limits. The members of the superior council in England were appointed exclusively by the king ; and the tenure of their office was his good pleasure. Over the colonial councils the king likewise preserved a control ; for the members of them were from time to time to be ordained, made, and removed, according to royal instructions. Supreme legislative authority over the colonies, extending alike to their general condition and the most minute regulations, was likewise expressly reserved to the monarch. A hope was also cherished of an ultimate revenue to be derived from Virginia ; a duty, to be levied on vessels trading to its harbors, was, for one-and-twenty years, to be wholly employed for the benefit of the plantation ; at the end of that time, was to be taken for the king. To the emigrants it was promised, that they and their children should continue to be Englishmen—a concession which secured them rights on re-

CHAP. turning to England, but offered no barrier against  
 IV.  
 ~~~ colonial injustice. Lands were to be held by the most  
 1606. favorable tenure.

Thus the first written charter of a permanent American colony, which was to be the chosen abode of liberty, gave to the mercantile corporation nothing but a desert territory, with the right of peopling and defending it, and reserved to the monarch absolute legislative authority, the control of all appointments, and a hope of an ultimate revenue. To the emigrants themselves it conceded not one elective franchise, not one of the rights of self-government. They were subjected to the ordinances of a commercial corporation, of which they could not be members; to the dominion of a domestic council, in appointing which they had no voice; to the control of a superior council in England, which had no sympathies with their rights; and finally, to the arbitrary legislation of the sovereign. Yet, bad as was this system, the reservation of power to the king, a result of his vanity, rather than of his ambition, had, at least, the advantage of mitigating the action of the commercial corporation. The check would have been complete, had the powers of appointment and legislation been given to the people of Virginia.<sup>1</sup>

The summer was spent by the patentees in preparations for planting a colony, for which the vain glory of the king found a grateful occupation in framing a code of laws;<sup>2</sup> an exercise of royal legislation which has been pronounced in itself illegal.<sup>3</sup> The superior council in England was permitted to name the colonial council, which was constituted a pure aristocracy,

<sup>1</sup> Compare Chalmers, 13—15; Virginia, 37—41; Burk's *Virginia*, Story on the Constitution, i. 22—24. i. 86—92.

<sup>2</sup> See the instrument, in Hening, i. 67—75. Compare, also, Stith's

<sup>3</sup> Chalmers, 15.

entirely independent of the emigrants whom they were CHAP.  
IV. to govern ; having power to elect or remove its presi- ~~—~~  
1606. ~~—~~dent, to remove any of its members, and to supply its own vacancies. Not an element of popular liberty was introduced into the form of government. Religion was specially enjoined to be established according to the doctrine and rites of the church of England ; and no emigrant might withdraw his allegiance from King James, or avow dissent from the royal creed. Lands were to descend according to the common law. Not only murder, manslaughter, and adultery, but dangerous tumults and seditions were punishable by death ; so that the security of life depended on the discretion of the magistrate, restricted only by the necessity of a trial by jury. All civil causes, requiring corporal punishment, fine or imprisonment, might be summarily determined by the president and council ; who also possessed full legislative authority in cases not affecting life or limb. Kindness to the savages was enjoined, with the use of all proper means for their conversion. It was further, and most unwisely, though probably at the request of the corporation, ordered, that the industry and commerce of the respective colonies should for five years, at least, be conducted in a joint stock. The king also reserved to himself the right of future legislation.

Thus were the political forms of the colony established, when, on the nineteenth day of December, in the year of our Lord one thousand six hundred and six, one hundred and nine years after the discovery of the American continent by Cabot, forty-one years from the settlement of Florida, the little squadron of three vessels, the largest not exceeding one hundred tons

CHAP. burthen,<sup>1</sup> bearing one hundred and five men, destined  
 IV. to remain, set sail for a harbor in Virginia.

The voyage began under inauspicious omens. Of the one hundred and five, on the list of emigrants, there were but twelve laborers, and very few mechanics.<sup>2</sup> They were going to a wilderness, in which, as yet, not a house was standing; and there were forty-eight gentlemen to four carpenters. Neither were there any men with families. It was evident, a commercial and not a colonial establishment was designed by the projectors. Dissensions sprung up during the voyage; as the names and instructions of the council had, by the folly of James, been carefully concealed in a box, which was not to be opened till after the arrival in Virginia, no competent authority existed to check the progress of envy and disorder.<sup>3</sup> The genius of Smith excited jealousy; and hope, the only power  
 1607. which can still the clamors and allay the feuds of the selfish, early deserted the colonists.

Newport, who commanded the ships, was acquainted with the old passage, and, consuming the whole of the early spring in a navigation which should have been completed in February, sailed by way of the Canaries and the West India Islands. As he turned to the north, a severe storm carried his fleet beyond the settlement of Raleigh, into the magnificent Bay of April 26. the Chesapeake.<sup>4</sup> The head-lands received and retain the names of Cape Henry and Cape Charles, from the sons of King James; the deep water for anchorage, “putting the emigrants in good Comfort,” gave a name to the Northern Point; and within the capes a country

<sup>1</sup> Smith's Virginia, i. 150.

<sup>3</sup> Smith, i. 150. Chalmers, 17.

<sup>2</sup> See the names in Smith, i. 153, and in Purchas, iv. 1706.

<sup>4</sup> Smith, i. 150. Stith, 44.

opened, which appeared to the emigrants to "claim CHAP.  
IV.  
the prerogative over the most pleasant places in the ~~  
world." Hope revived for a season, as they advanced. 1607.  
"Heaven and earth seemed never to have agreed  
better to frame a place for man's commodious and  
delightful habitation."<sup>1</sup> A noble river was soon en-  
tered, which was named from the monarch; and, after  
a search of seventeen days, during which they encoun-  
tered the hostility of one little savage tribe, and at  
Hampton smoked the calumet of peace with another,  
the peninsula of Jamestown, about fifty miles above  
the mouth of the stream, was selected for the site of  
the colony.

May  
13.

Thus admirable was the country. The emigrants themselves were weakened by divisions, and degraded by jealousy. So soon as the members of the council were duly constituted, they proceeded to choose Wingfield president; and then, as by their instructions they had power to do, they excluded Smith from their body, on a charge of sedition. But as his only offence consisted in the possession of enviable qualities, the attempt at his trial was abandoned,<sup>2</sup> and by "the good doctrine and exhortation" of the sincere Hunt, the man without whose aid the vices of the colony would have caused its immediate ruin, was soon restored to his station.<sup>3</sup>

While the men were busy in felling timber and providing freight for the ships, Newport and Smith and twenty others ascended the James River to the falls. They visited the native chieftain Powhatan, who has been styled "the emperor of the country," at his principal seat, just below the present site of Richmond.

<sup>1</sup> Smith, i. 114. Stith, 45.<sup>2</sup> Smith, i. 151. Stith, 45.<sup>3</sup> Stith, 47. Smith, i. 152, 153.

CHAP. IV. The imperial residence was a village of twelve wig-wams! The savages murmured at the intrusion of 1607. strangers into the country; but Powhatan disguised his fear, and would only say, "They hurt you not; they take but a little waste land."<sup>1</sup>

About the middle of June, Newport set sail for England. What condition could be more pitiable, than that of the English whom he had left in Virginia? The proud hopes which the beauty of the country had excited, soon vanished; and as the delusion passed away, they awoke and beheld that they were in the wilderness. Weak in numbers, and still weaker from want of habits of industry, they were surrounded by natives whose hostility and distrust had already been displayed; the summer heats were intolerable to their laborers; the moisture of the climate generated disease; and the fertility of the soil, covered with a rank luxuriance of forest, increased the toil of culture. Their scanty provisions had become spoiled on the long voyage. "Our drink," say they, "was unwholesome water; our lodgings, castles in the air: had we been as free from all sins as from gluttony and drunkenness, we might have been canonized for saints." Despair of mind ensued; so that, in less than a fortnight after the departure of the fleet, "hardly ten of them were able to stand;" the labor of completing some simple fortifications was exhausting; and no regular crops could be planted. During the summer, there were not, on any occasion, five able men to guard the bulwarks; the fort was filled in every corner with the groans of the sick, whose outcries, night and day, for six weeks, rent the hearts of those who could minister no relief. Many times, three or four died in

<sup>1</sup> Percy, in Purchas, iv. 1689.

a night ; in the morning, their bodies were trailed out CHAP.  
of the cabins, like dogs, to be buried. Fifty men, one ~~~  
half of the colony, perished before autumn ; among 1607  
them Bartholomew Gosnold, the projector of the set- Aug.  
tlement, a man of rare merits, worthy of a perpetual  
memory in the plantation,<sup>1</sup> and whose influence had  
alone thus far preserved some degree of harmony in  
the council.<sup>2</sup>

Disunion completed the scene of misery. It became necessary to depose Wingfield, the avaricious president, who was charged with engrossing the choicest stores, and who was on the point of abandoning the colony and escaping to the West Indies. Ratcliffe, the new president, possessed neither judgment nor industry ; so that the management of affairs fell into the hands of Smith, whose deliberate enterprise and cheerful courage alone diffused light amidst the general gloom. He possessed by nature the buoyant spirit of heroic daring. In boyhood he had sighed for the opportunity of “ setting out on brave adventures ;” and though not yet thirty years of age, he was already a veteran in the service of humanity and of Christendom. His early life had been given to the cause of freedom in the Low Countries, where he had fought for the independence of the Batavian Republic. Again, as a traveller, he had roamed over France ; had visited the shores of Egypt ; had returned to Italy ; and, panting for glory, had sought the borders of Hungary, where there had long existed an hereditary warfare with the followers of Mahomet. It was there that the young English cavalier distinguished himself by the bravest feats of arms, in the sight of Christians and infidels,

<sup>1</sup> Edmund Howes, 1018.

<sup>2</sup> Smith, i. 154. Percy, in Pur-

chas, iv. 1690. Smith and Percy

were both eye-witnesses.

- CHAP. IV. engaging fearlessly and always successfully in the single combat with the Turks, which, from the days of the crusades, had been warranted by the rules of chivalry. His signal prowess gained for him the favor of Sigismund Bathori, the unfortunate prince of Transylvania.
1602. At length he, with many others, was overpowered in Nov. 18. a sudden skirmish among the glens of Wallachia, and was left severely wounded in the field of battle. A prisoner of war, he was now, according to the Eastern custom, offered for sale "like a beast in a market-place," and was sent to Constantinople as a slave. A Turkish lady had compassion on his misfortunes and his youth, and, designing to restore him to freedom, removed him to a fortress in the Crimea. Contrary to her commands, he was there subjected to the harshest usage among half-savage serfs. Rising against his taskmaster, whom he slew in the struggle, he mounted a horse, and through forest paths escaped from thraldom to the confines of Russia. Again the hand of woman relieved his wants; he travelled across the country to Transylvania, and, there bidding farewell to his companions in arms, he resolved to return "to his own sweet country." But, as he crossed the continent, he heard the rumors of civil war in Northern Africa, and hastened, in search of untried dangers, to the realms of Morocco. At length returning to England, his mind did not so much share as appropriate to itself the general enthusiasm for planting states in America;
1607. and now the infant commonwealth of Virginia depended for its existence on his firmness. His experience in human nature under all its forms, and the cheering vigor of his resolute will, made him equal to his duty. He inspired the natives with awe, and quelled the spirit of anarchy and rebellion among the emigrants.

He was more wakeful to gather provisions than the covetous to find gold ; and strove to keep the country more than the faint-hearted to abandon it. As autumn 1607. approached, the Indians, from the superfluity of their harvest, made a voluntary offering ; and supplies were also collected by expeditions into the interior. But the conspiracies, that were still formed, to desert the settlement, first by the selfish Wingfield, and again by the imbecile Ratcliffe, could be defeated only after a skirmish, in which one of the leaders was killed ; and the danger of a precipitate abandonment of Virginia continued to be imminent, till the approach of winter, when not only the homeward navigation became perilous, but the fear of famine was removed by the abundance of wild fowl and game.<sup>1</sup> Nothing then remained but to examine the country.

The South Sea was considered the ocean path to every kind of wealth. The coast of America on the Pacific had been explored by the Spaniards, and had been visited by Drake ; the collections of Hakluyt had communicated to the English the results of their voyages ; and the maps of that day exhibited a tolerably accurate delineation of the continent of North America. With singular ignorance of the progress of geographical knowledge, it had been expressly enjoined on the colonists to seek a communication with the South Sea by ascending some stream which flowed from the northwest.<sup>2</sup> The Chickahominy was such a stream. Smith, though he did not share the ignorance of his employers, was ever willing to engage in discoveries. Leaving the colonists to enjoy the abundance which winter had brought, he not only ascended the river as far

<sup>1</sup> Smith, i. 1—54, and 154, 155. Purchas, iv. 1690. Stith, 48.

<sup>2</sup> Stith, 43.

CHAP. as he could advance in boats, but struck into the in-  
IV.  
terior. His companions disobeyed his instructions,  
1607-8 and, being surprised by the Indians, were put to death. Smith himself, who, in the plains of the Crimea and of Southern Russia, had become acquainted with the superstitions and the manners of wandering tribes, did not beg for life, but preserved it by the calmness of self-possession. Displaying a pocket compass, he amused the savages by an explanation of its powers, and increased their admiration of his superior genius, by imparting to them some vague conceptions of the form of the earth and the nature of the planetary system. To the Indians, who retained him as their prisoner, his captivity was a more strange event than any thing of which the traditions of their tribes preserved the memory. He was allowed to send a letter to the fort at Jamestown; and the savage wonder was increased; for he seemed, by some magic, to endow the paper with the gift of intelligence. The curiosity of all the clans of the neighborhood was awakened by the prisoner; he was conducted in triumph from the settlements on the Chickahominy to the Indian villages on the Rappahannock and the Potomac; and thence, through other towns, to the residence of Opechananough, at Pamunkey. There, for the space of three days, they practised incantations and ceremonies, in the hope of obtaining some insight into the mystery of his character and his designs. It was evident that he was a being of a higher order: was his nature beneficent, or was he to be dreaded as a dangerous enemy? Their minds were bewildered, as they beheld his calm fearlessness; and they sedulously observed towards him the utmost reverence and hospitality, as if to propitiate his power, should he be rescued from their

hands. The decision of his fate was referred to Powhatan, who was then residing in what is now Gloucester county, on York River, at a village to which Smith was conducted through the regions, now so celebrated, where the youthful Lafayette hovered upon the skirts of Cornwallis, and the arms of France and the Confederacy were united to achieve the crowning victory of American independence. The passion of vanity rules in forests as well as in cities; the grim warriors, as they met in council, displayed their gayest apparel before the Englishman, whose doom they had assembled to pronounce. The fears of the feeble aborigines were about to prevail, and his immediate death, already repeatedly threatened and repeatedly delayed, would have been inevitable, but for the timely intercession of Pocahontas, the daughter of Powhatan, a girl "of tenne" or "twelve" "years old, which not only for feature, countenance, and expression, much exceeded any of the rest of his people, but for wit and spirit, was the only nonpareil of the country." The gentle feelings of humanity are the same in every race, and in every period of life; they bloom, though unconsciously, even in the bosom of a child. Smith had easily won the confiding fondness of the Indian maiden; and now the impulse of mercy awakened within her breast; she clung firmly to his neck, as his head was bowed to receive the strokes of the tomahawk. Did the child-like superstition of her kindred reverence her interference as a token from a superior power? Her fearlessness and her entreaties persuaded the council to spare the agreeable stranger, who might make hatchets for her father, and rattles and strings of beads for herself, the favorite child. The barbarians, whose decision had long been held in suspense by the mysterious awe

CHAP. which Smith had inspired, now resolved to receive him  
 IV. as a friend, and to make him a partner of their councils.  
 1608. They tempted him to join their bands, and lend assistance in an attack upon the white men at Jamestown; and when his decision of character succeeded in changing the current of their thoughts, they dismissed him with mutual promises of friendship and benevolence. Thus the captivity of Smith did itself become a benefit to the colony; for he had not only observed with care the country between the James and the Potomac, and had gained some knowledge of the language and manners of the natives, but he now established a peaceful intercourse between the English and the tribes of Powhatan; and, with her companions, the child who had rescued him from death, afterwards came every few days to the fort with baskets of corn for the garrison.<sup>1</sup>

Returning to Jamestown, Smith found the colony reduced to forty men; and of these, the strongest were again preparing to escape with the pinnace. This third attempt at desertion he repressed at the hazard of his life.<sup>2</sup> Thus passed the few first months of colonial existence in discord and misery; despair relieved and ruin prevented, by the fortitude of one man, and the benevolence of an Indian girl.

Meantime, the council in England, having received an increase of its numbers and its powers, determined to send out new recruits and supplies; and Newport had hardly returned from his first voyage, before he was again despatched with one hundred and twenty

<sup>1</sup> Smith, i. 158—162, and ii. 29—33. The account is fully contained in the oldest book printed on Virginia, in our Cambridge library. It is a thin quarto, in black letter, by John Smith, printed in 1608—  
 “A True Relation of such occur-

rences and accidents of note, as hath hapned in Virginia since the first planting of that Collony, which is now resident in the South part thereof, till the last returne.”

<sup>2</sup> Smith, i. 163, 164.

emigrants. Yet the joy in Virginia on their arrival was of short continuance ; for the new comers were chiefly vagabond gentlemen and goldsmiths, who, in spite of the remonstrances of Smith, gave a wrong direction to the industry of the colony. They believed they had discovered grains of gold in a glittering earth which abounded near Jamestown ; and “ there was now no talk, no hope, no work, but dig gold, wash gold, refine gold, load gold.” The refiners were enamored of their skill ; Martin, one of the council, promised himself honors in England as the discoverer of a mine ; and Newport, having made an unnecessary stay of fourteen weeks, and having, in defiance of the assurances of Powhatan, expected to find the Pacific just beyond the falls in James River, believed himself immeasurably rich, as he embarked for England with a freight of worthless earth.<sup>1</sup>

Disgusted at the follies which he had vainly opposed, Smith undertook the perilous and honorable office of exploring the vast Bay of the Chesapeake, and the numerous rivers which are its tributaries. Two voyages, made in an open boat, with a few companions, over whom his superior courage, rather than his station as a magistrate, gave him authority, occupied him about three months of the summer, and embraced a navigation of nearly three thousand miles.<sup>2</sup> The slenderness of his means has been contrasted with the dignity and utility of his discoveries, and his name has been placed in the highest rank with the distinguished men who have enlarged the bounds of geographical knowledge, and opened the way by their investigations for colonies and commerce. He surveyed the Bay of the Chesapeake to the Susquehannah, and left only the

<sup>1</sup> Smith, i. 165—172.

<sup>2</sup> Smith, i. 173—192, ii. 100.

CHAP. borders of that remote river to remain for some years  
<sup>IV.</sup>  
 longer the fabled dwelling-place of a giant progeny.<sup>1</sup>

1608. He was the first to make known to the English the fame of the Mohawks, "who dwelt upon a great water, and had many boats, and many men," and, as it seemed to the feebler Algonquin tribes, "made war upon all the world;" in the Chesapeake Bay he encountered a little fleet of their canoes.<sup>2</sup> The Patapsco was discovered and explored, and Smith probably entered the harbor of Baltimore.<sup>3</sup> The majestic Potomac, which at its mouth is seven miles broad, especially invited curiosity; and passing beyond the heights of Vernon and the city of Washington, he ascended to the falls above Georgetown.<sup>4</sup> Nor did he merely explore the rivers and inlets. He penetrated the territories, established friendly relations with the native tribes, and laid the foundation for future beneficial intercourse. The map<sup>5</sup> which he prepared and sent to the company in London,<sup>6</sup> is still extant, and delineates correctly the great outlines of nature. The expedition was worthy the romantic age of American history.

Sept. 10. Three days after his return, Smith was made president of the council. Order and industry began to be diffused by his energetic administration, when Newport, with a second supply, entered the river. About seventy new emigrants arrived; two of them, it merits notice, were females. The angry covetousness of a greedy but disappointed corporation was now fully displayed. As if their command could transmute minerals, narrow the continent, and awaken the dead,

<sup>1</sup> Burk, i. 123.

<sup>2</sup> Smith, i. 181—183.

<sup>3</sup> Stith, 64.

<sup>4</sup> Compare Smith, i. 177, with Stith, 65, and Smith's map.

<sup>5</sup> In the Richmond edition, opposite page 149; in Purchas, iv., opposite page 1691.

<sup>6</sup> Smith's letter, in Hist. i. 202.

they demanded a lump of gold, or a certain passage to the South Sea, or, a feigned humanity added, one of the lost company, sent by Sir Walter Raleigh.<sup>1</sup> The charge of the voyage was two thousand pounds; unless the ships should return full freighted with commodities, corresponding in value to the costs of the adventure, the colonists were threatened, that "they should be left in Virginia as banished men."<sup>2</sup> Neither had experience taught the company to engage suitable persons for Virginia. "When you send again," Smith was obliged to write, "I entreat you rather send but thirty carpenters, husbandmen, gardeners, fishermen, black smiths, masons, and diggers up of trees' roots, well provided, than a thousand of such as we have."

After the departure of the ships, Smith employed his authority to enforce industry. Six hours in the day were spent in work; the rest might be given to pastime. The gentlemen had been taught the use of the axe, and had become accomplished woodcutters. "He who would not work, might not eat;" and Jamestown assumed the appearance of a regular place of abode. Yet so little land had been cultivated—not more than thirty or forty acres in all—that it was still necessary for Englishmen to solicit food from the indolent Indians; and Europeans, to preserve themselves from starving, were billeted among the sons of the forest. Thus the season passed away; of two hundred in the colony, not more than seven died.<sup>3</sup>

The golden anticipations of the London company had not been realized. But the cause of failure appeared in the policy, which had grasped at sudden

<sup>1</sup> Smith, i. 192, 193.

<sup>2</sup> Smith's letter, in History, i. 200, 201; also, Smith's advertise-

ments for the unexperienced, in iii.

Mass. Hist. Coll. iii. 10.

<sup>3</sup> Smith, i. 202, 222—229.

CHAP. emoluments;<sup>1</sup> the enthusiasm of the English seemed  
 IV.  
 ~~ exalted by the train of misfortunes; and more vast  
 1609. and honorable plans<sup>2</sup> were conceived, which were to  
 be effected by more numerous and opulent associates.  
 Not only were the limits of the colony extended, the  
 company was enlarged by the subscriptions of many  
 of the nobility and gentry of England, and of the  
 tradesmen of London; and the name of the powerful  
 Cecil, the inveterate enemy and successful rival of  
 Raleigh, appears at the head of those,<sup>3</sup> who were to  
 carry into execution the vast design to which Raleigh,  
 now a close prisoner in the tower, had first awakened  
 the attention of his countrymen. At the request of the  
 corporation, which was become a very powerful body,  
 without any regard to the rights or wishes of those  
 who had already emigrated under the sanction of  
 May existing laws, the constitution of Virginia was radically  
 23. changed.

The new charter<sup>4</sup> transferred to the company the  
 powers which had before been reserved to the king.  
 The supreme council in England was now to be chosen  
 by the stockholders themselves, and, in the exercise  
 of the powers of legislation and government, was inde-  
 pendent of the monarch. The governor in Virginia  
 might rule the colonists with uncontrolled authority,  
 according to the tenor of the instructions and laws  
 established by the council, or, in want of them, accord-  
 ing to his own good discretion, even in cases capital  
 and criminal, not less than civil; and, in the event of  
 mutiny or rebellion, he might declare martial law,  
 being himself the judge of the necessity of the measure,

<sup>1</sup> Smith, in iii. Mass. Hist. Coll. iii. 10—12.

<sup>2</sup> Hakluyt's Dedication of Vir-

<sup>3</sup> Hening, i. 81—88.

<sup>4</sup> In Hening, Stith, and Haz-

ard, ii.

and the executive officer in its administration. Thus CHAP.  
the lives, liberty and fortune of the colonists were placed IV.  
at the arbitrary will of a governor who was to be ap- 1609.  
pointed by a commercial corporation. As yet not one  
valuable civil privilege was conceded to the emigrants.<sup>1</sup>

Splendid as were the auspices of the new charter, unlimited as were the powers of the patentees, the next events in the colony were still more disastrous. Lord De La Ware,<sup>2</sup> distinguished for his virtues, as well as rank, received the appointment of governor and captain-general for life; an avarice which would listen to no possibility of defeat, and which already dreamed of a flourishing empire in America, surrounded him with stately officers, suited by their titles and nominal charges to the dignity of an opulent kingdom.<sup>3</sup> The condition of the public mind favored colonization; swarms of people desired to be transported; and the adventurers, with cheerful alacrity, contributed free-will offerings.<sup>4</sup> The widely-diffused enthusiasm soon enabled the company to despatch a fleet of nine vessels, containing more than five hundred emigrants. The admiral of the fleet was Newport, who, with Sir Thomas Gates and Sir George Somers, was authorized to administer the affairs of the colony till the arrival of Lord Delaware.<sup>5</sup>

The three commissioners had embarked on board the same ship.<sup>6</sup> When near the coast of Virginia, a hurricane<sup>7</sup> separated the admiral from the rest of his fleet; and his vessel was stranded on the rocks of the Ber-

<sup>1</sup> Chalmers, 25.

<sup>2</sup> Walpole's Royal and Noble Authors, enlarged by Th. Park, ii. 180—183.

<sup>3</sup> Smith, in iii. Mass. Hist. Coll. iii. 11, and Smith, ii. 106.

<sup>4</sup> True Declaration of Virginia,

published by the Council of Virginia, in 1610, p. 59—a leading authority.

<sup>5</sup> Smith, i. 233, 234; or Purchas, iv. 1729.

<sup>6</sup> True Declaration, 19 and 21.

<sup>7</sup> Archer's letter, in Purchas, iv.,

CHAP. mudas. A small ketch perished; and<sup>1</sup> seven ships  
 IV.  
 ~~~ only arrived in Virginia.

1609. A new dilemma ensued. The old charter was abrogated; and, as there was in the settlement no one who had any authority from the new patentees, anarchy seemed at hand. The emigrants of the last arrival were dissolute gallants, packed off to escape worse destinies at home,<sup>2</sup> broken tradesmen, gentlemen impoverished in spirit and fortune; rakes and libertines, men more fitted to corrupt than to found a commonwealth. It was not the will of God that the new state should be formed of these materials; that such men should be the fathers of a progeny, born on the American soil, who were one day to assert American liberty by their eloquence, and defend it by their valor. Hopeless as the determination appeared, Smith resolutely maintained his authority over the unruly herd, and devised new expeditions and new settlements, to furnish them occupation and support. At last, an accidental explosion of gunpowder disabled him, by inflicting wounds which the surgical skill of Virginia could not relieve.<sup>3</sup> Delegating his authority to Percy, he embarked for England. Extreme suffering from his wounds and the ingratitude of his employers were the fruits of his services. He received, for his sacrifices and his perilous exertions, not one foot of land, not the house he himself had built, not the field his own hands had planted, nor any reward but the applause of his conscience and the world.<sup>4</sup> He was the Father of Virginia, the true leader who first planted the Saxon race within the borders of the United States. His

1733, 1734. Secretary Strachy's account, in Purchas, iv. 1735—

1738. True Declaration of Vir-

ginia, 21—26.

<sup>1</sup> Smith, i. 234.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. i. 235. Stith, 103.

<sup>3</sup> Smith, i. 239.

<sup>4</sup> Smith, ii. 102. Virginia's Ver-

ger, in Purchas, iv. 1815.

judgment had ever been clear in the midst of general despondency. He united the highest spirit of adventure with consummate powers of action. His courage and self-possession accomplished what others esteemed desperate. Fruitful in expedients, he was prompt in execution. Though he had been harassed by the persecutions of malignant envy, he never revived the memory of the faults of his enemies. He was accustomed to lead, not to send his men to danger; would suffer want rather than borrow, and starve sooner than not pay.<sup>1</sup> He had nothing counterfeit in his nature; but was open, honest, and sincere. He clearly discerned, that it was the true interest of England not to seek in Virginia for gold and sudden wealth, but to enforce regular industry. "Nothing," said he, "is to be expected thence, but by labor."<sup>2</sup>

The colonists, no longer controlled by an acknowledged authority, were soon abandoned to improvident idleness. Their ample stock of provisions was rapidly consumed; and further supplies were refused by the Indians, whose friendship had been due to the personal influence of Smith, and who now regarded the English with a fatal contempt. Stragglers from the town were cut off; parties, which begged food in the Indian cabins, were deliberately murdered; and plans were laid to starve and destroy the whole company. The horrors of famine ensued; while a band of about thirty, seizing on a ship, escaped to become pirates, and to plead their desperate necessity as an excuse for their crimes.<sup>3</sup> Smith, at his departure, had left more than

<sup>1</sup> Smith, i. 241. It is hardly necessary to add, that much of Smith's Generall Historie is a compilation of the works of others. Compare Belknap, i. 303, 304.

<sup>2</sup> Answers in Smith, ii. 106. <sup>3</sup> True Declaration, 35—39. Compare Stith, 116, 117; Smith, ii. 2.

CHAP. four hundred and ninety persons in the colony;<sup>1</sup> in  
 IV. six months, indolence, vice, and famine, reduced the number to sixty; and these were so feeble and dejected, that, if relief had been delayed but ten days longer, they also must have utterly perished.<sup>2</sup>

**1610.** Sir Thomas Gates and the passengers, whose ship had been wrecked on the rocks of the Bermudas, had reached the shore without the loss of a life. The liberal fertility of the uninhabited island, teeming with natural products, for nine months sustained them in affluence. From the cedars which they felled, and the wrecks of their old ship, they, with admirable perseverance, constructed two vessels, in which they now embarked for Virginia,<sup>3</sup> in the hope of a happy welcome to the abundance of a prosperous colony.

May 24. How great, then, was their horror, as they came among the scenes of death and misery, of which the gloom was increased by the prospect of continued scarcity! Four pinnaces remained in the river; nor could the extremity of distress listen to any other course, than to sail for Newfoundland, and seek safety by dispersing the company among the ships of English fishermen.<sup>4</sup>

June 7. The colonists—such is human nature—desired to burn the town in which they had been so wretched, and the exercise of their infantile vengeance was prevented only by the energy of Gates,<sup>5</sup> who was himself the last to desert the settlement. “None dropped a tear, for none had enjoyed one day of happiness.” They fell

June 8. down the stream with the tide; and, the next morning, as they drew near the mouth of the river, they encountered the long-boat of Lord Delaware, who had

<sup>1</sup> Smith, i. 240.

<sup>2</sup> Purchas, iv. 1732 and 1766. Stith, 117. True Declaration, 47, or Smith, ii. 4, says four days.

<sup>3</sup> True Declaration of Virginia, 23—26.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. 43, 44.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid. 45. Smith, ii. 3.

arrived on the coast with emigrants and supplies. CHAP.  
The fugitives bore up the helm, and, favored by the ~~the~~<sup>IV.</sup> wind, were that night once more at the fort in James-<sup>1610</sup> town.<sup>1</sup>

It was on the tenth day of June, that the restauration of the colony was solemnly begun by supplications to God. A deep sense of the infinite mercies of his providence overawed the colonists who had been spared by famine, the emigrants who had been shipwrecked and yet preserved, and the new comers who found wretchedness and want, where they had expected the contentment of abundance. The firmness of their resolution repelled despair. "It is," said they, "the arm of the Lord of Hosts, who would have his people pass the Red Sea and the wilderness, and then possess the land of Canaan."<sup>2</sup> Dangers avoided inspire trust in Providence. "Doubt not," said the emigrants to the people of England, "God will raise our state and build his church in this excellent clime." After solemn exercises of religion, Lord Delaware caused his commission to be read; a consultation was immediately held on the good of the colony; and its government was organized with mildness but decision. The evils of faction were healed by the unity of the administration, and the dignity and virtues of the governor; and the colonists, excited by mutual emulation, performed their tasks with alacrity. At the beginning of the day, they assembled in the little church, which was kept neatly trimmed with the wild flowers of the country;<sup>3</sup> next, they returned to their houses to receive their allowance of food. The settled hours of labor were from six in the morning till ten, and from two in the

<sup>1</sup> True Declaration, 45, 46.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 48.

<sup>3</sup> Purchas, iv. 1753.

CHAP. afternoon till four. The houses were warm and  
 IV. secure, covered above with strong boards, and matted  
 1610. on the inside after the fashion of the Indian wigwams.

Security and affluence were returning. But the health of Lord Delaware sunk under the cares of his situation and the diseases of the climate; and, after a lingering sickness, he was compelled to leave the administration with Percy, and return to England.<sup>1</sup> The colony, at this time, consisted of about two hundred men; but the departure of the governor was a disastrous event, which produced not only despondency at Jamestown, but "a damp of coldness" in the hearts of the London company; and a great reaction in the popular mind in England. In the age when the theatre was the chief place of public amusement and resort, Virginia was introduced by the stage-poets as a theme of scorn and derision.<sup>2</sup> "This plantation," complained they of Jamestown, "has undergone the reproofs of the base world; our own brethren laugh us to scorne; and papists and players, the scum and dregs of the earth, mocke such as help to build up the walls of Jerusalem."<sup>3</sup>

1611. Fortunately, the adventurers, before the ill success of Lord Delaware was known, had despatched Sir Thomas Dale, "a worthy and experienced soldier in the Low Countries," with liberal supplies. He arrived May 10. safely in the colony, and assumed the government, which he soon afterwards administered upon the basis of martial law. The code, written in blood, and printed and sent to Virginia by the treasurer, Sir Thomas Smith, on his own authority, and without the

<sup>1</sup> The New Life of Virginia, 1612, republished in ii. Mass. Hist. Coll. viii. 199—223, and by P. Force, 1835. The Relation of Lord De la Warre, printed in 1611, is before me.

<sup>2</sup> Epistle Dedicatore to the New Life of Virginia. In Force, p. 4.  
<sup>3</sup> For the Colony in Virginea Britannia, Lawes Divine, Morall, and Martial. London, 1612.

order or assent of the company, was chiefly a translation from the rules of war of the United Provinces. <sup>CHAP. IV.</sup> ~~~~~~~ The Episcopal Church, coeval in Virginia with the <sup>1611</sup> settlement of Jamestown, was, like the infant commonwealth, subjected to military rule ; and, though conformity was not strictly enforced, yet courts-martial had authority to punish indifference with stripes, and infidelity with death. The introduction of this arbitrary system excited no indignation in the colonists, who had never obtained any franchises, and no surprise in the adventurers in England, who regarded the Virginians as the garrison of a distant citadel, more than as citizens and freemen. The charter of the London company<sup>1</sup> had invested the governor with full authority, in cases of rebellion and mutiny, to exercise martial law ; and, in the condition of the settlement, this seemed a sufficient warrant for making it the law of the land.

The letters of Dale to the council confessed the small number and weakness of the colonists ; but he kindled hope in the hearts of those constant adventurers, who, in the greatest disasters, had never fainted. "If any thing otherwise than well betide me," said he, "let me commend unto your carefulness the pursuit and dignity of this business, than which your purses and endeavors will never open nor travel in a more meritorious enterprise. Take four of the best kingdoms in Christendom, and put them all together, they may no way compare with this country, either for commodities or goodness of soil."<sup>2</sup> Lord Delaware and Sir Thomas Gates earnestly confirmed what Dale had written, and, without any delay, Gates,

<sup>1</sup> See the charter, sec. xxiv. <sup>2</sup> New Life of Virginia, ii. Mass. Compare Smith, ii. 10, 11; Stith, 122, Hist. Coll. viii. 207. 123, and 293; Purchas, iv. 1767.

CHAP. IV.  
~~~ who has the honor, to all posterity, of being the first named in the original patent for Virginia, conducted to 1611. the New World six ships, with three hundred emigrants. Long afterwards the gratitude of Virginia to these early emigrants was shown by repeated acts of benevolent legislation. A wise liberality sent also a hundred kine, as well as suitable provisions. It was the most fortunate step which had been taken, and proved the wisdom of Cecil, and others, whose firmness had prevailed.

The promptness of this relief merits admiration. In May, Dale had written from Virginia, and the last Aug. of August, the new recruits, under Gates, were already at Jamestown. So unlooked for was this supply, that, at their approach, they were regarded with fear as a hostile fleet. Who can describe the joy which ensued, when they were found to be friends? Gates assumed the government amidst the thanksgivings of the colony, and at once endeavored to employ the sentiment of religious gratitude as a foundation of order and of laws. "Lord bless England, our sweet native country," was the morning and evening prayer of the grateful emigrants.<sup>1</sup> The colony now numbered seven hundred men; and Dale, with the consent of Gates, went far up the river to found the new plantation, which, in honor of Prince Henry, a general favorite with the English people, was named Henrico; and there, on the remote frontier, Alexander Whitaker, the self-denying "apostle of Virginia," assisted in "bearing the name of God to the gentiles." But the greatest change in the condition of the colonists, resulted from the incipient establishment of private property. To each man a few acres of ground were assigned for his orchard and garden,

<sup>1</sup> Praier said morning and evening, in Lawes Divine, &c. p. 92.

to plant at his pleasure and for his own use.<sup>1</sup> So long as industry had been without its special reward, labor had been reluctantly performed, and want had necessarily ensued. A week was wasted in doing the work of a day, and thirty men, laboring for the colony, had accomplished less than three were now able to perform for themselves.<sup>2</sup> It became, henceforward, the policy of the company to encourage the settlers in gathering riches; and the sanctity of private property was soon recognized as the surest guarantee of obedience. Yet the rights of the Indians were little respected; nor did the English disdain to appropriate, by conquest, the soil, the cabins, and the granaries of the tribe of the Appomattocks.<sup>3</sup>

While the colony was advancing in security, industry, and extent of subject territory, the adventurers in England desired and obtained an enlargement of their grants from the easy munificence of King James. The Bermudas and all islands within three hundred leagues of the Virginia shore, were included within the limits of their third patent;<sup>4</sup> a concession of no ultimate importance in American history, since the new acquisitions were soon transferred to a separate company, and were never connected with Virginia.<sup>5</sup> But the most remarkable change, now effected in the charter,—a change which contained within itself the germ of another revolution,—consisted in giving to the corporation a democratic form. Hitherto all power had resided in the council; which, it is true, was to have its vacancies supplied by the majority of the corpo-

1612.  
Mar.  
12.

<sup>1</sup> New Life of Virginia, printed in 1612. Secretary Hamor, in Purchas, iv. 1766.

<sup>2</sup> Purchas, iv. 1766.

<sup>3</sup> Hamor, in Purchas, iv. 1766

and 1768. Stith, p. 124, 125.

<sup>4</sup> See the patent, in Hening, i. 98—110. It is also in Stith and in Hazard.

<sup>5</sup> Stith, 127.

CHAP. ration. But now it was ordered, that weekly, or  
<sup>IV.</sup> even more frequent, meetings of the whole company might be convened, for the transaction of affairs of less weight; while all questions respecting government, commerce, and the disposition of lands, should be reserved for the four great and general courts; at which all officers were to be elected, and all laws established. The political rights of the colonists themselves remained unimproved; the character of the corporation was entirely changed. Power was transferred from the council to the company; and its sessions became the theatre of bold and independent discussion. A perverse financial privilege was at the same time conceded; and lotteries, though unusual in England, were authorized for the benefit of the colony.

The lotteries produced to the company twenty-nine thousand pounds; but as they were esteemed a grievance by the nation, so they were, after a few years,

1621. noticed by parliament as a public evil, and, in consequence of the complaint of the commons, were suspended by an order of council.<sup>1</sup>

Mar. 1612. If the new charter enlarged the powers of the company, the progress of the colony confirmed its stability. Tribes even of the Indians submitted to the English, and, by a formal treaty, declared themselves the tributaries of King James. A marriage was the immediate cause of this change of relations.

A foraging party of the colonists, headed by Argall, had stolen away the daughter of Powhatan, and now demanded of her father a ransom. The indignant 1613. chief prepared rather for hostilities. But John Rolfe, a young Englishman, winning the favor of Pocahontas, desired her in marriage; and, with the favor of Sir

<sup>1</sup> Chalmers, 32, 33. New Life of Virginia. Hening, i. 108—109.

Thomas Dale, and to the express delight of the savage chieftain, the nuptials were solemnized according to the rites of the English church. Every historian of Virginia commemorates them with approbation; distinguished men trace their descent from this union; the Indian wife, instructed in the English language, and bearing an English name, sailed with her husband for England. The daughter of the wilderness possessed the mild elements of female loveliness; half concealed, as if in the bud; and rendered the more beautiful by the childlike simplicity with which her education in the savannahs of the New World had invested her. How could she fail to be caressed at court, and admired in the city? As a wife and as a young mother, her conduct was exemplary. She had been able to contrast the magnificence of European life with the freedom of the western forests; and now, as she was preparing to return to America, at the age of twenty-two, she fell a victim to the English climate; saved, as if by the hand of mercy, from beholding the extermination of the tribes from which she sprung, leaving a spotless name, and dwelling in memory under the form of perpetual youth.

The immediate fruits of the marriage to the colony were a confirmed peace, not with Powhatan alone, but also with the powerful Chickahominies, who sought the friendship of the English, and demanded to be called Englishmen.<sup>1</sup> It might have seemed that the European and the native races were about to become blended. Yet no such result ensued. The history of Pocahontas is full of singular incidents; yet nothing is more singular than her marriage. The English and the Indian

<sup>1</sup> Stith, 127—130.

CHAP. races remained disunited ; and the weakest gradually  
 IV.  
 ~~ became extinct.

1613. The colony seemed firmly established ; and its governor asserted for the English the sole right of colonizing the coast to the latitude of forty-five degrees. Sailing in an armed vessel as a protector to the fishermen off the coast of Maine, Samuel Argall, an active young sea-captain, of coarse passions and arbitrary temper, discovered, that the French were just planting a colony on the Penobscot ; and hastening to the spot, after cannonading the intrenchments, and a sharp discharge of musquetry, he gained possession of the infant hamlet of St. Sauveur. The cross round which the faithful had gathered, was thrown down ; and the cottages and the ship in the harbor were abandoned to pillage. Of the colonists, some were put on board a vessel for St. Malo, others transported to the Chesapeake.

The news of French encroachments roused the  
 1613. jealousy of Virginia. Immediately Argall sailed once more to the North, raised the arms of England where those of De Guercheville had been planted, threw down the fortifications of De Monts on the isle of St. Croix, and set on fire the deserted settlement of Port Royal. Thus did England vindicate her claim to Maine and Acadia, and the London company avenge the invasion of its monopolies.<sup>1</sup> This first contest between France and England for colonial possessions in America was, in dignity, not superior to the acts of marauders and pirates ; the struggle was destined to increase, till the strife for acres which neither nation could cultivate, kindled a war that spread throughout the globe.

<sup>1</sup> Charlevoix, *Nouv. France*, I. iii. at the close of the book. Edmund Howes, in *Stowe*, 1018. Purchas, iv. 1808. Compare *Purchas*, 1765; *Gorges' Description*, 19. Compare *Prince's Chronology*, for June, 1613; *Maine Smith*, ii. 18. *Champlain*, i. 104

On his return from Acadia, Argall entered the port CHAP.  
of New York, to assert the sovereignty of England; <sup>IV.</sup>  
but there is no room to believe he ascended the Hud- 1613.  
son.<sup>1</sup> Meantime the people of England exulted in  
the anticipated glories of the rising state in Virginia.  
The theatre rung with its praise: Shakspeare, whose  
friend the Earl of Southampton was a leader in the  
Virginia company, felt the general enthusiasm; and  
his splendid prophecy seemed to promise to the English  
nation the possession of a new hemisphere through  
their sovereign:—

“ Wherever the bright sun of heaven shall shine,  
His honor and the greatness of his name  
Shall be, and make new nations. He shall flourish,  
And, like a mountain cedar, reach his branches  
To all the plains about him.”

Sir Thomas Gates, returning to England,<sup>2</sup> left the 1614. government with Dale, and employed himself success- Mar.  
fully in England in preserving the spirit of the London company. But it was neither to English lotteries, nor to English privileged companies, that the new state was to owe its prosperity. Private industry, directed to the culture of a valuable staple, was more productive than the patronage of England; and tobacco enriched Virginia.

The condition of private property in lands among 1613 the colonists, depended, in some measure, on the cir- 1616.  
cumstances under which they had emigrated. Some to  
had been sent and maintained at the exclusive cost of  
the company, and were its servants. One month of  
their time and three acres of land were set apart for

—109; Mémoire sur les Limites de l'Acadie, 111. Stith erroneously refers the transaction to 1614. Heylin, 96, says 1613.

<sup>1</sup> Belknap, ii. 55, thought otherwise.

<sup>2</sup> Smith, ii. 22. Stith, 132.

CHAP. them, besides a small allowance of two bushels of corn  
<sup>IV.</sup> from the public store; the rest of their labor belonged to their employers.<sup>1</sup> This number gradually decreased; and, in 1617, there were of them all, men, women, and children, but fifty-four.<sup>2</sup> Others, especially the favorite settlement near the mouth of the Appomattox, were tenants, paying two and a half barrels of corn as a yearly tribute to the store, and giving to the public service one month's labor, which was to be required neither at seed-time nor harvest.<sup>3</sup> This more favorable condition was probably owing to some peculiarities in the manner in which their expenses in emigrating had been defrayed. He who came himself, or had sent others, at his own expense, had been entitled to a hundred acres of land for each person: now that the colony was well established, the bounty on emigration was fixed at fifty acres, of which the actual occupation and culture gave a further right to as many more, to be assigned at leisure. Besides this, lands were granted as rewards of merit; yet not more than two thousand acres could be so appropriated to one person. Every adventurer, who had paid into the company's treasury twelve pounds and ten shillings, likewise obtained a title to a hundred acres of land, any where in Virginia, not yet granted or possessed, with a reserved claim to as much more.<sup>4</sup> Such were the earliest land laws of Virginia; imperfect and unequal as they were, they at least gave the cultivator the means of becoming a proprietor of the soil. These valuable changes were introduced by Sir Thomas Dale, a magistrate, who, notwithstanding the introduction of martial law, has gained praise for his vigor

<sup>1</sup> Smith, ii. 17, 18. Chalmers, 34.

<sup>2</sup> Smith, ii. 34. Stith, 147.

<sup>3</sup> Smith, ii. 22. Stith, 132.

<sup>4</sup> State of Virginia, 1620, p. 9, 10

and industry, his judgment and conduct. Having re- CHAP.  
mained five years in America, and now desiring to visit ~~the~~<sup>IV.</sup> England and his family, he appointed George Yeardley deputy-governor, and embarked for his native country.<sup>1</sup> 1616.

The labor of the colony had long been misdirected; in the manufacture of ashes and soap, of glass and tar, the colonists could not sustain the competition with the nations on the Baltic. Much fruitless cost had been incurred in planting vineyards. It was found that tobacco might be profitably cultivated. The sect 1615. of gold-finders had become extinct; and now the fields, the gardens, the public squares, and even the streets of Jamestown, were planted with tobacco;<sup>2</sup> and the colonists dispersed, unmindful of security in their eagerness for gain. Tobacco, as it gave animation to Virginian industry, eventually became not only the staple, but the currency of the colony.

With the success of industry and the security of 1617 property, the emigrants needed the possession of political rights. It is an evil incident to a corporate body, that its officers separate their interests as managers from their interests as partial proprietors. This was found to be none the less true, where an extensive territory was the estate to be managed; and imbibited parties contended for the posts of emolument and honor. It was under the influence of a faction which rarely obtained a majority, that the office of deputy-governor was intrusted to Argall. Martial law was at that time the common law of the country: that the despotism of the new deputy, who was both self-willed and avaricious, might be complete, he was further invested with the place of admiral of the country and the adjoining seas.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Stith, 138—140.

<sup>2</sup> Smith, ii. 33.

<sup>3</sup> Stith, 145.

CHAP. IV. The return of Lord Delaware to America might have restored tranquillity; the health of that nobleman was not equal to the voyage; he embarked with many emigrants, but did not live to reach Virginia.<sup>1</sup> The tyranny of Argall was, therefore, left unrestrained; but his indiscriminate rapacity and vices were destined to defeat themselves, and procure for the colony an inestimable benefit; for they led him to defraud the company, as well as to oppress the colonists. The condition of Virginia became intolerable; the labor of the settlers was perverted to the benefit of the governor; servitude, for a limited period, was the common penalty annexed to trifling offences; and, in a colony where martial law still continued in force, life itself was insecure against his capricious passions. The first appeal ever made from America to England, directed, not to the king, but to the company, was in behalf of one whom Argall had wantonly condemned to death, and whom he had with great difficulty been prevailed upon to spare.<sup>2</sup> The colony was fast falling into disrepute, and the report of the tyranny established beyond the Atlantic, checked emigration. A reformation was demanded, and was conceded, with guarantees for the future; because the interests of the colonists and the company coincided in requiring a redress of their common wrongs. After a strenuous contest on the part of rival factions for the control of the company, the influence of Sir Edwin Sandys prevailed; Argall was displaced, and the mild and popular Yeardley was now appointed captain-general of the colony. But before the new chief magistrate could

<sup>1</sup> Stith, 148. In Royal and Noble Authors, ii. 180—183, Lord Delaware is said to have died at Wherwell, Hants, June 7, 1618. The

writers on Virginia uniformly relate that he died at sea. Smith, ii. 34.

<sup>2</sup> Stith, 150—153.

arrive in Virginia, Argall had withdrawn, having previously, by fraudulent devices, preserved for himself and his partners the fruits of his extortions. The London company suffered the usual plagues of corporations—faithless agents, and fruitless suits.<sup>1</sup>

The administration of Yeardley began with acts of benevolence. The ancient planters were fully released from all further service to the colony, and were confirmed in the possession of their estates, both personal and real, as amply as the subjects of England. The burdens imposed by his predecessor were removed, and martial law gradually disappeared.<sup>2</sup> But these were not the only benefits conferred through Yeardley; his administration marks an era in the progress of American liberty.

By the direction of the London company,<sup>3</sup> the authority of the governor was limited by a council, which had power to redress such wrongs as he should commit; and the colonists themselves were received to a share in legislation. In June, 1619, the first colonial assembly that ever met in Virginia<sup>4</sup> was convened at Jamestown. The governor, the newly-appointed council, and two representatives from each of the eleven boroughs, hence called burgesses, constituted the first popular representative body of the western hemisphere. All matters were debated which were thought expedient for the good of the colony. The legislative enactments of these earliest American law-givers, now no longer extant, could not be of force till they were ratified by the company in England. It

<sup>1</sup> Stith, 154. 157. The company's Chief Root of the Differences and Discontents, in Burk, i. 317—322; the leading authority, written in 1623.

<sup>2</sup> Stith, 158—161. Chalmers, 44.

<sup>3</sup> State of Virginia, 1620, p. 6, 7; a rare tract, of the highest authority.

<sup>4</sup> Hening, i. 118.

CHAP. does not appear that the ratification took place ; yet  
 IV. ~~—~~ they were acknowledged to have been, “in their greatest  
 1619. part, very well and judiciously carried.” The gratitude of the Virginians was expressed with cheerful alacrity ; former griefs were buried in oblivion ; and the representatives of the colony expressed their “greatest possible thanks” for the care of the company in settling the plantation.<sup>1</sup>

This was the happy dawn of legislative liberty in America. They who had been dependent on the will of a governor, claimed the privileges of Englishmen, and demanded a code based upon the English laws. They became willing to regard Virginia as their country ; “they fell to building houses and planting corn,”<sup>2</sup> and fearlessly resolved to perpetuate the colony.

The patriot party in England, now possessed of the control of the London company, engaged with earnestness in schemes to advance the population and establish the liberties of Virginia ; and Sir Edwin Sandys, the new treasurer, was a man of such judgment and firmness, that no intimidations, not even threats of blood, could deter him from investigating and reforming the abuses by which the progress of the colony had been retarded.<sup>3</sup> At his accession to office, after twelve years’ labor, and an expenditure of eighty thousand pounds by the company, there were in the colony no more than six hundred persons, men, women, and children ; and now, in one year, he provided a passage to Virginia for twelve hundred and sixty-one persons. Nor must the character of the emigration be over-

<sup>1</sup> Stith, 160, 161. Smith, ii. 39. Ancient Records, in Hening, i. 121, 122. State of Virginia, 1620, p. 7. Purchas, iv. 1775, 1776. Chalmers, 44, perversely attributes to the colonial assembly the lan-

guage employed by the London company.

<sup>2</sup> Hammond; Leah and Rachel, 3.

<sup>3</sup> Chief Root, &c., Burk, i. 323. Stith, 159.

looked. “The people of Virginia had not been settled <sup>CHAP.  
IV.</sup> in their minds,” and as, before the recent changes, ~~they had gone there with the design of ultimately returning to England, it was necessary to multiply attachments to the soil.~~ Few women had as yet dared to cross the Atlantic ; but now the promise of prosperity induced ninety agreeable persons, young and incorrupt,<sup>1</sup> to listen to the wishes of the company, and the benevolent advice of Sandys, and to embark for the colony, where they were assured of a welcome. They were transported at the expense of the corporation, and were married to the tenants of the company, or to men who were well able to support them, and who willingly defrayed the costs of their passage, which were rigorously demanded.<sup>2</sup> The adventure which had been in part a mercantile speculation, succeeded so well, that it was designed to send the next <sup>1620.</sup> year another consignment of one hundred ;<sup>3</sup> but before these could be collected, the company found itself so poor, that its design could be accomplished only by a subscription. After some delays, sixty were actually <sup>1621.</sup> despatched, maids of virtuous education, young, handsome, and well recommended. The price rose from one hundred and twenty to one hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco, or even more ; so that all the original charges might be repaid. The debt for a wife was a debt of honor, and took precedence of any other ; and the company, in conferring employments, gave a preference to the married men. Domestic ties were formed ; virtuous sentiments and habits of thrift ensued ; the tide of emigration swelled, <sup>1619</sup> within three years, fifty patents for land were granted, <sup>to</sup> <sup>1621.</sup>

<sup>1</sup> A Note of the Shipping, Men and Provisions sent to Virginia in 1619, p. 1, 2 and 3. Stith, 165.

<sup>2</sup> Sandys, in Stith, 166.

<sup>3</sup> Supplies for 1620, p. 11, annexed to State of Virginia, 1620.

CHAP. and three thousand five hundred persons found their  
 IV.  
 ~~~ way to Virginia,<sup>1</sup> which was a refuge even for  
 Puritans.<sup>2</sup>

- 1620.** The deliberate and formal concession of legislative  
 May  
**17.** liberties was an act of the deepest interest. When Sandys, after a year's service, resigned his office as treasurer, a struggle ensued on the election of his successor. The meeting was numerously attended ; and, as the courts of the company were now become the schools of debate, many of the distinguished leaders of parliament were present. King James attempted to decide the struggle ; and a message was communicated from him, nominating four candidates, one of whom he desired should receive the appointment.
- 1621.** The company resisted the royal interference as an infringement of their charter ; and while James exposed himself to the disgrace of an unsuccessful attempt at usurpation, the choice of the meeting fell upon the earl of Southampton, the early friend of Shakspeare. Having thus vindicated their own rights, the company proceeded to redress former wrongs, and to provide colonial liberty with its written guaranties.<sup>3</sup>

In the case of the appeal to the London company from a sentence of death pronounced by Argall, the friends of that officer had assembled, with the earl of Warwick at their head, and had voted, that trial by martial law is the noblest kind of trial, because soldiers and men of the sword were the judges. This opinion was now reversed, and the rights of the colonists to trial by jury amply sustained. Nor was it long before the freedom of the northern fisheries was equally asserted ; and the early history of New England will

<sup>1</sup> Stith, 196. State of Virginia,  
 1622, p. 6, &c.

<sup>2</sup> Whitaker, in Purchas.  
<sup>3</sup> Stith, 176—181.

explain with what success the monopoly of a rival corporation was opposed.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
IV.

The company had silently approved, yet never expressly sanctioned, the colonial assembly which had been convened by Sir George Yeardley. It was in July, 1621, that a memorable ordinance<sup>2</sup> established for the colony a written constitution. The form of government prescribed for Virginia was analogous to the English constitution, and was, with some modifications, the model of the systems, which were afterwards introduced into the various royal provinces. Its purpose was declared to be “the greatest comfort and benefit to the people, and the prevention of injustice, grievances, and oppression.” Its terms are few and simple;—a governor, to be appointed by the company; a permanent council, likewise to be appointed by the company; a general assembly, to be convened yearly, and to consist of the members of the council, and of two burgesses to be chosen from each of the several plantations by their respective inhabitants. The assembly might exercise full legislative authority, a negative voice being reserved to the governor; but no law or ordinance would be valid, unless ratified by the company in England. With singular justice, and a liberality without example, it was further ordained, that, after the government of the colony shall have once been framed, no orders of the court in London shall bind the colony, unless they be in like manner ratified by the general assembly. The courts of justice were required to conform to the laws and manner of trial used in the realm of England.

July  
24.

Such was the constitution which Sir Francis Wyatt, the successor of the mild but inefficient Yeardley, was

<sup>1</sup> Stith, 181—185. Gorges, c. xvii.—xxii. <sup>2</sup> Hening, i. 110, 111.

CHAP. IV. commissioned to bear to the colony. The system of representative government and trial by jury, was thus established in the new hemisphere as an acknowledged right; the colonists, ceasing to depend as servants on a commercial company, now became enfranchised citizens. Henceforward, the supreme power was held to reside in the hands of the colonial parliament, and of the king, as king of Virginia. The ordinance was the basis on which Virginia erected the superstructure of its liberties. Its influences were wide and enduring, and can be traced through all following years of the history of the colony. It constituted the plantation, in its infancy, a nursery of freemen; and succeeding generations learned to cherish institutions which were as old as the first period of the prosperity of their fathers. The privileges which were now conceded, could never be wrested from the Virginians; and, as new colonies arose at the south, their proprietaries could hope to win emigrants only by bestowing franchises as large as those enjoyed by their elder rival. The London company merits the fame of having acted as the successful friend of liberty in America. It may be doubted, whether any public act during the reign of King James was of more permanent or pervading influence; and it reflects glory on the earl of Southampton, Sir Edwin Sandys, and the patriot party of England, who, unable to establish guaranties of a liberal administration at home, were careful to connect popular freedom so intimately with the life, prosperity and state of society of Virginia, that they never could be separated.

## CHAPTER V.

## SLAVERY. DISSOLUTION OF THE LONDON COMPANY.

WHILE Virginia, by the concession of a representative government, was constituted the asylum of liberty, by one of the strange contradictions in human affairs, it became the abode of hereditary bondsmen. The unjust, wasteful and unhappy system was fastened upon the rising institutions of America, not by the consent of the corporation, nor the desires of the emigrants; but, as it was introduced by the mercantile avarice of a foreign nation, so it was subsequently riveted by the policy of England, without regard to the interests or the wishes of the colony.

Slavery and the slave-trade are older than the records of human society: they are found to have existed, wherever the savage hunter began to assume the habits of pastoral or agricultural life; and, with the exception of Australasia, they have extended to every portion of the globe. They pervaded every nation of civilized antiquity. The earliest glimpses of Egyptian history exhibit pictures of bondage; the oldest monuments of human labor on the Egyptian soil are evidently the results of slave labor. The founder of the Jewish nation was a slave-holder and a purchaser of slaves. Every patriarch was lord in his own household.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Gen. xii. 16; xvii. 12; xxxvii. 28.

CHAP. V. The Hebrews, when they burst the bands of their own thraldom, carried with them beyond the desert the institution of slavery. The light that broke from Sinai scattered the corrupting illusions of polytheism; but slavery planted itself even in the promised land, on the banks of Siloa, near the oracles of God. The Hebrew father might doom his daughter to bondage; the wife, and children, and posterity of the emancipated slave, remained the property of the master and his heirs; and if a slave, though mortally wounded by his master, did but languish of his wounds for a day, the owner escaped with impunity; for the slave was his master's money. It is even probable, that, at a later period, a man's family might be sold for the payment of debts.<sup>1</sup>

The countries that bordered on Palestine were equally familiar with domestic servitude; and, like Babylon, Tyre also, the oldest and most famous commercial city of Phenicia, was a market "for the persons of men."<sup>2</sup> The Scythians of the desert had already established slavery throughout the plains and forests of the unknown north.

Old as are the traditions of Greece, the existence of slavery is older. The wrath of Achilles grew out of a quarrel for a slave; the Grecian dames had crowds of servile attendants; the heroes before Troy made excursions into the neighboring villages and towns to enslave the inhabitants. Greek pirates, roving, like the corsairs of Barbary, in quest of men, laid the foundations of Greek commerce; each commercial town was a slave-mart; and every cottage near the sea-side was in danger from the

<sup>1</sup> Exodus, xxi. 4, 5, 6, 7. 21.   <sup>2</sup> Ezekiel, xxvii. 13. Revelation, xviii. 13.

Matthew, xviii. 25.

kidnapper.<sup>1</sup> Greeks enslaved each other. The language of Homer was the mother-tongue of the ~~V.~~<sup>V.</sup> Helots; the Grecian city that made war on its neighbor city, exulted in its captives as a source of profit;<sup>2</sup> the hero of Macedon sold men of his own kindred and language into hopeless slavery. The idea of universal free labor had not been generated. Aristotle had written that all mankind are brothers; yet the thought of equal enfranchisement never presented itself to his sagacious understanding. In every Grecian republic, slavery was an indispensable element.

The wide diffusion of bondage throughout the dominions of Rome, and the extreme severities of the Roman law towards the slave, contributed to hasten the fall of the Roman commonwealth. The power of the father to sell his children, of the creditor to sell his insolvent debtor, of the warrior to sell his captive, carried the influence of the institution into the bosom of every Roman family; into the conditions of every contract; into the heart of every unhappy land that was invaded by the Roman eagle. The slave-markets of Rome were filled with men of every complexion and every clime.<sup>3</sup>

When the freedom of savage life succeeded in establishing its power on the ruins of the Roman empire, the great swarms of Roman slaves began to disappear; but the middle age witnessed rather a change in the channels of the slave-trade, than a diminution of its evils. The pirate, and the kidnapper, and the conqueror, still continued their pursuits. The Saxon race

<sup>1</sup> Thucydides, l. i. c. v.

<sup>2</sup> Arist. Pol., l. i. c. 2, censures the practice, which was yet the common law.

<sup>3</sup> Senecæ Epist. xcv. Agmina

exoletorum, per nationes coloresque descripta, &c. De Brevit. Vit. c. xii.

CHAP. carried the most repulsive forms of slavery to England,  
 V. where not half the population could assert a right to  
 freedom, and where the price of a man was but four  
 times the price of an ox. The importation of foreign  
 slaves was freely tolerated: in defiance of severe pen-  
 alties, the Saxons sold their own kindred into slavery  
 on the continent; nor could the traffic be checked, till  
 religion, pleading the cause of humanity, made its  
 appeal to conscience. Even after the conquest, slaves  
 1102. were exported from England to Ireland, till the reign  
 of Henry II., when a national synod of the Irish, to  
 remove the pretext for an invasion, decreed the eman-  
 cipation of all English slaves in the island.<sup>1</sup>

The German nations made the shores of the Baltic  
 the scenes of the same desolating traffic; and the  
 Dnieper formed the highway on which Russian mer-  
 chants conveyed to Constantinople the slaves that  
 had been purchased in the markets of Russia. The  
 wretched often submitted to bondage, as the bitter but  
 only refuge from absolute want. But it was the long  
 wars between German and Slavonic tribes which im-  
 parted to the slave-trade its greatest activity, and filled  
 France and the neighboring states with such numbers  
 of victims, that they gave the name of the Slavonic  
 nation to servitude itself; and every country of West-  
 ern Europe still preserves in its language the record  
 of the barbarous traffic in “Slaves.”<sup>2</sup>

Nor did France abstain from the slave-trade. At  
 Lyons and Verdun, the Jews were able to purchase  
 slaves for their Saracen customers.<sup>3</sup>

In Sicily, and perhaps in Italy, the children of Asia  
 and Africa, in their turn, were exposed for sale. The

<sup>1</sup> Wilkins’s *Concilia*, i. 383, 471.   <sup>2</sup> Hüne’s *Darstellung*, i. 102  
 Compare Lyttleton’s *Henry II.* iii. and ff.  
 70; Turner, Lingard, Anderson.   <sup>3</sup> Fischer, in Hüne, i. 115.

people of the wilderness and the desert are famed CHAP.  
V.  
~~~ for love of their offspring ; yet in the extremity of poverty, even the Arab father would sometimes pawn his children to the Italian merchant, in the vain hope of soon effecting their ransom. Rome itself long remained a mart where Christian slaves were exposed for sale, to supply the domestic market of Mahometans. The Venetians, in their commercial intercourse with the ports of unbelieving nations, as well as with Rome, purchased alike infidels and Christians, and sold them again to the Arabs in Sicily and Spain. Christian and Jewish avarice supplied the slave-market of the Saracens. What though the trade was exposed to the censure of the church, and prohibited by the laws of Venice ? It could not be effectually checked, till, by the Venetian law, no slave might enter a Venetian ship, and to tread the deck of an argosy of Venice became the privilege and the evidence of freedom.<sup>1</sup>

The spirit of the Christian religion would, before the discovery of America, have led to the entire abolition of the slave-trade, but for the hostility between the Christian church and the followers of Mahomet. In the twelfth century, Pope Alexander III., true to the spirit of his office, which, during the supremacy of brute force in the middle age, made of the chief minister of religion the tribune of the people and the guardian of the oppressed, had written, that “Nature having made no slaves, all men have an equal right to liberty.”<sup>2</sup> But the slave-trade had never relented among the Mahometans : the captive Christian had no alternative but apostasy or servitude, and the

<sup>1</sup> Fischer, in Hüne, i. 116. Marin, in Heeren, ii. 260.

<sup>2</sup> See his letter to Lupus, king of Valencia, in Historiæ Anglicanæ

Scriptores; Londini, 1652, i. 580.  
Cum autem omnes liberos natura  
creasset, nullus conditione naturæ  
fuit subditus servituti.

CHAP. captive infidel was treated in Christendom with corresponding intolerance. In the days of the crusaders, and in the camp of the leader whose pious arms redeemed the sepulchre of Christ from the mixed nations of Asia and Lybia, the price of a war-horse was three slaves. The Turks, whose law forbids the enslaving of a Mahometan, still continue to sell Christian captives; and we have seen, that the father of Virginia had himself tasted the bitterness of Turkish bondage.

All this might have had no influence on the destinies of America, but for the long and doubtful struggles between Christians and Moors in the west of Europe; where, for more than seven centuries, and in more than three thousand battles, the two religions were arrayed against each other; and bondage was the reciprocal doom of the captive. Bigotry inflamed revenge, and animated the spirit of merciless and exterminating warfare. France and Italy were filled with Saracen slaves; the number of them sold into Christian bondage exceeded the number of all the Christians ever sold by the pirates of Barbary. The clergy, who had pleaded successfully for the Christian, felt no sympathy for the unbeliever. The final victory of the Spaniards over the Moors of Granada—an event contemporary with the discovery of America—was signalized by a great emigration of the Moors to the coasts of Northern Africa, where each mercantile city became a nest of pirates, and every Christian the wonted booty of the successful corsair. Servitude was thus the doom of the Christian in Northern Africa: the hatred of the Moorish dominion extending to all Africa, an indiscriminate and retaliating bigotry felt no remorse at dooming the sons of Africa to bondage. All Africans were esteemed as Moors.

The amelioration of the customs of Europe had proceeded from the influence of religion. It was the clergy who had broken up the Christian slave-markets at Bristol and at Hamburg, at Lyons and at Rome. At the epoch of the discovery of America, the moral opinion of the civilized world had abolished the traffic in Christian slaves, and was fast demanding the emancipation of the serfs: but bigotry had favored a compromise with avarice; and the infidel was not yet included within the pale of humanity.

Yet negro slavery is not an invention of the white man. As Greeks enslaved Greeks, as the Hebrew often consented to make the Hebrew his absolute lord, as Anglo-Saxons trafficked in Anglo-Saxons, so the negro race enslaved its own brethren. The oldest accounts of the land of the negroes, like the glimmering traditions of Egypt and Phenicia, of Greece and of Rome, bear witness to the existence of domestic slavery and the caravans of dealers in negro slaves. The oldest Greek historian<sup>1</sup> commemorates the traffic. Negro slaves were seen in classic Greece, and were known at Rome and in the Roman empire. It is from about the year 990, that regular accounts of the negro slave-trade exist. At that period, Moorish merchants from the Barbary coast first reached the cities of Nigritia, and established an uninterrupted exchange of Saracen and European luxuries for the gold and slaves of Central Africa. Even though whole caravans were sometimes buried in the sands of the desert, and at others, without shade and without water, suffered the horrors of parching thirst under a tropical sun, yet the commerce extended because it was profitable; and

<sup>1</sup> Herodotus, l. iv. c. 181—185. Compare Heeren, xiii. 187 and 231; Blair's Roman Slavery, 24.

CHAP. before the genius of Columbus had opened the path  
<sup>V.</sup>  
 to a new world, the negro slave-trade had been reduced to a system by the Moors, and had spread from the native regions of the Æthiopian race to the heart of Egypt on the one hand, and to the coasts of Barbary on the other.<sup>1</sup>

But the danger for America did not end here. The traffic of Europeans in negro slaves was fully established before the colonization of the United States, and had existed a half century before the discovery of America.

1415. It was not long after the first conquests of the Portuguese in Barbary, that the passion for gain, the love of conquest, and the hatred of the infidels, conducted their navy to the ports of Western Africa ; and  
 1441. the first ships which sailed so far south as Cape Blanco, returned, not with negroes, but with Moors. The subjects of this importation were treated, not as laborers, but rather as strangers, from whom information respecting their native country was to be derived.  
 1443. Antony Gonzalez, who had brought them to Portugal, was commanded to restore them to their ancient homes. He did so, and the Moors gave him as their ransom, not gold only, but “ black Moors ” with curled hair. Thus negro slaves came into Europe ; and mercantile cupidity immediately observed, that negroes might become an object of lucrative commerce. New  
 1444. ships were despatched without delay.<sup>2</sup> Spain also engaged in the traffic : the historian of her maritime discoveries even claims for her the unenviable distinction of having anticipated the Portuguese in introducing negroes into Europe.<sup>3</sup> The merchants of

<sup>1</sup> Edrisius and Leo Africanus, in Hüne, i. 150—163. Hüne's volumes deserve to be more known.

<sup>2</sup> Galvano, in Hakluyt, iv. 413. De Pauw, Rech. Phil. i. 21.  
<sup>3</sup> Navarrete, Introduccion, s. xix.

Seville imported gold dust and slaves from the western coast of Africa;<sup>1</sup> and negro slavery, though the severity of bondage was mitigated in its character by benevolent legislation,<sup>2</sup> was established in Andalusia, and “abounded in the city of Seville,” before the enterprise of Columbus was conceived.<sup>3</sup>

The maritime adventurers of those days, joining the principles of bigots with the bold designs of pirates and heroes, esteemed the wealth of the countries which they might discover as their rightful plunder, and the inhabitants, if Christians, as their subjects, if infidels, as their slaves. Even Indians of Hispaniola were imported into Spain. Cargoes of the natives of the north were early and repeatedly kidnapped. The coasts of America, like the coasts of Africa, were visited by ships in search of laborers; and there was hardly a convenient harbor on the whole Atlantic frontier of the United States which was not entered by slavers.<sup>4</sup> The native Indians themselves were ever ready to resist the treacherous merchant; the freemen of the wilderness, unlike the Africans, among whom slavery had existed from immemorial time, would never abet the foreign merchant, or become his factors in the nefarious traffic. Fraud and force remained, therefore, the means by which, near Newfoundland or Florida, on the shores of the Atlantic, or among the Indians

<sup>1</sup> Prescott's *Ferdinand and Isabella*.

<sup>2</sup> Zuñiga, *Annales de Sevilla*, 373, 374. The passage is very remarkable. “Avia años que desde los Puertos de Andaluzia se frequentava navegacion à los costas de Africa, y Guinea, de donde se traian esclavos, de que ya abundava esta ciudad, &c. &c., 373. Eran en Sevilla los negros tratados con

gran benignidad, desde el tiempo de el Rey Don Henrique Tercero,” &c. &c., 374. I owe the opportunity of consulting Zuñiga to W. H. Prescott, of Boston.

<sup>3</sup> Irving's *Columbus*, ii. 351, 352. Herrera, d. i. l. iv. c. xii.

<sup>4</sup> Compare Peter Martyr d'Anghiera, d. vii. c. i. and ii. in *Hakluyt*, v. 404, 405. 407.

CHAP. of the Mississippi valley, Cortereal and Vasquez de V.  
 ~~~ Ayllon, Porcallo and Soto, with private adventurers, whose names and whose crimes may be left unrecorded, transported the natives of North America into slavery in Europe and the Spanish West Indies. The glory of Columbus himself did not escape the stain ; 1494. enslaving five hundred native Americans, he sent them to Spain, that they might be publicly sold at Seville.<sup>1</sup> 1500. The generous Isabella commanded the liberation of the Indians held in bondage in her European possessions.<sup>2</sup> Yet her active benevolence extended neither to the Moors, whose valor had been punished by slavery, nor to the Africans ; and even her compassion for the New World was but the transient feeling, which relieves the miserable who are in sight, not the deliberate application of a just principle. For the June 5 commissions for making discoveries, issued a few days and July 5. before and after her interference to rescue those whom Columbus had enslaved, reserved for herself and Ferdinand a fourth part<sup>3</sup> of the slaves which the new 1501. kingdoms might contain. The slavery of Indians was recognized as lawful.<sup>4</sup>

The practice of selling the natives of North America into foreign bondage continued for nearly two centuries ; and even the sternest morality pronounced the sentence of slavery and exile on the captives whom the field of battle had spared. The excellent Winthrop enumerates Indians among his bequests.<sup>5</sup> The articles of the early New England confederacy class persons among the spoils of war. A scanty remnant of the

<sup>1</sup> Irving's Columbus, b. viii. c. v.

<sup>2</sup> Navarette, Coll. ii. 246, 247.

<sup>3</sup> Esclavos, é negros, é loros que en estos nuestros reinos sean habitados é reputados por esclavos, &c.

Navarette, ii. 245, and again, ii. 249.

<sup>4</sup> See a céduela on a slave contract, in Navarette, iii. 514, 515, given June 20, 1501.

<sup>5</sup> Winthrop's N. E., ii. 360.

Pequod tribe<sup>1</sup> in Connecticut, the captives treacherously made by Waldron in New Hampshire,<sup>2</sup> the harmless fragments of the tribe of Annawon,<sup>3</sup> the orphan offspring of King Philip himself,<sup>4</sup> were all doomed to the same hard destiny of perpetual bondage. The clans of Virginia and Carolina,<sup>5</sup> for more than a hundred years, were hardly safe against the kidnapper. The universal public mind was long and deeply vitiated.

It was not Las Casas who first suggested the plan of transporting African slaves to Hispaniola; Spanish slaveholders, as they emigrated, were accompanied by their negroes. The emigration may at first have been contraband; but a royal edict soon permitted negro slaves, born in slavery among Christians, to be transported to Hispaniola.<sup>6</sup> Thus the royal ordinances of Spain authorized negro slavery in America. Within two years, there were such numbers of Africans in Hispaniola, that Ovando, the governor of the island, entreated that the importation might no longer be permitted.<sup>7</sup> The Spanish government attempted to disguise the crime, by forbidding the introduction of negro slaves, who had been bred in Moorish families,<sup>8</sup> and allowing only those who were said to have been instructed in the Christian faith, to be transported to the West Indies, under the plea that they might assist in converting the infidel nations. But the idle pretence was soon abandoned; for should faith in Christianity be punished by perpetual bondage in the

<sup>1</sup> Winthrop's N. E., i. 234.

<sup>2</sup> Belknap's Hist. of N. Hampshire, i. 75, Farmer's edition.

<sup>3</sup> Baylies' Plymouth, iii. 190.

<sup>4</sup> Davis, on Morton's Memorial, 454, 455. Baylies' Plymouth, iii. 190, 191.

<sup>5</sup> Hening, i. 481, 482. The act, forbidding the crime, proves, what

is indeed undisputed, its previous existence. Lawson's Carolina. Chalmers, 542.

<sup>6</sup> Herrera, d. i. l. iv. c. xii.

<sup>7</sup> Irving's Columbus, Appendix, No. 26, iii. 372, first American edition.

<sup>8</sup> Herrera, d. i. l. vi. c. xx.

CHAP. colonies? And would the purchaser be scrupulously  
 V.  
 ~~~ inquisitive of the birthplace and instruction of his laborers? Besides, the culture of sugar was now successfully begun; and the system of slavery, already riveted, was not long restrained by the scruples of men  
 1510. in power. King Ferdinand himself sent from Seville fifty slaves<sup>1</sup> to labor in the mines; and, because it was said, that one negro could do the work of four Indians, the direct traffic in slaves between Guinea and His-  
 1511. paniola was enjoined by a royal ordinance,<sup>2</sup> and de-  
 1512-3 liberately sanctioned by repeated decrees.<sup>3</sup> Was it not natural that Charles V., a youthful monarch, surrounded by rapacious courtiers, should have readily  
 1516. granted licenses to the Flemings to transport negroes to the colonies? The benevolent Las Casas, who had seen the native inhabitants of the New World vanish away, like dew, before the cruelties of the Spaniards, who felt for the Indians all that an ardent charity and the purest missionary zeal could inspire, and who had seen the African thriving in robust<sup>4</sup> health under the  
 1517. sun of Hispaniola, returning from America to plead the cause of the feeble Indians, in the same year which saw the dawn of the Reformation in Germany, suggested the expedient,<sup>5</sup> that negroes might still further be employed to perform the severe toils which they alone could endure. The avarice of the Flemish greedily seized on the expedient; the board of trade

<sup>1</sup> Herrera, d. i. l. viii. c. ix.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. d. i. l. ix. c. v. Herrera is explicit. The note of the French translator of Navarette, i. 203, 204, needs correction. A commerce in negroes, sanctioned by the crown, was surely not contraband.

<sup>3</sup> Irving's Columbus, iii. 372.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. iii. 370, 371.

<sup>5</sup> The merits of Las Casas have been largely discussed. The con-

troversy seems now concluded. Irving's Columbus, iii. 367—378. Navarette, Introduccion, s. lviii. lix. The Memoir of Las Casas still exists in manuscript. Herrera, d. ii. l. ii. c. xx. Robertson's America, b. iii. It may yet gratify curiosity to compare Grégoire, Apologie de B. Las Casas, in Mem. de l'Inst. Nat. An. viii.; and Verplanck, in N. Y. Hist. Coll. iii. 49—53, and 103—105.

at Seville was consulted, to learn how many slaves CHAP.  
would be required. It had been proposed to allow four <sup>V.</sup> ~~~~~~~  
for each Spanish emigrant; deliberate calculation fixed  
the number esteemed necessary at four thousand.  
The very year in which Charles V. sailed with a  
powerful expedition against Tunis, to check the  
piracies of the Barbary states, and to emancipate  
Christian slaves in Africa, he gave an open legal sanc-  
tion to the African slave-trade. The sins of the Moors  
were to be revenged on the negroes; and the monop-  
oly,<sup>1</sup> for eight years, of annually importing four thousand  
slaves into the West Indies, was eagerly seized by La  
Bresa, a favorite of the Spanish monarch, and was sold  
to the Genoese, who purchased their cargoes of Por-  
tugal. We shall, at a later period, have occasion to  
observe a stipulation for this lucrative monopoly, form-  
ing an integral part in a treaty of peace, established  
by a European Congress; shall witness the sovereign  
of the most free state in Europe stipulating for a fourth  
part of its profits; and shall trace its intimate connec-  
tion with the first in that series of wars which led to  
the emancipation of America. Thus a hasty benevo-  
lence, too zealous to be just, attempted to save the  
natives of America by sanctioning an equal oppression  
of another race. But covetousness, and not a mistaken  
benevolence, established the slave-trade, which had  
nearly received its development before the charity  
of Las Casas was heard in defence of the Indians.  
Reason,<sup>2</sup> policy,<sup>3</sup> and religion, alike condemned the

<sup>1</sup> Herrera, d. ii. l. ii. c. xx.

<sup>2</sup> Inter dominum et servum nulla amicitia est; etiam in pace belli tamen jura servantur. Quintus Curtius, l. vii. c. viii. John Locke, who sanctioned slavery in Carolina, gives a similar definition of it. "The perfect condition of slavery is the

state of war continued between a lawful conqueror and a captive." Compare, also, Montesquieu de l'Esprit des Lois, l. xv. c. v., on ne-  
gro slavery.

<sup>3</sup> See A. Q. Review, for Dec. 1832, for the effects of slavery in Virginia.

CHAP. traffic. A series of papal bulls had indeed secured to  
<sup>V.</sup>  
 the Portuguese the exclusive commerce with Western Africa; but the slave-trade between Africa and America was, I believe, never expressly sanctioned by the see of Rome. The spirit of the Roman church was against it. Even Leo X., though his voluptuous life, making of his pontificate a continued carnival, might have deadened the sentiments of humanity and justice, declared,<sup>1</sup> that "not the Christian religion only, but nature herself, cries out against the state of slavery."

1537. And Paul III., in two separate briefs,<sup>2</sup> imprecated a curse on the Europeans who should enslave Indians, or any other class of men. It even became usual for Spanish vessels, when they sailed on a voyage of discovery, to be attended by a priest, whose benevolent duty it was, to prevent the kidnapping of the aborigines.<sup>3</sup> The legislation of independent America has been emphatic<sup>4</sup> in denouncing the hasty avarice which entailed the anomaly of negro slavery in the midst of liberty. Ximenes, the gifted coadjutor of Ferdinand and Isabella, the stern grand inquisitor, the austere but ambitious Franciscan, saw in advance the danger which it required centuries to reveal, and refused to sanction the introduction of negroes into Hispaniola; believing<sup>5</sup> that the favorable climate would increase their numbers, and infallibly lead them to a successful revolt. A severe retribution has manifested his sagacity: Hayti, the first spot in America that received

<sup>1</sup> Grahame's United States, ii. 18. Clarkson's History of the Abolition of the Slave-Trade, i. 35, American edition. Clarkson, i. 33, 34, says that Charles V. lived to repent his permission of slavery, and to order emancipation. The first is probable; yet Herrera, d. ii. l. ii. c. xx., denounces not slavery, but the monopoly of the slave-trade.

<sup>2</sup> See the brief, in Remesal, Hist. de Chiappa, l. iii. c. xvi. xvii.

<sup>3</sup> T. Southey's West Indies, i. 126.

<sup>4</sup> Walsh's Appeal, 306—342. Belknap's Correspondence with Tucker, i. Mass. Hist. Coll. iv. 190—211.

<sup>5</sup> Irving, iii. 374, 375.

African slaves, was the first to set the example of African liberty. But for the slave-trade, the African race would have had no inheritance in the New World.

The odious distinction of having first interested England in the slave-trade, belongs to Sir John Hawkins. He had fraudulently transported a large cargo of Africans to Hispaniola ; the rich returns of sugar, ginger, and pearls, attracted the notice of Queen Elizabeth ; and when a new expedition was prepared, she was induced, not only to protect, but to share the traffic.<sup>1</sup> In the accounts which Hawkins himself gives<sup>2</sup> of one of his expeditions, he relates, that he set fire to a city, of which the huts were covered with dry palm leaves, and, out of eight thousand inhabitants, succeeded in seizing two hundred and fifty. The deliberate and even self-approving frankness with which this act of atrocity is related, and the lustre which the fame of Hawkins acquired, display in the strongest terms the depravity of public sentiment in the age of Elizabeth. The leader in these expeditions was not merely a man of courage ; in all other emergencies, he knew how to pity the unfortunate, even when they were not his countrymen, and to relieve their wants with cheerful liberality.<sup>3</sup> Yet the commerce, on the part of the English, in the Spanish ports, was by the laws of Spain illicit, as well as by the laws of morals detestable ; and when the sovereign of England participated in its hazards, its profits and its crimes, she became at once a smuggler and a slave merchant.<sup>4</sup>

A ship of one Thomas Keyser and one James Smith, 1645.

<sup>1</sup> Compare Hakluyt, ii. 351, 352, with iii. 594. Hewat's Carolina, i. 20—26 Keith's Virginia, 31. Anderson's History of Commerce.

<sup>2</sup> Hakluyt, iii. 618, 619.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. iii. 418, 419, 612—614.

<sup>4</sup> Lingard, viii. 306, 307.

CHAP. the latter a member of the church of Boston, first  
<sup>V.</sup>  
 brought upon the colonies the guilt of participating in  
 the traffic in African slaves. They sailed "for Guinea  
 to trade for negroes;"<sup>1</sup> but throughout Massachusetts  
 the cry of justice was raised against them as malefac-  
 tors and murderers; Richard Saltonstall, a worthy  
 assistant, felt himself moved by his duty as a magis-  
 trate, to denounce the act of stealing negroes as "ex-  
 pressly contrary to the law of God and the law of the  
 country;"<sup>2</sup> the guilty men were committed for the  
 offence;<sup>3</sup> and, after advice with the elders, the repre-  
 1646. sentatives of the people, bearing "witness against the  
 heinous crime of man-stealing," ordered the negroes to  
 be restored, at the public charge, "to their native coun-  
 try, with a letter expressing the indignation of the  
 general court" at their wrongs.<sup>4</sup>

1671. When George Fox visited Barbadoes in 1671, he  
 enjoined it upon the planters, that they should "deal  
 mildly and gently with their negroes; and that, after  
 certain years of servitude, they should make them free."

1652. The idea of George Fox had been anticipated by the  
 fellow-citizens of Gorton and Roger Williams. Nearly

May  
 18. twenty years had then elapsed, since the representa-  
 tives of Providence and Warwick, perceiving the dis-  
 position of people in the colony "to buy negroes," and  
 hold them "as slaves forever," had enacted that "no  
 black mankind" should, "by covenant, bond, or other-  
 wise," be held to perpetual service; the master, "at the  
 end of ten years, shall set them free, as the manner is with  
 English servants; and that man that will not let" his  
 slave "go free, or shall sell him away, to the end that  
 he may be enslaved to others for a longer time, shall for-

<sup>1</sup> Winthrop, ii. 243, 244, 245.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. ii. 379, 380.

<sup>3</sup> Colony Records, iii. 45.

<sup>4</sup> Colony Laws, c. xii.

feit to the colony forty pounds.”<sup>1</sup> Now, forty pounds CHAP.  
V.  
was nearly twice the value of a negro slave. The law ~~—~~  
was not enforced; but the principle lived among the  
people.

Conditional servitude, under indentures or covenants, had from the first existed in Virginia. The servant stood to his master in the relation of a debtor, bound to discharge the costs of emigration by the entire employment of his powers for the benefit of his creditor. Oppression early ensued: men who had been transported into Virginia at an expense of eight or ten pounds, were sometimes sold for forty, fifty, or even threescore pounds.<sup>2</sup> The supply of white servants became a regular business; and a class of men, nicknamed spirits, used to delude young persons, servants and idlers, into embarking for America, as to a land of spontaneous plenty.<sup>3</sup> White servants came to be a usual article of traffic. They were sold in England to be transported, and in Virginia were resold to the highest bidder; like negroes, they were to be purchased on shipboard, as men buy horses at a fair.<sup>4</sup> In 1672, the average price in the colonies, where five years of service were due, was about ten pounds; while a negro was worth twenty or twenty-five pounds.<sup>5</sup> So usual was this manner of dealing in Englishmen, that not the Scots only, who were taken in the field of Dunbar, were sent into involuntary servitude in New England,<sup>6</sup> but the royalist prisoners of the battle of Worcester;<sup>7</sup> and the leaders in the insurrection of Penrud-

<sup>1</sup> George Fox’s Journal, An. 1671. The law of Rhode Island I copied from the records in Providence.

<sup>2</sup> Smith, i. 105.

<sup>3</sup> Bullock’s Virginia, 1649, p. 14.

<sup>4</sup> Sad State of Virginia, 1657, p. 4,  
5. Hammond’s Leah and Rachel, 7.

<sup>5</sup> Blome’s Jamaica, 84 and 16.

<sup>6</sup> Cromwell and Cotton, in Hutchinson’s Coll. 233—235.

<sup>7</sup> Suffolk County Records, i. 5 and 6. The names of two hundred and seventy are recorded. The landing of the John and Sarah was

CHAP. doc,<sup>1</sup> in spite of the remonstrance of Haselrig and Vane, were shipped to America. At the corresponding period, in Ireland, the crowded exportation of Irish Catholics was a frequent event, and was attended by aggravations hardly inferior to the usual atrocities of the African slave-trade.<sup>2</sup> In 1685, when nearly a thousand of the prisoners, condemned for participating in the insurrection of Monmouth, were sentenced to transportation, men of influence at court, with rival importunity, scrambled for the convicted insurgents as a merchantable commodity.<sup>3</sup>

The condition of apprenticed servants in Virginia differed from that of slaves chiefly in the duration of their bondage; and the laws of the colony favored their early enfranchisement.<sup>4</sup> But this state of labor easily admitted the introduction of perpetual servitude. The commerce of Virginia had been at first monopolized by the company; but as its management for the benefit of the corporation led to frequent dissensions, 1620. it was in 1620 laid open to free competition.<sup>5</sup> In the month of August of that year, just fourteen months after the first representative assembly of Virginia, four months before the Plymouth colony landed in America, and less than a year before the concession of a written constitution, more than a century after the last vestiges of hereditary slavery had disappeared from English society and the English constitution, and six years after the commons of France had petitioned for the emancipation of every serf in every fief, a Dutch man-of-war entered James River, and landed twenty

"ironwork, household stuff, and other provisions for planters and Scotch prisoners." Recorded May 14, 1652.

<sup>1</sup> Burton's Diary, iv. 262. 271.  
Godwin's Commonwealth, iv. 172.

<sup>2</sup> Lingard, xi. 131, 132.

<sup>3</sup> Dalrymple. Mackintosh, Hist. of the Revolution of 1688.

<sup>4</sup> Hening, i. 257.

<sup>5</sup> Stith, 171.

negroes for sale.<sup>1</sup> This is, indeed, the sad epoch of CHAP. the introduction of negro slavery in the English colo- <sup>V.</sup> nies; but the traffic would have been checked in its infancy, had its profits remained with the Dutch. Thirty years after this first importation of Africans, the increase had been so inconsiderable, that to one black, Virginia contained fifty whites;<sup>2</sup> and, at a later period, after seventy years of its colonial existence, the number of its negro slaves was proportionably much less than in several of the free states at the time of the war of independence. It is the duty of faithful history to trace events, not only to their causes, but to their authors; and we shall hereafter inquire what influence was ultimately extended to counteract the voice of justice, the cry of humanity, and the remonstrances of colonial legislation. Had no other form of servitude been known in Virginia, than such as had been tolerated in Europe, every difficulty would have been promptly obviated by the benevolent spirit of colonial legislation. But a new problem in the history of man, was now to be solved. For the first time, the Æthiopian and Caucasian races were to meet together in nearly equal numbers beneath a temperate zone. Who could foretell the issue? The negro race, from the first, was regarded with disgust, and its union with the whites forbidden under ignominious penalties.<sup>3</sup> For many years, the Dutch were principally concerned in the slave-trade in the market of Virginia; the immediate demand for laborers may, in part, have blinded the eyes of the planters to the ultimate evils of slavery,<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Beverley's Virginia, 35. Stith, 182; Chalmers, 49; Burk, i. 211; and Hening, i. 146, all rely on Beverley.

<sup>2</sup> New Description of Virginia.

<sup>3</sup> Hening, i. 146.

<sup>4</sup> This may be inferred from a paper on Virginia, in Thurloe, v. 81, or Hazard, i. 601.

CHAP. though the laws of the colony, at a very early period,  
<sup>V.</sup>  
 discouraged its increase by a special tax upon female  
 slaves.<sup>1</sup>

1621. If Wyatt, on his arrival in Virginia, found the evil  
 of negro slavery engrafted on the social system, he  
 brought with him the memorable ordinance, on which  
 the fabric of colonial liberty was to rest, and which  
 was interpreted by his instructions<sup>2</sup> in a manner  
 favorable to the independent rights of the colonists.  
 Justice was established on the basis of the laws of  
 England, and an amnesty of ancient feuds proclaimed.  
 As Puritanism had appeared in Virginia, “needless  
 novelties” in the forms of worship were now prohib-  
 ited. The order to search for minerals betrays the  
 continuance of lingering hopes of finding gold; while  
 the injunction to promote certain kinds of manufactures  
 was ineffectual, because labor could otherwise be more  
 profitably employed.

1621. The business which occupied the first session under  
<sup>Nov.</sup>  
<sup>and</sup>  
<sup>Dec.</sup> the written constitution, related chiefly to the encour-  
 agement of domestic industry; and the culture of silk  
 particularly engaged the attention of the assembly.<sup>3</sup>  
 But legislation, though it can favor industry, cannot  
 create it. When soil, men, and circumstances, com-  
 bine to render a manufacture desirable, legislation can  
 protect the infancy of enterprise against the unequal  
 competition with established skill. The culture of  
 silk, long, earnestly, and frequently recommended to  
 the attention of Virginia,<sup>4</sup> is successfully pursued, only  
 when a superfluity of labor exists in a redundant pop-  
 ulation. In America, the first wants of life left no

<sup>1</sup> Hening, ii. 84, Act liv. March, 1662. The statute implies, that the rule already existed.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. i. 114—118. Stith, p.

194—196. Burk, v. i. p. 224—227.

<sup>3</sup> Hening, i. 119.

<sup>4</sup> Virgo Triumphant, 35.

labor without a demand ; silk-worms could not be cared for where every comfort of household existence required to be created. Still less was the successful culture of the vine possible. The company had repeatedly sent vine-dressers, who had been set to work under the terrors of martial law, and whose efforts were continued after the establishment of regular government. But the toil was in vain. The extensive culture of the vine, unless singularly favored by climate, succeeds only in a dense population ; for a small vineyard requires the labor of many hands. It is a law of nature, that, in a new country under the temperate zone, corn and cattle will be raised, rather than silk or wine.

The first culture of cotton in the United States de- 1621. serves commemoration. This year the seeds were planted as an experiment ; and their “plentiful coming up” was, at that early day, a subject of interest in America and England.<sup>1</sup>

Nor did the benevolence of the company neglect to establish places of education, and provide for the support of religious worship. The bishop of London collected and paid a thousand pounds towards a university ; which, like the several churches of the colony, was liberally endowed with domains.<sup>2</sup> Public and private charity were active ;<sup>3</sup> but the lands were never occupied by productive laborers ; and the system of obtaining a revenue through a permanent tenantry could meet with no success, for it was not in harmony with the condition of colonial society.

Between the Indians and the English there had 1622. been quarrels, but no wars. From the first landing

<sup>1</sup> Thorp's letter of May 17, 1621, in a marginal note in Purchas, iv. 1789.

<sup>2</sup> Stith, 162. 166. 172, 173.  
<sup>3</sup> Mem. of Religious Charitie, in State of Virginia, 1622, p. 51—54.

CHAP. of colonists in Virginia, the power of the natives was  
<sup>V.</sup>  
 despoiled; their strongest weapons were such arrows  
 1622. as they could shape without the use of iron, such  
 hatchets as could be made from stone; and an English  
 mastiff seemed to them a terrible adversary.<sup>1</sup> Nor  
 were their numbers considerable. Within sixty miles  
 of Jamestown, it is computed, there were no more  
 than five thousand souls, or about fifteen hundred  
 warriors. The whole territory of the clans which  
 listened to Powhatan as their leader or their con-  
 queror, comprehended about eight thousand square  
 miles, thirty tribes, and twenty-four hundred warriors;  
 so that the Indian population amounted to about one  
 inhabitant to a square mile.<sup>2</sup> The natives, naked and  
 feeble compared with the Europeans, were no where  
 concentrated in considerable villages, but dwelt dis-  
 persed in hamlets, with from forty to sixty in each  
 company. Few places had more than two hundred;  
 and many had less.<sup>3</sup> It was also unusual for any large  
 portion of these tribes to be assembled together. An  
 idle tale of an ambuscade of three or four thousand is  
 perhaps an error for three or four hundred; otherwise  
 it is an extravagant fiction, wholly unworthy of belief.<sup>4</sup>  
 Smith once met a party, that seemed to amount to  
 seven hundred; and, so complete was the superiority  
 conferred by the use of fire-arms, that with fifteen  
 men he was able to withstand them all.<sup>5</sup> The savages  
 were therefore regarded with contempt or compassion.  
 No uniform care had been taken to conciliate their

<sup>1</sup> Smith, ii. 68. Stith, 211.

<sup>2</sup> Smith, i. 129. Compare Jeffer-  
 son's Notes, Quære xi.; True Dec-  
 laration of Virginia, 10. "The ex-  
 tent of a hundred miles was scarce  
 peopled with two thousand inhabi-  
 tants."

<sup>3</sup> Smith, ii. 66. Purchas, iv.

1790. State of Virginia in 1622,  
 p. 19. Heylin, b. iv. 96.

<sup>4</sup> Smith, i. 177, abundantly re-  
 futed by what "Smith writ with  
 his own hand," i. 129. Burk, i.  
 311, 312, condemned too hastily.

<sup>5</sup> Smith, i. 129.

good will ; although their condition had been improved CHAP.  
 by some of the arts of civilized life. The degree of <sup>V.</sup> ~~—~~  
 their advancement may be judged by the intelligence 1622.  
 of their chieftain. A house having been built for  
 Opechancanough after the English fashion, he took  
 such delight in the lock and key, that he would lock  
 and unlock the door a hundred times a day, and  
 thought the device incomparable.<sup>1</sup> When Wyatt ar-  
 rived, the natives expressed a fear lest his intentions  
 should be hostile : he assured them of his wish to pre-  
 serve inviolable peace ; and the emigrants had no use  
 for fire-arms except against a deer or a fowl. Confi-  
 dence so far increased, that the old law, which made  
 death the penalty for teaching the Indians to use a  
 musket, was forgotten ; and they were now employed  
 as fowlers and huntsmen.<sup>2</sup> The plantations of the  
 English were widely extended, in unsuspecting confi-  
 dence, along the James River and towards the Po-  
 tomac, wherever rich grounds invited to the culture  
 of tobacco ;<sup>3</sup> nor were solitary places, remote from  
 neighbors, avoided, since there would there be less  
 competition for the ownership of the soil.

Powhatan, the father of Pocahontas, remained, after  
 the marriage of his daughter, the firm friend of the  
 English. He died in 1618 ; and his younger brother  
 was now the heir to his influence. Should the native  
 occupants of the soil consent to be driven from their  
 ancient patrimony ? Should their feebleness submit  
 patiently to contempt, injury, and the loss of their  
 lands ? The desire of self-preservation, the necessity  
 of self-defence, seemed to demand an active resist-  
 ance ; to preserve their dwelling-places, the English

<sup>1</sup> Smith, ii. 68. Stith, 211.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. ii. 103. Beverley, 38.

<sup>3</sup> Beverley, 38. Burk, i. 231,

232.

CHAP. must be exterminated; in open battle the Indians  
V.  
would be powerless; conscious of their weakness, they  
1622. could not hope to accomplish their end except by a  
preconcerted surprise. The crime was one of savage  
ferocity; but it was suggested by their situation.  
They were timorous and quick of apprehension, and  
consequently treacherous; for treachery and falsehood  
are the vices of cowardice. The attack was prepared  
with impenetrable secrecy. To the very last hour  
the Indians preserved the language of friendship: they  
borrowed the boats of the English to attend their own  
assemblies; on the very morning of the massacre, they  
were in the houses and at the tables of those whose  
death they were plotting. "Sooner," said they,  
"shall the sky fall, than peace be violated on our  
part." At length, on the twenty-second of March, at  
Mar. 22. mid-day, at one and the same instant of time, the  
Indians fell upon an unsuspecting population, which  
was scattered through distant villages, extending one  
hundred and forty miles, on both sides of the river.  
The onset was so sudden, that the blow was not dis-  
cerned till it fell. None were spared: children and  
women, as well as men; the missionary, who had cher-  
ished the natives with untiring gentleness; the liberal  
benefactors, from whom they had received daily kind-  
nesses,—all were murdered with indiscriminate bar-  
barity, and every aggravation of cruelty. The savages  
fell upon the dead bodies, as if it had been possible to  
commit on them a fresh murder.

In one hour three hundred and forty-seven persons  
were cut off. Yet the carnage was not universal;  
and Virginia was saved from so disastrous a grave.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> On the massacre; A Declara- a Relation of the barbarous Mas-  
tion of the State of Virginia, with sacre, &c. &c. 1622. This is the

The night before the execution of the conspiracy, it was revealed by a converted Indian to an Englishman whom he wished to rescue ; Jamestown and the nearest settlements were well prepared against an attack ; and the savages, as timid as they were ferocious, fled with precipitation from the appearance of wakeful resistance. Thus the larger part of the colony was saved.<sup>1</sup> A year after the massacre, there still remained two thousand five hundred men ; the total number of the emigrants had exceeded four thousand. The immediate consequences of this massacre were disastrous. Public works were abandoned ;<sup>2</sup> the culture of the fields was much restricted ; the settlements were reduced from eighty plantations to less than eight.<sup>3</sup> Sickness prevailed among the dispirited colonists, who were now crowded into narrow quarters ; some even returned to England. But plans of industry were eventually succeeded by schemes of revenge ; and a war of extermination ensued. In England, the news, far from dispiriting the adventurers, awakened them to strong feelings of compassionate interest ; the purchase of Virginia was endeared by the sacrifice of so much life ; and the blood of the victims became the nurture of the plantation.<sup>4</sup> New supplies and assistance were promptly despatched ; even King James, for a moment, affected a sentiment of generosity, and, like the churl, gave from the tower of London presents of arms, which had been thrown by as good for nothing in Europe. They might be useful, thought the monarch, against the Indians ! He

groundwork of the narrative in Smith, ii. 65—76, and of Purchas, iv. 1788—1791. Stith, 208—213.

<sup>1</sup> State of Virginia, in 1622, p. 18. Purchas, iv. 1792, says one thousand eight hundred survived ; probably in-

exact. Compare Holmes, i. 178, note.

<sup>2</sup> Stith, 281, 219, 218.

<sup>3</sup> Purchas, iv. 1792. Virginia's Verger, in Purchas, iv. 1816. Stith, 235.

<sup>4</sup> Stith, 233.

CHAP. also made good promises, which were never fulfilled.<sup>1</sup>  
<sup>V.</sup>  
 The city of London contributed to repair the losses of  
 1622. the Virginians; and many private persons displayed  
 an honorable liberality.<sup>2</sup> Smith volunteered his ser-  
 vices to protect the planters, overawe the savages, and  
 make discoveries; the company had no funds, and his  
 proposition was never made a matter of public discus-  
 sion or record; but some of the members, with ludi-  
 crous cupidity, proposed, he should have leave to go  
 at his own expense, if he would grant the corporation  
 one half of the pillage.<sup>3</sup> There were in the colony  
 much loss and much sorrow, but never any serious  
 apprehensions of discomfiture from the Indians. The  
 midnight surprise, the ambuscade by day, might be  
 feared; the Indians promptly fled on the least indica-  
 tions of watchfulness and resistance. There were not  
 wanting men who now advocated an entire subjection  
 of those whom lenity could not win; and the example  
 of Spanish cruelties was cited with applause.<sup>4</sup> Be-  
 sides, a natural instinct had led the Indians to select  
 for their villages the pleasantest places, along the  
 purest streams, and near the soil that was most easily  
 cultivated. Their rights of property were no longer  
 much respected; their open fields and villages were  
 now appropriated by the colonists, who could plead  
 the laws of war in defence of their covetousness.  
 Treachery also was employed. The tangled woods,  
 the fastnesses of nature, were the bulwarks to which  
 the savages retreated. Pursuit would have been vain;  
 they could not be destroyed except as they were lulled  
 into security, and induced to return to their old homes.<sup>5</sup>

1623. In July of the following year, the inhabitants of the

<sup>1</sup> Burk, i. 248, 249.

<sup>4</sup> Stith, 233. Smith, ii. 71, 72.

<sup>2</sup> Stith, 232, 233.

<sup>5</sup> Stith, 303.

<sup>3</sup> Smith, ii. 79—81. Stith, 234.

several settlements, in parties, under commissioned officers, fell upon the adjoining savages; and a law of the general assembly commanded, that in July of 1624, the attack should be repeated. Six years later, the colonial statute-book proves that schemes of ruthless vengeance were still meditated; for it was sternly insisted, that no peace should be concluded with the Indians—a law which remained in force till a treaty in the administration of Harvey.<sup>1</sup>

1632.

Meantime, a change was preparing in the relations of the colony with the parent state. A corporation, whether commercial or proprietary, is, perhaps, the worst of sovereigns. Gain is the object which leads to the formation of those companies, and which constitutes the interest most likely to be fostered. If such a company be wisely administered, its colonists are made subservient to commercial avarice. If, on the other hand, the interests of the company are sacrificed, the colonists, not less than the proprietors, are pillaged for the benefit of faithless agents. Where an individual is the sovereign, there is room for an appeal to magnanimity, to benevolence, to the love of glory; where the privilege of self-government is enjoyed, a permanent interest is sure to gain the ultimate ascendancy; but corporate ambition is deaf to mercy, and insensible to shame.

The Virginia colony had been unsuccessful. A settlement had been made; but only after a vast expenditure of money, and a great sacrifice of human life. Angry factions distract unsuccessful institutions; and the London company was now rent by two parties, which were growing more and more imbibited.

<sup>1</sup> Burk, i. 275; ii. 37. Hening, i. 123. 153.

CHAP. As the shares in the unproductive stock were of little  
V.  
value, the contests were chiefly for power; and were  
1623. not so much the wranglings of disappointed merchants,  
as the struggle of political leaders. The meetings of  
the company, which now consisted of a thousand ad-  
venturers, of whom two hundred or more usually ap-  
peared at the quarter courts,<sup>1</sup> were the scenes for  
freedom of debate, where the patriots, who in parlia-  
ment advocated the cause of liberty, triumphantly  
opposed the decrees of the privy council on subjects  
connected with the rights of Virginia. The unsuccess-  
ful party in the company naturally found an ally in the  
king; it could hope for success only by establishing  
the supremacy of his prerogative; and the monarch,  
dissatisfied at having intrusted to others the control  
of the colony, now desired to recover the influence of  
which he was deprived by a charter of his own con-  
cession. Besides, he disliked the freedom of debate.  
“The Virginia courts,” said Gondemar, the Spanish  
envoy, to King James, “are but a seminary to a sedi-  
tious parliament.”<sup>2</sup> Yet the people of England, regard-  
ing only the failure of their extravagant hopes in the  
American plantations, took little interest in the progress  
of the controversy which now grew up between the  
monarch and the corporation; and the inhabitants of  
the colony were still more indifferent spectators of the  
strife, which related, not to their liberties, but to their  
immediate sovereign.<sup>3</sup> Besides, there was something  
of retributive justice in the royal proceedings. The  
present proprietors enjoyed their privileges in conse-  
quence of a wrong done to the original patentees,

<sup>1</sup> Stith, 282—286.

<sup>2</sup> New Description, ii. Mass. Hist. Coll. ix. 113.

<sup>3</sup> Jefferson’s Notes on Virginia,

152, 153.

and now suffered no greater injury than had been CHAP.  
V.  
before inflicted on others for their benefit.<sup>1</sup>

At the meeting for the choice of officers, in 1622, <sup>1622.</sup> King James once more attempted to control the elections, by sending a message, nominating several candidates, out of whom they were to choose their treasurer. The advice of the king was disregarded, and a great majority re-elected the earl of Southampton.<sup>2</sup> <sup>1623.</sup> Unable to get the control of the company by overawing their assemblies, the monarch now resolved upon the sequestration of the patent; and raised no other question, than how the unjust design could most plausibly be accomplished, and the law of England be made the successful instrument of tyranny. The allegation of grievances, set forth by the court faction in a petition to the king, was fully refuted by the company, and the whole ground of discontent was answered by an explanatory declaration.<sup>3</sup> Yet commissioners were appointed to engage in a general investigation of the concerns of the corporation; the records were seized, the deputy-treasurer imprisoned, and private letters from Virginia intercepted for inspection.<sup>4</sup> Smith was particularly examined; his honest answers plainly exposed the defective arrangements of previous years, and favored the cancelling of the charter as an act of benevolence to the colony.<sup>5</sup>

The result surprised every one: the king, by an order in council, made known, that the disasters of Virginia were a consequence of the ill government of the company; that he had resolved, by a new charter, to reserve to himself the appointment of the officers

May  
7.  
9.

Oct.

<sup>1</sup> Smith, ii. 107.

<sup>4</sup> Stith, 298. Burk, i. 268. Ry-

<sup>2</sup> Burk, i. 257.

mer, xvii. 490—493.

<sup>3</sup> In Burk, i. 316—330. Stith,  
276, 277, and 291—297.

<sup>5</sup> Smith, ii. 103—108.

CHAP. in England, a negative on appointments in Virginia,  
<sup>V.</sup>  
 and the supreme control of all colonial affairs. Pri-  
 1623. vate interests were to be sacredly preserved; and all  
 grants of land to be renewed and confirmed. Should  
 the company resist the change, its patent would be  
 recalled.<sup>1</sup> This was in substance a proposition to  
 revert to the charter originally granted.

It is difficult to obtain a limitation of authority from  
 a corporate body: an aristocracy is, of all forms of  
 government, the most tenacious of life, and the least  
 Oct. 17. flexible in its purposes. The company heard the order  
 in council with amazement: it was read three several  
 times; and after the reading, for a long while, no man  
 spoke a word. Should they tamely surrender privi-  
 leges which were conceded according to the forms of  
 law, had been possessed for many years, and had led  
 them to expend large sums of money, that had as yet  
 yielded no return? The corporation was inflexible,  
 for it had no interest to yield. It desired only a  
 month's delay, that all its members might take part in  
 the final decision. The privy council peremptorily  
 Oct. 20. demanded a decisive answer within three days; and,  
 at the expiration of that time, the surrender of the  
 charter was strenuously refused.<sup>2</sup> The liberties of  
 the company were a trust which might be yielded to  
 superior force, but could not be freely abandoned  
 without dishonor.

Oct. 24. But the decision of the king was already taken;  
 and commissioners were appointed to proceed to Vir-  
 ginia, to examine into the state of the plantation, to  
 ascertain what expectations might be conceived, and  
 to discover the means by which good hopes were to

<sup>1</sup> Burk, i. 269. Stith, 303—304.

<sup>2</sup> Stith, 294—296. Burk, i. 269—271.

be realized.<sup>1</sup> John Harvey and Samuel Matthews, CHAP. both distinguished in the annals of Virginia, were of ~~V.~~  
the number of the committee. 1623.

It now only remained to issue a writ of quo warranto against the company. It was done; and, at the next quarter court, the adventurers, seven only opposing, confirmed the former refusal to surrender the charter, and made preparations for defence.<sup>2</sup> For that purpose, their papers were for a season restored: while they were once more in the hands of the company, they were fortunately copied; and the copy, having been purchased by a Virginian, was consulted by Stith, and gave to his history the authority of an original record.<sup>3</sup>

While these things were transacting in England, the commissioners, early in the year, arrived in the colony. A meeting of the general assembly was immediately convened; and, as the company had refuted the allegations of King James, as opposed to their interests, so the colonists replied to them, as contrary to their honor and good name. The principal prayer was, that the governors might not have absolute power; and that the liberty of popular assemblies might be retained; "for," say they, "nothing can conduce more to the public satisfaction and the public utility."<sup>4</sup> To urge this solicitation, an agent was appointed to repair to England. The manner in which the expenses of the mission were borne, marks colonial times and manners, and the universality of the excitement. A tax of four pounds of the best tobacco was levied upon every male who was above sixteen years and had been in the colony

<sup>1</sup> Burk, i. 272, and note. Chalmers, 62. 76.

<sup>2</sup> Stith, 298, 299.

<sup>3</sup> Burk, i. 274. Hening, i. 76.

<sup>4</sup> Burk, i. 276, 277.

CHAP. a twelvemonth.<sup>1</sup> The commissioner unfortunately  
~~V.~~  
~~—~~ died on his passage to Europe.<sup>2</sup>

1624. The spirit of liberty had planted itself deeply among the Virginians. It had been easier to root out the staple produce of their plantations, than to wrest from them their established franchises. The movements of their government display the spirit of the place and the aptitude of the English colonies for liberty. A faithless clerk, who had been suborned by one of the commissioners to betray the secret consultations of the Virginians, was promptly punished. In vain was it attempted, by means of intimidation and promises of royal favor, to obtain a petition for the revocation of the charter. It was under that charter, that the assembly was itself convened; and, after prudently rejecting a proposition which might have endangered its own existence, it proceeded to memorable acts of independent legislation.<sup>3</sup>

The rights of property were strictly maintained against arbitrary taxation. "The governor shall not lay any taxes or ympositions upon the colony, their lands or commodities, other way than by the authority of the general assembly, to be levyed and ymployed as the said assembly shall appoynt." Thus Virginia, the oldest colony, was the first to set the example of a just and firm legislation on the management of the public money. We shall see others imitate the example, which could not be excelled. The rights of personal liberty were likewise asserted, and the power of the executive, circumscribed. The several governors had in vain attempted, by penal statutes, to promote the culture of corn; the true remedy was now discovered

<sup>1</sup> Hening, i. 128, Act 35.

<sup>2</sup> Burk, i. 277.

<sup>3</sup> Hening, i. 122—128. Burk, i. 278—286. Stith, 318—322.

by the colonial legislature. "For the encouragement CHAP.  
V.  
of men to plant store of corn, the price shall not be stinted, but it shall be free for every man to sell it as 1624.  
deare as he can." The reports of controversies in England, rendered it necessary to provide for the public tranquillity by an express enactment, "that no person within the colony, upon the rumor of supposed change and alteration, presume to be disobedient to the present government." The law was dictated by the emergency of the times; and, during the struggle in London, the administration of Virginia was based upon a popular decree. These laws, so judiciously framed, show how readily, with the aid of free discussion, men become good legislators on their own concerns; for wise legislation is the enacting of proper laws at proper times; and no criterion is so nearly infallible as the fair representation of the interests to be affected.

While the commissioners were urging the Virginians to renounce their right to the privileges which they exercised so well, the English parliament assembled; and a gleam of hope revived in the company, as it forwarded an elaborate petition<sup>1</sup> to the grand inquest of the kingdom. It is a sure proof of the unpopularity of the corporation, that it met with no support from the commons;<sup>2</sup> but Sir Edwin Sandys, more intent on the welfare of Virginia than the existence of the company, was able to secure for the colonial staple complete protection against foreign tobacco, by a petition of grace,<sup>3</sup> which was followed by a royal proclamation.<sup>4</sup> The people of England could not have given a more earnest proof of their disposition to foster the plantations

Sept.  
29.

<sup>1</sup> Stith, 324—328.

bett's Parl. Hist. i. 1489—1497.

<sup>2</sup> Chalmers, 65, 66. Burk, i. 291.

The commons acted by petition.

<sup>3</sup> Stith, 328, refers to the nine grievances; erroneously. See Cob-

Hazard, i. 193.

<sup>4</sup> Hazard, i. 193—198.

CHAP. in America, than by restraining all competition in their  
 V. own market for the benefit of the American planter.

1624. Meantime, the commissioners arrived from the colony, and made their report to the king.<sup>1</sup> They enumerated the disasters which had befallen the infant settlement; they eulogized the fertility of the soil and the salubrity of the climate; they aggravated the neglect of the company in regard to the encouragement of staple commodities; they esteemed the plantations of great national importance, and an honorable monument of the reign of King James; they expressed a preference for the original constitution of 1606; they declared, that the alteration of the charter to so popular a course, and so many hands, referring, not to the colonial franchises, but to the democratic form of the London company, could lead only to confusion and contention; and they promised prosperity only by a recurrence to the original instructions of the monarch.

June. Now, therefore, nothing but the judicial decision emained. The decree, which was to be pronounced by judges who held their office by the tenure of the royal pleasure,<sup>2</sup> could not long remain doubtful; at the Trinity term of the ensuing year, judgment was given against the treasurer and company,<sup>3</sup> and the patents were cancelled.

Thus the company was dissolved. It had fulfilled its high destinies; it had confirmed the colonization of Virginia, and had conceded a liberal form of govern-

<sup>1</sup> Hazard, i. 190, 191. Burk, i. 291, 292.

<sup>2</sup> Story's Com. i. 27.

<sup>3</sup> Stith, 329, 330, doubts if judgment were passed. The doubt may be removed. "Before the end of the same term, a judgment was declared by the Lord Chief Justice Ley against the company and their

charter, only upon a failer, or mistake in pleading." See a Short Collection of the most Remarkable Passages from the Original to the Dissolution of the Virginia Company; London, 1651, p. 15. See, also, Hazard, i. 191; Chalmers, 62; Proud's Pennsylvania, i. 107.

ment to Englishmen in America. It could accomplish CHAP.  
no more. The members were probably willing to <sup>V.</sup> escape from a concern which promised no emolument, 1624. and threatened an unprofitable strife ; the public acquiesced in the fall of a corporation which had of late maintained but a sickly and hopeless existence ; and it was clearly perceived, that a body rent by internal factions, and opposed by the whole force of the English court, could never succeed in fostering Virginia. The fate of the London company found little sympathy ; in the domestic government and franchises of the colony, it produced no immediate change. Sir Francis Wyatt, though he had been an ardent friend of the London company, was confirmed in office ; and he and his council, far from being rendered absolute, were only empowered to govern “as fully and amplye as any governor and council resident there, at any time within the space of five years now last past.” This term of five years was precisely the period of representative government ; and the limitation could not but be interpreted as sanctioning the continuance of popular assemblies. The king, in appointing the council in Virginia, refused to nominate the imbibited partisans of the court faction, but formed the administration on the principles of accommodation.<sup>1</sup> The vanity of the 1625. monarch claimed the opportunity of establishing for the colony a code of fundamental laws ; but death pre- Mar. 27.  
vented the royal legislator from attempting the task, which would have furnished his self-complacency so grateful an occupation.

<sup>1</sup> Hazard, i. 189. 192. Burk, ii. 11, from ancient records.

## CHAPTER VI.

## RESTRICTIONS ON COLONIAL COMMERCE.

CHAP. VI. ASCENDING the throne in his twenty-fifth year, Charles I. inherited the principles and was governed by the favorite of his father. The rejoicings in consequence of his recent nuptials, the reception of his bride, and preparations for a parliament, left him little leisure for American affairs. Virginia was esteemed by the monarch as the country producing tobacco ; its inhabitants were valued at court as planters, and prized according to the revenue derived from the staple of their industry. The plantation, no longer governed by a chartered company, was become a royal province and an object of favor ; and, as it enforced conformity to the church of England, it could not be an object of suspicion to the clergy or the court. The king felt an earnest desire to heal old grievances, to secure the personal rights and property of the colonists, and to promote their prosperity. Franchises were neither conceded nor restricted ; for it did not occur to his pride, that, at that time, there could be in an American province any thing like established privileges or vigorous political life ; nor was he aware that the seeds of liberty were already germinating on the borders of the Chesapeake. His first Virginian measure was a proclamation on tobacco ; confirming to Virginia and the Somer Isles the exclusive supply of the British market,

April 9.

under penalty of the censure of the star-chamber for <sup>VI.</sup>  
disobedience. In a few days, a new proclamation ap- <sup>1625.</sup>  
peared, in which it was his evident design to secure <sup>May  
13.</sup> the profits that might before have been engrossed by  
the corporation. After a careful declaration of the for-  
feiture of the charters, and consequently of the imme-  
diate dependence of Virginia upon himself, a declara-  
tion aimed against the claims of the London company,  
and not against the franchises of the colonists, the  
monarch proceeded to announce his fixed resolution of  
becoming, through his agents, the sole factor of the  
planters. Indifferent to their constitution, it was his  
principal aim to monopolize the profits of their in-  
dustry; and the political rights of Virginia were estab-  
lished as usages by his salutary neglect.<sup>1</sup>

There is no room to suppose that Charles nourished  
the design of suppressing the colonial assemblies. For  
some months, the organization of the government was  
not changed; and when Wyatt, on the death of his  
father, obtained leave to return to Scotland, Sir George <sup>1626.</sup>  
Yeardley was appointed his successor. This appoint-  
ment was in itself a guaranty, that, as “the former  
interests of Virginia were to be kept inviolate,”<sup>2</sup> so  
the representative government, the chief political in-  
terest, would be maintained; for it was Yeardley who  
had had the glory of introducing the system. In the  
commission now issued,<sup>3</sup> the monarch expressed his  
desire to benefit, encourage and perfect the plantation;  
“the same means, that were formerly thought fit for  
the maintenance of the colony,” were continued; and  
the power of the governor and council was limited, as

<sup>1</sup> Hazard, i. 202—205. Burk, ii. 14, 15.

<sup>2</sup> Letter of the privy council, in Burk, ii. 18.

<sup>3</sup> Hazard, i. 230—234.

CHAP. VI. it had before been done in the commission of Wyatt,  
 ~~ by a reference to the usages of the last five years. In  
 that period, representative liberty had become the cus-  
 tom of Virginia. The words were interpreted as  
 favoring the wishes of the colonists ; and King Charles,  
 intent only on increasing his revenue, confirmed, per-  
 haps unconsciously, the existence of a popular as-  
 sembly. The colony prospered ; Virginia rose rapidly  
 1627. in public estimation ; in one year, a thousand emi-  
 grants arrived ; and there was an increasing demand  
 for all the products of the soil.

Nov. The career of Yeardley was now closed by death.  
 Posterity will ever retain a grateful recollection of the  
 man who first convened a representative assembly in  
 the western hemisphere ; the colonists, announcing his  
 decease in a letter to the privy council, gave at the  
 same time a eulogy on his virtues ; the surest evidence

Nov. 14. of his fidelity to their interests.<sup>1</sup> The day after his  
 burial, Francis West was elected his successor ;<sup>2</sup> for  
 the council was authorized to elect the governor, "from  
 time to time, as often as the case shall require."<sup>3</sup>

1628. But if any doubts existed of the royal assent to the  
 continuance of colonial assemblies, they were soon re-  
 moved by a letter of instructions, which the king ad-  
 dressed to the governor and council. After much  
 caviling, in the style of a purchaser who undervalues  
 the wares which he wishes to buy, the monarch arrives  
 at his main purpose, and offers to contract for the  
 whole crop of tobacco ; desiring, at the same time,  
 that an assembly might be convened to consider his  
 proposal.<sup>4</sup> This is the first recognition, on the part of  
 a Stuart, of a representative assembly in America.

<sup>1</sup> Burk, ii. 22, 23.  
<sup>2</sup> Hening, i. 4.

<sup>3</sup> Hazard i. 233.  
<sup>4</sup> Burk, ii. 19, 20. Hening, i. 129.

Hitherto, the king had, fortunately for the colony, CHAP. VI.  
found no time to take order for its government. His ~~~~~~  
zeal for an exclusive contract led him to observe  
and to sanction the existence of an elective legis- 1629.  
lature. The assembly, in its answer, firmly pro-  
tested against the monopoly, and rejected the con- Mar.  
ditions which they had been summoned to approve. 26.  
The independent reply of the assembly was signed by  
the governor, by five members of the council, and by  
thirty-one burgesses. The Virginians, happier than  
the people of England, enjoyed a faithful representative  
government, and, through the resident planters who  
composed the council, they repeatedly elected their  
own governor. When West designed to embark for  
Europe, his place was supplied by election.<sup>1</sup>

No sooner had the news of the death of Yeardley 1628.  
reached England, than the king proceeded to issue a  
commission<sup>2</sup> to John Harvey. The tenor of the in-  
strument offered no invasions of colonial freedom ; but  
while it renewed the limitations which had previously  
been set to the executive authority, it permitted the  
council in Virginia, which had common interests with  
the people, to supply all vacancies occurring in their  
body. In this way direct oppression was rendered  
impossible.

It was during the period which elapsed between 1628  
the appointment of Harvey and his appearance in 1629.  
America, that Lord Baltimore visited Virginia. The  
zeal of religious bigotry pursued him as a Romanist ;<sup>3</sup>  
and the intolerant jealousy of Popery led to memorable  
results. Nor should we, in this connection, forget the  
hospitable plans of the southern planters ; the people

<sup>1</sup> Hening, i. 134—137. Burk,  
ii. 24.

<sup>3</sup> Records, in Burk, ii. 24, 25.  
Hening, i. 552.

<sup>2</sup> Hazard, i. 234—239.

CHAP. VI. of New Plymouth were invited to abandon the cold  
 ~~ and sterile clime of New England, and plant themselves in the milder regions on the Delaware Bay;<sup>1</sup> a plain indication that Puritans were not then molested in Virginia.

It was probably in the autumn of 1629 that Harvey arrived in Virginia.<sup>2</sup> Till October, the name of Pott 1630. appears as governor; Harvey met his first assembly Mar. 24. of burgesses in the following March.<sup>3</sup> He had for several years been a member of the council; and as, at a former day, he had been a willing instrument in the hands of the faction to which Virginia ascribed its earliest griefs, and continued to bear a deep-rooted hostility, his appointment could not but be unpopular. 1630 The colony had esteemed it a special favor from King to 1635. James, that, upon the substitution of the royal authority for the corporate supremacy, the government had been intrusted to impartial agents; and, after the death of Yeardley, two successive chief magistrates had been elected in Virginia. The appointment of Harvey implied a change of power among political parties; it gave authority to a man whose connections in England were precisely those which the colony regarded with the utmost aversion. As his first appearance in America, in 1623, had been with no friendly designs, so now he was the support of those who desired large grants of land and unreasonable concessions of separate jurisdictions; and he preferred the interests of himself, his partisans and patrons, to the welfare and quiet of the colony. The extravagant language, which exhibited him as a tyrant, without specifying his crimes, was the natural hyperbole of po-

<sup>1</sup> Burk, ii. 32.

<sup>2</sup> Chalmers, 118.

<sup>3</sup> Hening, i. 4, and 147.

itical excitement; and when historians, receiving the account, and interpreting tyranny to mean arbitrary taxation, drew the inference that he convened no assemblies, trifled with the rights of property, and levied taxes according to his caprice, they were betrayed into extravagant errors. Such a procedure would have been impossible. He had no soldiers at his command; no obsequious officers to enforce his will; and the Virginians would never have made themselves the instruments of their own oppression. The party opposed to Harvey was deficient neither in capacity nor in colonial influence; and while arbitrary power was rapidly advancing to triumph in England, the Virginians, during the whole period, enjoyed the benefit of independent colonial legislation;<sup>1</sup> through the agency of their representatives, they levied and appropriated all taxes,<sup>2</sup> secured the free industry of their citizens,<sup>3</sup> guarded the forts with their own soldiers, at their own

<sup>1</sup> As an opposite statement has received the sanction, not of Oldmixon, Chalmers, and Robertson only, but of Marshall and of Story (see Story's Commentaries, i. 28, "without the slightest effort to convene a colonial assembly"), I deem it necessary to state, that many of the statutes of Virginia under Harvey still exist, and that, though many others are lost, the first volume of Hening's Statutes at Large proves, beyond a question, that assemblies were convened, at least, as often as follows:—

|                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| 1630, March,     | Hening, i. 147—153. |
| 1630, April,     | ibid. 257.          |
| 1632, February,  | ibid. 153—177.      |
| 1632, September, | ibid. 178—202.      |
| 1633, February,  | ibid. 202—209.      |
| 1633, August,    | ibid. 209—222.      |
| 1634,            | ibid. 223.          |
| 1635,            | ibid. 223.          |
| 1636,            | ibid. 229.          |
| 1637,            | ibid. 227.          |
| 1639,            | ibid. 229—230.      |

|                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1640,          | Hening, i. 268. |
| 1641, June,    | ibid. 259—262.  |
| 1642, January, | ibid. 267.      |
| 1642, April,   | ibid. 230.      |
| 1642, June,    | ibid. 269.      |

Considering how imperfect are the early records, it is surprising that so considerable a list can be established. The instructions to Sir William Berkeley do not first order assemblies; but speak of them as of a thing established. At an adjourned session of Berkeley's first legislature, the assembly declares "its meeting exceeding *customary* limits, in this place *used*." Hening, i. 236. This is a plain declaration, that assemblies were the custom and use of Virginia at the time of Berkeley's arrival. If any doubts remain, it would be easy to multiply arguments and references. Burk, ii. App. xlvi. li.

<sup>2</sup> Hening, i. 171, Act 38.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 172, Act 40.

CHAP. charge,<sup>1</sup> and gave to their statutes the greatest possible publicity.<sup>2</sup> When the defects and inconveniences of infant legislation were remedied by a revised code,<sup>3</sup> which was published with the approbation of the governor and council,<sup>4</sup> all the privileges which the assembly had ever claimed, were carefully confirmed.<sup>4</sup> Indeed, they seem never to have been questioned.

Yet the administration of Harvey was disturbed by divisions, which grew out of other causes than infringements of the constitution. De Vries, who visited Virginia in 1632–3, had reason to praise the advanced condition of the settlement, the abundance of its products, and the liberality of its governor.<sup>5</sup> The community would hardly have been much disturbed because fines were exacted with too relentless rigor;<sup>6</sup> but the whole colony of Virginia was in a state of excitement and alarm in consequence of the dismemberment of its territory by the cession to Lord Baltimore. As in many of the earlier settlements, questions about land-titles were agitated with passion; and there was reason to apprehend the increase of extravagant grants, that would again include the soil on which plantations had already been made without the acquisition of an indisputable legal claim. In Maryland, the first occupants had refused to submit, and a skirmish had ensued, in which the blood of Europeans was shed for the first time on the waters of the Chesapeake; and Clayborne, defeated and banished from Maryland as a murderer<sup>7</sup> and an outlaw, sheltered himself in Virginia, where he had long been a member of the coun-

<sup>1</sup> Hening, 175, Acts 57 and 58.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 177, Act 68.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 179.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. 180—202. See, particularly, Acts 34, 35, 36, 39, 46, 57, 58, 61.

<sup>5</sup> De Vries, Korte Historiael ende Journals—a rare work, which Ebeling had never seen.

<sup>6</sup> Beverley, 48. Bullock, 10.

<sup>7</sup> Hammond's Leah and Rachel.

cil. There the contest was renewed ; and Harvey, <sup>CHAP. VI.</sup> far from attempting to enforce the claims of Virginia ~~—~~ against the royal grant, sent Clayborne to England to answer for the crimes with which he was charged. The colonists were indignant that their governor should thus, as it seemed to them, betray their interests ; and as the majority of the council favored their wishes, "Sir John Harvey was thrust out of his government ; and Captain John West appointed to the office, till the king's pleasure be known." An assembly was summoned in May, to receive complaints against Harvey ; but he had in the mean time consented to go to England, and there meet his accusers.<sup>1</sup>

The commissioners appointed by the council to manage the impeachment of Harvey, met with no favor in England, and were not even admitted to a hearing.<sup>2</sup> Harvey immediately reappeared to occupy his former station ; and was followed by a new commission, by which his powers were still limited to such as had been exercised during the period of legislative freedom. General assemblies continued to be held ; but the vacancies in the council, which had been filled in Virginia, were henceforward to be supplied by appointment in England.<sup>3</sup> Harvey remained in office till 1639.<sup>4</sup> The complaints which have been brought against him, will be regarded with some degree of distrust, when it is considered, that the public mind

Jan. 3.

<sup>1</sup> Hening, i. 223, and 4. Oldmixon, i. 240. Oldmixon is unworthy of implicit trust. Beverley, 48, is not accurate. Campbell's Virginia, 60—a modest little book. Chalmers, 118, 119, is betrayed into error by following Oldmixon. Burk, ii. 41, 42. Bullock's Virginia, 10. Robertson, in his History of Virginia, after the dissolution of the

company, furnishes a tissue of inventions. Keith, 143, 144, places in 1639 the occurrences of 1635. His book is superficial.

<sup>2</sup> Burk, ii. 45. Yet Burk corrected but half the errors of his predecessors.

<sup>3</sup> Hazard, i. 400—403.

<sup>4</sup> Campbell, 61. Hening, i. 4.

**CHAP. VI.** of the colony, during his administration, was controlled by a party which pursued him with implacable hostility. In April, 1642, two months only after the accession of Berkeley, a public document declares the comparative happiness of the colony under the royal government; a declaration which would hardly have been made, if Virginia had so recently and so long been smarting under intolerable oppression.<sup>1</sup>

**1639.** At length he was superseded, and Sir Francis Nov. Wyatt<sup>2</sup> appointed in his stead. Early in the next

**1640.** year, he convened a general assembly. History has Jan. recorded many instances where a legislature has altered the scale of debts: in modern times, it has frequently been done by debasing the coin, or by introducing paper money. In Virginia, debts had been contracted to be paid in tobacco; and when the article rose in value, in consequence of laws restricting its culture, the legislature of Virginia did not scruple to provide a remedy, by enacting that "no man need pay more than two thirds of his debt during the stint;" and that all creditors should take "forty pounds for a hundred."<sup>3</sup> The artificial increase of the value of tobacco seemed to require a corresponding change in the tariff of debts.<sup>4</sup>

**1641.** After two years, a commission<sup>5</sup> was issued to Sir Aug. 9. William Berkeley. Historians, reasoning, from the revolutions which took place in England, that there had been corresponding attempts at oppression and corresponding resistance in Virginia, have delighted

<sup>1</sup> Hening, i. 231.

<sup>2</sup> Rymer, xx. 484. Hazard, i. 477. Savage on Winthrop, ii. 160,

161. A note by Savage settles a question. Hening, i. 224, and 4. Campbell, 61. But Keith, and Beverly, and Chalmers, and Burk, and Marshall, were ignorant of such a

governor as Wyatt, in 1639, and represent Berkeley as the immediate successor of Harvey.

<sup>3</sup> Hening, i. 225, 226.

<sup>4</sup> Brockenhough's Virginia, 586.

<sup>5</sup> Hazard, i. 477—480. Rymer, xx. 484—486.

to draw a contrast, not only between Harvey and CHAP.  
VI.  
the new governor, but between the institutions of ~~the~~<sup>1641</sup> Virginia under their respective governments; and Berkeley is said to have "restored the system of freedom," and to have "effected an essential revolution."<sup>1</sup> I cannot find that his appointment was marked by the slightest concession of new political privileges, except that the council recovered the right of supplying its own vacancies; and the historians, who make an opposite statement, are wholly ignorant of the intermediate administration of Wyatt; a government so suited to the tastes and habits of the planters, that it passed silently away, leaving almost no impression on Virginia history, except in its statutes. The commission of Berkeley was exactly analogous to those of his predecessors.

The instructions<sup>2</sup> given him, far from granting franchises to the Virginians, imposed new, severe and unwarrantable restrictions on the liberty of trade; and, for the first time, England claimed that monopoly of colonial commerce, which was ultimately enforced by the navigation act of Charles II., and which never ceased to be a subject of dispute till the war of independence. The nature of those instructions will presently be explained.

It was in February, 1642, that Sir William Berke- 1642  
ley, arriving in the colony, assumed the government. His arrival must have been nearly simultaneous with the adjournment of the general assembly, which was held in the preceding January.<sup>3</sup> He found the American planters in possession of a large share of the legis-

<sup>1</sup> Chalmers, 120, 121.

i. 267—269, in the acts 49, 50, 51,

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 131—133.

52. The statutes, of course, call

<sup>3</sup> The acts of that session are lost, but are referred to in Hening,

the year 1641, as the year then began in March.

CHAP. lative authority; and he confirmed them in the enjoy-  
VI.  
~~~ ment of franchises which a long and uninterrupted  
1642. succession had rendered familiar. Immediately after  
Mar. his arrival, he convened the colonial legislature. The  
utmost harmony prevailed; the memory of factions  
was lost in a general amnesty of ancient griefs. The  
lapse of years had so far effaced the divisions which  
grew out of the dissolution of the company, that when  
George Sandys, an agent of the colony, and an oppo-  
nent of the royal party in England, presented a pe-  
tition to the commons, praying for the restoration of  
the ancient patents,<sup>1</sup> the royalist assembly promptly  
disavowed the design, and, after a full debate, op-  
posed it by a solemn protest.<sup>2</sup> The whole document  
April 1 breathes the tone of a body accustomed to public dis-  
cussion and the independent exercise of legislative  
power. They assert the necessity of the freedom of trade, "for freedom of trade," say they, "is the blood  
and life of a commonwealth." And they defended  
their preference of self-government through a colonial  
legislature, by a conclusive argument. "There is  
more likelihood, that such as are acquainted with the  
clime and its accidents may upon better grounds pre-  
scribe our advantages, than such as shall sit at the  
helm in England."<sup>3</sup> In reply to their urgent petition,  
the king immediately declared his purpose not to  
change a form of government in which they "re-  
ceived so much content and satisfaction."<sup>4</sup>

The Virginians, aided by Sir William Berkeley,<sup>5</sup>  
could now deliberately perfect their civil condition.  
Condemnations to service had been a usual punish-

<sup>1</sup> Chalmers, 121. Hening, i. 230.

<sup>4</sup> Chalmers, 133, 134. Burk, ii.

<sup>2</sup> Hening, i. 230—236. Burk, ii  
68—74.

<sup>74.</sup>

<sup>3</sup> Hening, i. 233.

<sup>5</sup> Hammond's Leah and Rachel,  
12.

ment; these were abolished. In the courts of justice, <sup>CHAP. VI.</sup> a near approach was made to the laws and customs of ~~the~~ England. Religion was provided for; the law about land-titles adjusted; an amicable treaty with Maryland successfully matured; and peace with the Indians confirmed. Taxes were assessed, not in proportion to numbers, but to men's abilities and estates. The spirit of liberty, displayed in the English parliament, was transmitted to America; and the rights of property, the freedom of industry, the solemn exercise of civil franchises, seemed to be secured to themselves and their posterity. "A future immunity from taxes and impositions," except such as should be freely voted for their own wants, "was expected as the fruits of the endeavors of their legislature."<sup>1</sup> As the restraints with which colonial navigation was threatened, were not enforced,<sup>2</sup> they attracted no attention; and Virginia enjoyed nearly all the liberties which a monarch could concede, and retain his supremacy.

Believing themselves secure of all their privileges, the triumph of the popular party in England did not alter the condition or the affections of the Virginians. The commissioners appointed by parliament, with unlimited authority over the plantations,<sup>3</sup> found no favor in Virginia. They promised, indeed, freedom from English taxation; but this immunity was already enjoyed. They gave the colony liberty to choose its own governor; but it had no dislike to Berkeley; and though there was a party for the parliament, yet the king's authority was maintained.<sup>4</sup> The sovereignty of Charles had ever been mildly exercised.

The condition of contending parties in England had <sup>1643</sup> Mar.

<sup>1</sup> Hening, i. 237, 238.

<sup>2</sup> Chalmers, 124.

<sup>3</sup> Hazard, i. 533—535.

<sup>4</sup> Winthrop, ii. 159, 160, and the note of Savage.

CHAP. now given to Virginia an opportunity of legislation  
 VI. independent of European control; and the voluntary  
 1643. act of the assembly, restraining religious liberty, adopted  
     from hostility to political innovation, rather than  
     from a spirit of fanaticism, or respect to instructions,  
     proves conclusively the attachment of the representa-  
     tives of Virginia to the Episcopal church and the cause  
     of royalty. Yet there had been Puritans in the colony  
     almost from the beginning: even the Brownists were  
     freely offered a secure asylum;<sup>1</sup> "here," said the tole-  
     rant Whitaker, "neither surplice nor subscription is  
     spoken of," and several Puritan families, and perhaps<sup>2</sup>  
     some even of the Puritan clergy, emigrated to Virginia.  
     They were so content with their reception, that large  
 1619. numbers were preparing to follow, and were restrained  
     only by the forethought of English intolerance.<sup>3</sup> We  
     have seen, that the Pilgrims at Plymouth were invited  
 1629. to remove within the jurisdiction of Virginia; Puritan  
     merchants planted themselves on the James River  
 1640. without fear, and emigrants from Massachusetts had  
     recently established themselves in the colony. The  
     honor of Laud had been vindicated by a judicial sen-  
     tence,<sup>4</sup> and south of the Potomac the decrees of the  
     court of high commission were allowed to be valid;  
     but I find no traces of persecutions in the earliest his-  
     tory of Virginia. The laws were harsh: the adminis-  
     tration seems to have been mild. A disposition to non-  
     conformity was soon to show itself even in the council.  
     An invitation, which had been sent to Boston for Puri-  
     tan ministers, implies a belief that they would be ad-

<sup>1</sup> Bradford, in Prince.

<sup>2</sup> "I muse that *so few* of our Eng-  
 lish ministers, that were so hot  
 against the surplice and subscription,  
 come hither, where neither is spoken

of." Whitaker, in Purchas, b. ix.

c. xi.

<sup>3</sup> Compare Grahame, i. 219;  
 Hawks, i. 35.

<sup>4</sup> Hening, i. 552. Burk, ii. 67.

mitted in Virginia. But now the democratic revolution CHAP.  
VI.  
in England had given an immediate political importance ~~  
to religious sects: to tolerate Puritanism was to nurse  
a republican party. It was, therefore, specially ordered 1643.  
Mar.  
that no minister should preach or teach, publicly or  
privately, except in conformity to the constitutions of  
the church of England,<sup>1</sup> and non-conformists were ban-  
ished from the colony. The unsocial spirit of political  
discord, fostering a mutual intolerance, prevented a  
frequent intercourse between Virginia and New Eng-  
land. It was in vain that the ministers, invited from  
Boston by the Puritan settlements in Virginia, carried  
letters from Winthrop, written to Berkeley and his  
council by order of the general court of Massachusetts.  
“The hearts of the people were much inflamed with  
desire after the ordinances;” but the missionaries were  
silenced by the government, and ordered to leave the  
country.<sup>2</sup> Sir William Berkeley was “a courtier, and  
very malignant towards the way of the churches” in  
New England.

While Virginia thus displayed, though with com-  
paratively little bitterness, the intolerance which for  
centuries had almost universally prevailed throughout  
the Christian world, a scene of distress was prepared  
by the vindictive ferocity of the natives, with whom a  
state of hostility had been of long continuance. In  
1643, it was enacted by the assembly, that no terms of  
peace should be entertained with the Indians; whom  
it was usual to distress by sudden marches against  
their settlements. But the Indians had now heard of 1644.  
the dissensions in England, and taking counsel of  
their passions, rather than of their prudence, they re-

<sup>1</sup> Act 64, Hening, i. 277.

New England, 410, 411. Johnson,

<sup>2</sup> Winthrop's Journal, ii. 77, 78.  
95, 96, and 164, 165. Hubbard's

b. iii. c. xi. in ii. Mass. Hist. Coll.  
viii. 29. Hening, i. 275.

CHAP. solved on one more attempt at a general massacre ;  
 VI. believing that, by midnight incursions, the destruction  
 1644. of the cattle and the fields of corn, they might succeed  
 in famishing the remnant of the colonists whom they  
 should not be able to murder by surprise. On the  
 eighteenth day of April,<sup>1</sup> the time appointed for the  
 carnage, the unexpected onset was begun upon the  
 frontier settlements. But hardly had the Indians  
 steeped their hands in blood, before they were dismayed  
 by the recollection of their own comparative weak-  
 ness ; and, trembling for the consequences of their  
 treachery, they feared to continue their design, and  
 fled to a distance from the colony. The number of  
 victims had been three hundred. Measures were  
 promptly taken by the English for protection and de-  
 fence ; and a war was vigorously conducted. The  
 aged Opechancanough was easily made prisoner ; and  
 the venerated monarch of the sons of the forest, so  
 long the undisputed lord of almost boundless hunting  
 grounds, died in miserable captivity of wounds inflict-  
 ed by a brutal soldier. In his last moments, he chiefly  
 regretted his exposure to the contemptuous gaze of his  
 enemies.<sup>2</sup>

So little was apprehended, when the English were once on their guard, that, two months after the massacre, Berkeley embarked for England, leaving Richard Kemp as his successor.<sup>3</sup> A border warfare continued ; marches up and down the Indian country were or-  
 dered ; yet so weak were the natives, that though the

<sup>1</sup> The reader is cautioned against the inaccuracies of Beverley, Oldmixon, and, on this subject, of Burk. See Winthrop's Journal, ii. 165. Compare the note of Savage, whose sagacious conjecture is confirmed in Hening, i. 290, Act 4, session of February, 1645.

<sup>2</sup> On the massacre, there are three contemporary guides : the statutes of the time, in Hening, i. ; The Perfect Description of Virginia, in ii. Mass. Hist. Coll. ix. 115—117 ; and the Reports of the exiled Puritans, in Winthrop, ii. 165.

<sup>3</sup> Hening, i. 4. 282, and 286.

careless traveller and the straggling huntsman were long in danger of being intercepted,<sup>1</sup> yet ten men were considered a sufficient force to protect a place of danger.<sup>2</sup>

About fifteen months after Berkeley's return from England, articles of peace were established between the inhabitants of Virginia and Necotowance, the successor of Opechancanough.<sup>3</sup> Submission and a cession of lands were the terms on which the treaty was purchased by the original possessors of the soil, who now began to vanish away from the immediate vicinity of the settlements of their too formidable invaders. It is one of the surprising results of moral power, that language, composed of fleeting sounds, retains and transmits the remembrance of past occurrences, long after every other monument has passed away. Of the labors of the Indians on the soil of Virginia, there remains nothing so respectable as would be a common ditch for the draining of lands;<sup>4</sup> the memorials of their former existence are found only in the names of the rivers and the mountains. Unchanging nature retains the appellations which were given by those whose villages have disappeared, and whose tribes have become extinct.

Thus the colony of Virginia acquired the management of all its concerns; war was levied, and peace concluded, and territory acquired, in conformity to the acts of the representatives of the people. Possessed of security and quiet, abundance of land, a free market for their staple, and, practically, all the rights of an independent state, having England for its guar-

<sup>1</sup> Hening, i. 300, 301, Act 3.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 285, 286, Act 5.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 323—326. Compare

Drake's Indian Biography, b. iv. 22

—24; Johnson's Wonder-working Providence, b. iii. c. xi.

<sup>4</sup> Jefferson's Notes, 132.

CHAP. dian against foreign oppression, rather than its ruler,  
<sup>VI.</sup> the colonists enjoyed all the prosperity which a virgin  
1646. soil, equal laws, and general uniformity of condition  
and industry, could bestow. Their numbers increased;  
the cottages were filled with children, as the ports  
were with ships and emigrants. At Christmas, 1648,  
there were trading in Virginia, ten ships from London,  
two from Bristol, twelve Hollanders, and seven from  
New England.<sup>1</sup> The number of the colonists was  
already twenty thousand; and they, who had sus-  
tained no griefs, were not tempted to engage in  
the feuds by which the mother country was divided.  
They were attached to the cause of Charles, not be-  
cause they loved monarchy, but because they cherished  
the liberties of which he had left them in the undis-  
1649. turbed possession; and, after his execution, though  
there were not wanting some who, from ignorance, as  
the royalists affirmed, favored republicanism, the gov-  
ernment recognized his son<sup>2</sup> without dispute. The  
disasters of the Cavaliers in England strengthened  
the party in the New World. Men of consideration  
“among the nobility, gentry, and clergy,” struck  
“with horror and despair” at the execution of  
Charles I., and desiring no reconciliation with the un-  
relenting “rebels,” made their way to the shores of  
the Chesapeake, where every house was for them a  
“hostelry,” and every planter a friend. The mansion  
and the purse of Berkeley were open to all; and at the  
hospitable dwellings that were scattered along the  
rivers and among the wilds of Virginia, the Cavaliers,  
exiles like their monarch, met in frequent groups to  
recount their toils, to sigh over defeats, and to nourish

<sup>1</sup> New Description of Virginia, 15, in ii. Mass. Hist. Coll. ix. 118.

<sup>2</sup> Hening, i. 359, 360, Act 1.

loyalty and hope.<sup>1</sup> The faithfulness of the Virginians CHAP. VI. did not escape the attention of the royal exile ; from ~~the~~<sup>1650.</sup> his retreat in Breda he transmitted to Berkeley a new June. commission ;<sup>2</sup> he still controlled the distribution of offices, and, amidst his defeats in Scotland,<sup>3</sup> still remembered with favor the faithful Cavaliers in the western world. Charles the Second, a fugitive from England, was still the sovereign of Virginia. “Virginia was whole for monarchy, and the last country, belonging to England, that submitted to obedience of the commonwealth.”<sup>4</sup>

But the parliament did not long permit its authority to be denied. Having, by the vigorous energy and fearless enthusiasm of republicanism, triumphed over all its enemies in Europe, it turned its attention to the colonies ; and a memorable ordinance<sup>5</sup> at once empowered the council of state to reduce the rebellious colonies to obedience, and, at the same time, established it as a law, that foreign ships should not trade at any of the ports “in Barbadoes, Antigua, Bermudas, and Virginia.” Maryland, which was not expressly included in the ordinance, had taken care to acknowledge the new order of things ;<sup>6</sup> and Massachusetts, alike unwilling to encounter the hostility of parliament, and jealous of the rights of independent legislation, by its own enactment, prohibited all intercourse with Virginia, till the supremacy of the commonwealth should be established ; although the order, when it was found to be injurious to commerce, was

Oct. 3.

1651 May 7.

<sup>1</sup> Norwood, in Churchill, vi. 160—186. Hammond's Leah and Rachel, 16.

<sup>2</sup> Chalmers, 122.

<sup>3</sup> Norwood, in Ch., vi. 186.

<sup>4</sup> Hammond's Leah and Rachel, 20 ; Ed. 1656.

<sup>5</sup> Hazard, i. 637, 638. Parliamentary History, iii. 1357. The commentary of Chalmers, p. 123, is that of a partisan lawyer.

<sup>6</sup> Langford's Refutation, 6, 7

CHAP. promptly repealed, even whilst royalty still triumphed  
 VI. at Jamestown.<sup>1</sup> But would Virginia resist the fleet  
 1651. of the republic? Were its royalist principles so firm,  
 Oct. 14. that they would animate the colony to a desperate  
 war with England? The lovers of monarchy indulged  
 the hope, that the victories of their friends in the  
 Chesapeake would redeem the disgrace, that had  
 elsewhere fallen on the royal arms; many partisans of  
 Charles had come over as to a place of safety; and the  
 honest Governor Berkeley, than whom "no man meant  
 better," was so confirmed in his confidence, that he  
 wrote to the king, almost inviting him to America.<sup>2</sup>  
 The approach of the day of trial was watched with  
 the deepest interest.

But while the preparations were yet making for the reduction of the colonies, which still preserved an appearance of loyalty, the commercial policy of England underwent an important revision, and the new system, as it was based upon the permanent interests of English merchants and ship-builders, obtained a consistency and durability which could never have been gained by the feeble selfishness of the Stuarts.

It is the ancient fate of colonies to be planted by the daring of the poor and the hardy; to struggle into being through the severest trials; to be neglected by the parent country during the season of poverty and weakness; to thrive by the unrestricted application of their powers and enterprise; and by their consequent prosperity to tempt oppression. The Greek colonies early attained opulence and strength, because they were always free; the new people at its birth was independent, and remained so; the emigrants were dismissed, not as servants, but as equals. They were

<sup>1</sup> Hazard, i. 553 and 558.

<sup>2</sup> Clarendon, b. xiii. iii. 466.

the natural, not the necessary, allies of the mother country. They spoke the same dialect, revered the same gods, cherished the same customs and laws; but they were politically independent. Freedom, stimulating exertion, invited them to stretch their settlements from the shores of the Euxine to the Western Mediterranean, and urged them forward to wealth and prosperity, commensurate with their boldness and the vast extent of their domains. The colonies of Carthage, on the contrary, had no sooner attained sufficient consideration to merit attention, than the mother state insisted upon a monopoly of their commerce. The colonial system is as old as colonies and the spirit of commercial gain and political oppression.<sup>1</sup>

No sooner had Spain and Portugal entered on maritime discovery, and found their way round the Cape of Good Hope and to America, than a monopoly of the traffic of the world was desired. Greedily covetous of the whole, they could with difficulty agree upon a division, not of a conquered province, the banks of a river, a neighboring territory, but of the oceans, and the commerce of every people and empire along the wide margin of their waters. They claimed that, on the larger seas, the winds should blow only to fill their sails; that the islands and continents of Asia, of Africa, and the New World, should be fertile only to freight the ships of their merchants; and, having denounced the severest penalties against any who should infringe the rights which they claimed, they obtained the sanction of religion to adjust their differences, and to bar the ocean against the intrusion of competitors.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Brougham's Colonial Policy, i. 21–23. Dionysius Halicarnassus, l. iii. But of all on the subject, Heeren, xiii. 96–98.

<sup>2</sup> Bull of Alexander VI, May 4, 1493. ‘Sub excommunicationis latæ sententiæ pœna,’ &c.

CHAP.  
VI. The effects of this severity are pregnant with instruction. Direct commerce with the Spanish settlements was punished by the Spaniards with confiscation and the threat of eternal wo. The moral sense of mariners revolted at the extravagance: since forfeiture, imprisonment, and excommunication, were to follow the attempt at the fair exchanges of trade; since the freebooter and the pirate could not suffer more than was menaced against the merchant who should disregard the maritime monopoly,—the seas became infested by reckless bucaniers, the natural offspring of colonial restrictions. Rich Spanish settlements in America were pillaged; fleets attacked and captured; predatory invasions were even made on land to intercept the loads of gold, as they came from the mines; and men, who might have acquired honor and wealth in commerce, if commerce had been permitted, now displayed a sagacity of contrivance, coolness of execution, and capacity for enduring hardships, which won them the admiration of their contemporaries, and, in a better cause, would have won them the perpetual praises of the world.

In Europe, the freedom of the sea was vindicated against the claims of Spain and Portugal by a nation, hardly yet recognized as an independent state, occupying a soil, of which much had been redeemed by industry, and driven by the stern necessity of a dense population to seek for resources upon the sea. The most gifted of her sons, who first gave expression to the idea, that “free ships make free goods,”<sup>1</sup> defended the liberty of commerce, and appealed to the judgment of all free governments and nations against the

<sup>1</sup> Grotius, Epist. ccvii.; “aliorum bella obstare commerciorum libertati non debere.”

maritime restrictions, which humanity denounced as CHAP.  
<sup>VI.</sup> contrary to the principles of social intercourse ; which ~~  
justice derided as infringing the clearest natural rights ;  
which enterprise rejected as a monstrous usurpation  
of the ocean and the winds. The relinquishment of  
navigation in the East Indies was required as the  
price at which her independence should be acknowled-  
ged, and she preferred to defend her separate exist-  
ence by her arms, rather than purchase security by  
circumscribing the courses of her ships. The nation,  
which by its position was compelled to acquire skill in  
commerce, and, in its resistance to monopoly, was  
forced by competition to obtain an advantage, succeed-  
ed in gaining the maritime ascendency. While the  
inglorious James of England, immersed in vanity and  
pedantry, was negotiating about points of theology ;  
while the more unhappy Charles was wasting his  
strength in vain struggles against the liberties of his  
subjects,—the Dutch, a little confederacy, which had  
been struck from the side of the vast empire of Spain,  
a new people, scarcely known as possessed of nation-  
ality, had, by their superior skill, begun to engross the  
carrying trade of the world. Their ships were soon  
to be found in the harbors of Virginia ; in the West  
Indian archipelago ; in the south of Africa ; among the  
tropical islands of the Indian Ocean ; and even in  
the remote harbors of China and Japan. Already  
their trading-houses were planted on the Hudson and  
the coast of Guinea, in Java and Brazil. One or two  
rocky islets in the West Indies, in part neglected by  
the Spaniards as unworthy of culture, were occupied  
by these daring merchants, and furnished a convenient  
shelter for a large contraband traffic with the terra  
firma. So great was the naval success of Holland,

CHAP. VI. that it engrossed the commerce of the European nations themselves ; English mariners sought employment in Dutch vessels, with which the ports of England were filled ; English ships lay rotting at the wharves ; English ship-building was an unprofitable vocation. The freedom and the enterprise of Holland had acquired maritime power, and skill, and wealth, such as the vast monopoly of Spain had never been able to command.

The causes of the commercial greatness of Holland were forgotten in envy at her success. She ceased to appear as the antagonist of Spain, and the gallant champion of the freedom of the seas ; she was now envied as the successful rival. The eloquence of Grotius was neglected, as well as the pretensions of Spain disregarded ; and the English government resolved to protect the English merchant. Cromwell desired to confirm the maritime power of his country ; and St. John, a Puritan and a republican in theory, though never averse to a limited monarchy, devised the first act of navigation, which the politic Whitelocke introduced and carried through parliament. Henceforward, the commerce between England and her colonies, as well as between England and the rest of the world, was to be conducted in ships solely owned, and principally manned, by Englishmen. Foreigners might bring to England nothing but the products of their own respective countries, or those of which their countries were the established staples. The act was leveled against Dutch commerce, and was but a protection of British shipping ; it contained not one clause relating to a colonial monopoly, or specially injurious to an American colony. Of itself it inflicted no wound on Virginia or New England. In vain did the Dutch

expostulate against the act as a breach of commercial amity; the parliament studied the interests of England, and would not repeal laws to please a neighbor.<sup>1</sup>

A naval war soon followed, which Cromwell eagerly desired, and Holland as earnestly endeavored to avoid. The spirit of each people was kindled with the highest national enthusiasm; the commerce of the world was the prize contended for; the ocean was the scene of the conflict; and the annals of recorded time had never known so many great naval actions in such quick succession. This was the war in which Blake, and Ayscue, and De Ruyter, gained their glory; and Tromp fixed a broom to his mast in bravado, as if to sweep the English flag from the seas.

Cromwell was not disposed to trammel the industry of Virginia, and Maryland, and New England. His ambition aspired to make England the commercial emporium of the world. His plans extended to the possession of the harbors in the Spanish Netherlands; France was obliged to pledge her aid to conquer, and her consent to yield Dunkirk, Mardyke and Gravelines; and Dunkirk, in the summer of 1658, was given up to his ambassador by the French king in person. Nor was this all: he desired the chief harbors in the North Sea, and the Baltic; and an alliance with Sweden, made not simply from a zeal for Protestantism, was to secure him Bremen, and Elsinore, and Dantzig, as his reward.<sup>2</sup> In the West Indies, his genius had planned the capture of Jamaica, which succeeded; and the attempt at the reduction of Hispaniola, then the chief possession of Spain among the

<sup>1</sup> Clarendon, b. xiii. Parl. History, iii. 1374, 5, 8. Godwin, iii. 381-2. Heeren, i. 156.

<sup>2</sup> Thurloe, vi. 478. Heeren's Works, i. 158.

CHAP. islands, failed only through the incompetency or want  
VI. of concert of his agents.

It is as the rival of Holland, the successful antagonist of Spain, the protector of English shipping, that Cromwell has claims to glory. The crown passed from the brow of his sons ; his wide plans for the possession of commercial places on the continent were defeated ; Dunkirk was restored ; the monarchy, which he subverted, was re-established ; the nobility, which he humbled, recovered its pride :—Jamaica and the Act of Navigation are the permanent monuments of Cromwell.

The protection of English shipping, thus permanently established as a part of the British commercial policy, was the successful execution of a scheme, which many centuries before had been prematurely attempted. A new and a far less justifiable encouragement was soon demanded, and English merchants began to insist upon the entire monopoly of the commerce of the colonies. This question had but recently been agitated in parliament. It was within the few last years, that England had acquired colonies ; and as, at first, they were thought to depend upon the royal prerogative, the public policy with respect to them can be found only in the proclamations, charters, and instructions, which emanated from the monarch.

The prudent forecast of Henry VII. had considered the advantages which might be derived from a colonial monopoly ; and while ample privileges were bestowed on the adventurers who sailed for the New World, he stipulated that the exclusive staple of its commerce should be made in England.<sup>1</sup> A century of ill success had checked the extravagance of hope ; and

<sup>1</sup> Hazard, i. 10, and 13, 14. Biddle's Cabot, 309.

as the charters of Gilbert and of Raleigh had contained CHAP.  
VI.  
little but concessions, suited to invite those eminent men to engage with earnestness in the career of western discoveries, so the first charter for Virginia ex- 1606. expressly admitted strangers to trade with the colony on payment of a small discriminating duty.<sup>1</sup> On the enlargement of the company, the intercourse with for- 1609. eigners was still permitted; nor were any limits assigned to the commerce in which they might engage.<sup>2</sup> The last charter was equally free from unreasonable 1612. restrictions on trade; and, by a confirmation of all former privileges, it permitted to foreign nations the traffic, which it did not expressly sanction.<sup>3</sup>

At an early period of his reign, before Virginia had been planted, King James found in his hostility to the use of tobacco a convenient argument for the excessive tax which a royal ordinance imposed on its consumption.<sup>4</sup> When the weed had evidently become the staple of Virginia, the Stuarts cared for nothing in the colony so much as for a revenue to be derived from an impost on its produce. Whatever false display of zeal might be made for religion, the conversion of the heathen, the organization of the government, and the establishment of justice, the subject of tobacco was never forgotten. The sale of it in England was strictly prohibited, unless the heavy impost had been paid;<sup>5</sup> a proclamation enforced the royal decree;<sup>6</sup> and, that the tax might be gathered on the entire consumption, by a new proclamation,<sup>7</sup> the culture of tobacco was forbidden in England and Wales, and the plants already growing were ordered to be uprooted.

<sup>1</sup> Charter, s. 13, in Hen. i. 63.

<sup>2</sup> s. 21, Hening, i. 94, 95.

<sup>3</sup> Third Charter, s. 21, ib. 109.

<sup>4</sup> Hazard, i. 49, 50.

<sup>5</sup> May 25. Hazard, i. 89.

<sup>6</sup> Nov. 10. Ibid. 90.

<sup>7</sup> Hazard, i. 93.

Oct.  
17.

May.  
1619.

Nov.  
30.

Dec.  
30.

CHAP. Nor was it long before the importation and sale of  
 VI. tobacco required a special license from the king.<sup>1</sup> In  
 1620. this manner, a compromise was effected between the  
 interests of the colonial planters and the monarch ;  
 the former obtained the exclusive supply of the Eng-  
 lish market, and the latter succeeded in imposing  
 1621. an exorbitant duty.<sup>2</sup> In the ensuing parliament,  
 Lord Coke did not fail to remind the commons of the  
 usurpations of authority on the part of the monarch,  
 who had taxed the produce of the colonies without  
 the consent of the people, and without an act of the  
 national legislature ;<sup>3</sup> and Sandys, and Diggs, and  
 Farrar, the friends of Virginia, procured the substi-  
 April 18. tution of an act for the arbitrary ordinance.<sup>4</sup> In con-  
 sequence of the dissensions of the times, the bill,  
 which had passed the house, was left among the un-  
 finished business of the session ; nor was the affair ad-  
 justed, till, as we have already seen, the commons, in  
 1624. 1624, again expressed their regard for Virginia by a  
 petition, to which the monarch readily attempted to  
 give effect.<sup>5</sup>

1625. The first colonial measure<sup>6</sup> of King Charles related  
 to tobacco ; and the second proclamation,<sup>7</sup> though its  
 object purported to be the settling of the plantation of  
 Virginia, partook largely of the same character. In a  
 series of public acts, King Charles attempted during  
 his reign to procure a revenue from this source. The  
 1626. authority of the star-chamber was invoked to assist  
 in filling his exchequer by new and onerous duties

<sup>1</sup> April 7. Hazard, i. 89—91.  
 June 29. Ibid. 93—96.

<sup>2</sup> Stith, 168—170. Chalmers, 50.  
 52. 57.

<sup>3</sup> Debates of the Commons in  
 1620 and 1621, i. 169.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. 269—271, and 296. Chal-  
 mers, 51. 70—74.

<sup>5</sup> Hazard, i. 193—198, 198—202.

<sup>6</sup> Ibid. 202, 203.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid. 203—205.

on tobacco;<sup>1</sup> his commissioners were ordered to con- CHAP.  
tract for all the product of the colonies;<sup>2</sup> though the ~ VI.  
Spanish tobacco was not steadily excluded.<sup>3</sup> All co- 1627.  
lonial tobacco was soon ordered to be sealed;<sup>4</sup> nor was  
its importation permitted except with special license;<sup>5</sup>  
and we have seen, that an attempt was made, by a di-  
rect negotiation with the Virginians, to constitute the  
king the sole factor of their staple.<sup>6</sup> The measure was 1628.  
defeated by the firmness of the colonists; and the  
monarch was left to issue a new series of proclama- 1631.  
tions, constituting London the sole mart of colonial to-  
bacco;<sup>7</sup> till, vainly attempting to regulate the trade,<sup>8</sup> 1633.  
he declared "his will and pleasure to have the sole 1634.  
preëmption of all the tobacco" of the English planta-  
tions.<sup>9</sup> He long adhered to his system with resolute 1639.  
pertinacity.<sup>10</sup>

The measures of the Stuarts were ever unsuccessful, because they were directed against the welfare of the colonists, and were not sustained by popular interests in England. After the long-continued efforts which the enterprise of English merchants and the independent spirit of English planters had perseveringly defied, King Charles, on the appointment of Sir William Berkeley, devised the expedient which was destined to become so celebrated. No vessel, laden with colonial commodities, might sail from the harbors of Virginia for any ports but those of England, that the staple of those commodities might be made in the mother country; and all trade with foreign vessels, except in case of necessity, was forbidden.<sup>11</sup> This sys-

<sup>1</sup> March 2, 1626. Ibid. 224  
—230.

<sup>2</sup> Jan. 1627. Rymer, xviii. 831.

<sup>3</sup> Feb. 1627. Ibid. 848.

<sup>4</sup> March, 1627. Ibid. 886.

<sup>5</sup> August, 1627. Ibid. 920

<sup>6</sup> Hening, i. 129 and 134.

<sup>7</sup> Jan. 1631. Rymer, xix. 235.

<sup>8</sup> Ibid. 474 and 522.

<sup>9</sup> June 19. Hazard, i. 375.

<sup>10</sup> August, 1639. Rymer, xx. 348.

<sup>11</sup> Chalmers, 132, 133.

CHAP. tem, which the instructions of Berkeley commanded  
 VI. him to introduce, was ultimately successful; for it sacrificed no rights but those of the colonists, while it identified the interests of the English merchant and the English government, and leagued them together for the oppression of those, who, for more than a century, were too feeble to offer effectual resistance.

1646. The Long Parliament was more just; it attempted  
 Jan. 23. to secure to English shipping the whole carrying trade of the colonies, but with the free consent of the colonies themselves; offering an equivalent, which the legislatures in America were at liberty to reject.<sup>1</sup>

1650. The memorable ordinance of 1650 was a war measure, and extended only to the colonies which had adhered to the Stuarts. All intercourse with them was forbidden, except to those who had a license from parliament or the council of state. Foreigners were rigorously excluded;<sup>2</sup> and this prohibition was designed to continue in force even after the suppression of

1651. all resistance. While, therefore, the navigation act secured to English ships the entire carrying trade with England, in connection with the ordinance of the preceding year, it conferred a monopoly of colonial commerce.

But this state of commercial law was essentially modified by the manner in which the authority of the English commonwealth was established in the Chesapeake. The republican leaders of Great Britain, conducting with true magnanimity, suffered the fever of party to subside, before decisive measures were adopted; and then two of the three commissioners, whom they appointed, were taken from among the planters themselves. The instructions given them were such

Sept.  
26.

<sup>1</sup> Hazard, i. 634, 635.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 636—638.

as Virginians might carry into effect; for they constituted them the pacifiers and benefactors of their country. In case of resistance, the cruelties of war were threatened.<sup>1</sup> If Virginia would but adhere to the commonwealth, she might be the mistress of her own destiny.

What opposition could be made to the parliament, which, in the moment of its power, voluntarily proposed a virtual independence? No sooner had the Guinea frigate anchored in the waters of the Chesapeake, than "all thoughts of resistance were laid aside,"<sup>2</sup> and the colonists, having no motive to contend for a monarch whose fortunes seemed irretrievable, were earnest only to assert the freedom of their own institutions. It marks the character of the Virginians, that they refused to surrender to force, but yielded by a voluntary deed and a mutual compact. It was agreed, upon the surrender, that the "PEOPLE OF VIRGINIA" should have all the liberties of the free-born people of England; should intrust their business, as formerly, to their own grand assembly; should re-

<sup>1</sup> Let the reader consult the instructions themselves, in Thurloe, i. 197, 198, or in Hazard, i. 556—558, rather than the commentary of Chalmers or Grahame.

<sup>2</sup> Clarendon, b. xiii. 466, 467. It is strange how much error has been introduced into Virginia history, and continued, even when means of correcting it were abundant and easy of access. Clarendon relates the matter rightly. See also Strong's Babylon's Fall, 2, 3, and Langford's Refutation, 6, 7. These are all contemporary authorities. Compare also the journals of the Long Parliament for August 31, 1652. So, too, the Act of Surrender, in Hening, i. 363—365, which agrees with the instructions from the Long Parliament. Com-

pare also Ludlow, 149: "This news being brought to Virginia, they submitted also," &c. Clarendon, Strong, Langford, the public acts, Ludlow, all contemporary, do not disagree. Beverley wrote in the next century; and his account is, therefore, less to be relied on. Besides, it is in itself improbable. How could Dutch merchantmen have awaited an English squadron? The Netherlands had no liberty to trade with Virginia; and Dutch ships would at once have been seized as prizes. Virginia had doubtless been "whole for monarchy;" but monarchy in England seemed at an end. Of modern writers, Godwin, History of the Commonwealth, iii. 280, discerned the truth.

1652.  
Mar.

VI.

CHAP. main unquestioned for their past loyalty; and should  
<sup>VI.</sup>  
 have "as free trade as the people of England." No  
 1652. taxes, no customs, might be levied, except by their  
 own representatives; no forts erected, no garrisons  
 maintained, but by their own consent.<sup>1</sup> In the settle-  
 ment of the government, the utmost harmony prevailed  
 between the burgesses and the commissioners: it was  
 the governor and council only, who had any apprehen-  
 sions for their safety, and who scrupulously provided a  
 guaranty for the security of their persons and proper-  
 ty, which there evidently had existed no design to  
 injure.

These terms, so favorable to liberty, and almost con-  
 ceding independence, were faithfully observed till the  
 restoration. Historians have, indeed, drawn gloomy  
 pictures of the discontent which pervaded the colony,  
 and have represented that discontent as heightened by  
 commercial oppression.<sup>2</sup> The statement is a fiction.  
 The colony of Virginia enjoyed liberties as large as  
 the favored New England; displayed an equal degree  
 of fondness for popular sovereignty, and fearlessly  
 exercised political independence.<sup>3</sup> There had long  
 existed a republican party; and, now that monarchy  
 had fallen, on whom could the royalists rely so safely  
 as on themselves? The executive officers became  
 elective; and so evident were the designs of all parties  
 to promote an amicable settlement of the government,

<sup>1</sup> Hening, i. 363—365, and 367, 368. Jefferson's Notes on Virginia. Hazard, i. 560—564. Burk, ii. 85—91.

<sup>2</sup> Beverley, Chalmers, Robertson, Marshall. Even the accurate and learned Holmes has transmitted the error. Compare Jared Sparks, in North American Review; xx. new series, 433—436.

<sup>3</sup> Compare, for example, Dutch

Records, at Albany, xxiv. 302, where Berkeley writes like an independent sovereign. "Whatsoever the noble Sir Harry Moody, in his excellent judgment, shall think fit to be done for the good of both colonies, we, on our part, shall firmly ratify." May 17, 1660. The same spirit had prevailed for years. Albany Records, iv. 165.

that Richard Bennett, himself a commissioner of the parliament, and, moreover, a merchant and a Roundhead, was, on the recommendation of the other commissioners, unanimously chosen governor.<sup>1</sup> The oath required of the burgesses made it their paramount duty to provide for "the general good and prosperity" of Virginia and its inhabitants.<sup>2</sup> Under the administration of Berkeley, Bennett had been driven from Virginia; and now not the slightest effort at revenge was attempted.<sup>3</sup>

The act which constituted the government, claimed for the assembly the privilege of defining the powers which were to belong to the governor and council; and the public good was declared to require, "that the right of electing all officers of this colony should appertain to the burgesses," as to "the representatives of the people."<sup>4</sup> It had been usual for the governor and council to sit in the assembly; the expediency of the measure was questioned, and a temporary compromise ensued; they retained their former right, but were required to take the oath which was administered to the burgesses.<sup>5</sup> Thus the house of burgesses acted as a convention of the people; exercising supreme authority, and distributing power as the public welfare required.<sup>6</sup>

Nor was this an accidental and transient arrangement. Cromwell never made any appointments for Virginia; not one governor acted under his commis-

<sup>1</sup> Hening, i. 371. See Stith, 199, who tells the story rightly.—Strange, that historians would not take a hint from the accurate Stith!

<sup>2</sup> Hening, i. 371.

<sup>3</sup> Langford's Refutation, 3. That Bennett was a Roundhead is indisputable. The contemporary au-

thorities are Strong's Babylon's Fall, i. 7, and 10; Langford's Refutation, 3; Hammond's Leah and Rachel, 21. These, taken together, are conclusive. Bennett was of the council in 1646. Hening, i. 322.

<sup>4</sup> Hening, i. 372.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid. 373.

<sup>6</sup> Hening's note, i. 369.

CHAP. sion.<sup>1</sup> When Bennett retired from office, the assembly  
 VI. itself elected his successor; and Edward Diggs, who  
 1655. had before been chosen of the council,<sup>2</sup> and who "had  
 Mar. 31. given a signal testimony of his fidelity to Virginia, and  
 to the commonwealth of England,"<sup>3</sup> received the suf-  
 frages.<sup>4</sup> The commissioners in the colony<sup>5</sup> were  
 rather engaged in settling the affairs and adjusting the  
 boundaries of Maryland, than in controlling the desti-  
 nies of Virginia.

The right of electing the governor continued to be claimed by the representatives of the people,<sup>6</sup> and "worthy Samuel Matthews, an old planter, of nearly forty years' standing," who had been "a most deserving commonwealth's man, kept a good house, lived 1658. bravely, and was a true lover of Virginia,"<sup>7</sup> was next honored with the office. But the worthy old gentleman had too exalted ideas of his station, and, in conjunction with the council, become involved in an unequal contest with the very assembly by which he had been elected. The burgesses had enlarged their power by excluding the governor and council from their sessions, and, having thus reserved to themselves the first free discussion of every law, had voted an adjournment till November. The governor and council, April 1. by message, declared the dissolution of the assembly. The legality of the dissolution was denied;<sup>8</sup> and, after an oath of secrecy, every burgess was enjoined not to betray his trust by submission. Matthews yielded, reserving a right of appeal to the protector.<sup>9</sup> When the house unanimously voted the governor's answer unsatisfactory, he expressly revoked the order

<sup>1</sup> Hening, i. Preface, 13.

<sup>6</sup> Hening, i. 431.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 388. November, 1654.

<sup>7</sup> ii. Mass. Hist. Coll. ix. 119.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. i. 388.

<sup>8</sup> Hening's note, i. 430.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. 408. Compare Hening, i. 5, and also 426.

<sup>9</sup> Hening, i. 496, 497; and 500, 501.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid. 428 and 432. Haz. i. 594.

of dissolution, but still referred the decision of the dispute to Cromwell. The members of the assembly, apprehensive of a limitation of colonial liberty by the reference of a political question to England, determined on a solemn assertion of their independent powers. A committee was appointed, of which John Carter, of Lancaster, was the chief; and a complete declaration of popular sovereignty was solemnly made. The governor and council had ordered the dissolution of the assembly; the burgesses now decreed the former election of governor and council to be void. Having thus exercised, not merely the right of election, but the more extraordinary right of removal, they re-elected Matthews, "who by us," they add, "shall be invested with all the just rights and privileges belonging to the governor and captain-general of Virginia." The governor submitted, and acknowledged the validity of his ejection by taking the new oath, which had just been prescribed. The council was organized anew; and the spirit of popular liberty established all its claims.<sup>1</sup>

The death of Cromwell made no change in the constitution of the colony. The message of the governor duly announced the event to the legislature.<sup>2</sup> It has pleased some English historians to ascribe to Virginia a precipitate attachment to Charles II. On the present occasion, the burgesses deliberated in private, and unanimously resolved that Richard Cromwell should be acknowledged.<sup>3</sup> But it was a more interesting question, whether the change of protector in England would endanger liberty in Virginia. The letter from the council had left the government to be

<sup>1</sup> Hening, i. 504, 505.

<sup>2</sup> See the names of the mem-

bers, in Hening, v. i. p. 506, 507.

<sup>3</sup> Hening, i. 511. Mar. 1659.

CHAP. administered according to former usage. The assembly declared itself satisfied with the language.<sup>1</sup> But, 1659. that there might be no reason to question the existing usage, the governor was summoned to come to the house; where he appeared in person, deliberately acknowledged the supreme power of electing officers to be, by the present laws, resident in the assembly, and pledged himself to join in addressing the new protector for special confirmation of all existing privileges. The reason for this extraordinary proceeding is assigned; "that what was their privilege now, might be the privilege of their posterity."<sup>2</sup> The frame of the Virginia government was deemed worthy of being transmitted to remote generations.

1660. On the death of Matthews, the Virginians were without a chief magistrate, just at the time when the resignation of Richard had left England without a government. Mar. The burgesses, who were immediately convened, resolving to become the arbiters of the fate of the colony, enacted, "that the supreme power of the government of this country shall be resident in the assembly; and all writs shall issue in its name, until there shall arrive from England a commission, which the assembly itself shall adjudge to be lawful."<sup>3</sup> This being done, Sir William Berkeley was elected governor; <sup>4</sup> and, acknowledging the validity of the acts of the burgesses, whom, it was expressly agreed, he could in no event dissolve, he accepted the office, and recognized, without a scruple, the authority to which he owed his elevation. "I am," said he, "but a servant of the assembly."<sup>5</sup> Virginia did not lay claim

<sup>1</sup> Hening, i. 511.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 511, 512.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 530, Act 1. Mar. 1660.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. 530, 531, and 5.

<sup>5</sup> Smith's New York, 27.

to absolute independence, but, awaiting the settlement CHAP.  
of affairs in England, hoped for the Restoration of VI.  
the Stuarts.<sup>1</sup>

1660.

The legislation of the colony had taken its character from the condition of the people, who were essentially agricultural in their pursuits ; and it is the interest of society in that state to discountenance contracting debts. Severe laws for the benefit of the creditor are the fruits of commercial society ; Virginia possessed not one considerable town, and her statutes favored the independence of the planter, rather than the security of trade. The representatives of colonial landholders voted “ the total ejection of mercenary attorneys.”<sup>2</sup> By a special act, emigrants were safe against suits designed to enforce engagements that had been made in Europe ;<sup>3</sup> and colonial obligations might be easily satisfied by a surrender of property.<sup>4</sup> Tobacco was generally used instead of coin. Theft was hardly known, and the spirit of the criminal law was mild. The highest judicial tribunal was the assembly, which was convened once a year, or oftener.<sup>5</sup> Already large landed proprietors were frequent ; and plantations of two thousand acres were not unknown.<sup>6</sup>

During the suspension of the royal government in England, Virginia attained unlimited liberty of commerce, which she regulated by independent laws. The ordinance of 1650 was rendered void by the act of capitulation ; the navigation act of Cromwell was not designed for her oppression,<sup>7</sup> and was not enforced within her borders. If an occasional confiscation took

<sup>1</sup> Hening's note, i. 526—529.

<sup>6</sup> Virginia's Cure, 2 and 8. Sad

<sup>2</sup> Hening, i. 275. 302. 313. 349.

State, 9.

419. 482. 495 ; and Preface, 18.

<sup>7</sup> The commerce between the

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 256, 257.

Dutch and Virginia was hardly in-

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. 294.

terrupted.

<sup>5</sup> Hammond, 13. Sad State, 21.

CHAP. VI. place, it was done by the authority of the colonial assembly.<sup>1</sup> The war between England and Holland did not wholly interrupt the intercourse of the Dutch with the English colonies; and if, after the treaty of peace, the trade was considered contraband, the English restrictions were entirely disregarded.<sup>2</sup> A remonstrance, addressed to Cromwell, demanded an unlimited liberty; and we may suppose that it was not refused; for, some months before Cromwell's death, Mar. 1658. the Virginians "invited the Dutch and all foreigners" to trade with them, on payment of no higher duty than that which was levied on such English vessels as were bound for a foreign port.<sup>3</sup> Proposals of peace and commerce between New Netherlands and Virginia were discussed without scruple by the respective colonial governments;<sup>4</sup> and at last a special statute of Virginia extended to every Christian nation, in amity with England, a promise of liberty to trade and equal justice.<sup>5</sup> At the restoration, Virginia enjoyed freedom of commerce with the whole world.

Religious liberty advanced under the influence of independent domestic legislation. No churches had been erected except in the heart of the colony;<sup>6</sup> and there were so few ministers, that a bounty was offered

<sup>1</sup> Hening, i. 382, 383.

<sup>2</sup> Thurloe, v. 80. Hazard, i. 599—602.

<sup>3</sup> Hening, i. 469.

<sup>4</sup> The statements in this paragraph derive ample confirmation from the very copious Dutch Records at Albany, iv. 91; ix. 57—59; iv. 96, 122, 165, 198; particularly iv. 211, where the rumor of an intended prohibition of Dutch trade in Virginia is alluded to in a letter from the W. I. Co. to Stuyvesant. That was in 1656, precisely at the time referred to in the rambling complaint in Hazard, i. 600, and

still more in the very rare little volume by L. G. "Public Good without Private Interest, or a Compendious Remonstrance of the Present Sad State and Condition of the English Colonie in Virginea; 1657;" p. 13, 14. The prohibition alluded to is not in the Navigation Act of St. John, nor did any such go into effect. See Albany Records, iv. 236. The very rare tract of L. G., I obtained through the kindness of John Brown, of Providence.

<sup>5</sup> Smith, 27. Hening, i. 450.

<sup>6</sup> Norwood, in Churchill, vi. 186.

for their importation.<sup>1</sup> Conformity had, in the reign of <sup>CHAP.</sup>  
<sup>VI.</sup> Charles, been enforced by measures of disfranchisement ~~and exile~~<sup>1658.</sup>  
and exile.<sup>2</sup> By the people under the commonwealth,  
though they were attached to the church of their  
fathers, all things respecting parishes and parishioners <sup>Mar.</sup>  
were referred to their own ordering;<sup>3</sup> and religious <sup>1.</sup>  
liberty would have been perfect, but for an act of  
intolerance, by which all Quakers were banished, and  
their return regarded as a felony.<sup>4</sup>

Virginia was the first state in the world, composed  
of separate boroughs, diffused over an extensive sur-  
face, where the government was organized on the  
principle of universal suffrage. All freemen, without  
exception, were entitled to vote. An attempt was <sup>1655.</sup>  
once made to limit the right to house-keepers;<sup>5</sup> but  
the public voice reproved the restriction; the very  
next year, it was decided to be "hard, and unagreea- <sup>1656.</sup>  
ble to reason, that any person shall pay equal taxes,  
and yet have no votes in elections;" and the electoral  
franchise was restored to all freemen.<sup>6</sup> Servants,  
when the time of their bondage was completed, at  
once became electors, and might be chosen bur-  
gesses.<sup>7</sup>

Thus Virginia established upon her soil the su-  
premacy of the popular branch, the freedom of trade,  
the independence of religious societies, the security  
from foreign taxation, and the universal elective  
franchise. If, in following years, she departed from  
either of these principles, and yielded a reluctant  
consent to change, it was from the influence of foreign

<sup>1</sup> Hening, i. 418.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid. Preface, 19, 20, and 412,

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. i. 123, 144, 149, 155, 180.  
240, 268, 269, 277.

<sup>6</sup> Act 7. March, 1655.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 433, Act 1. 1658.

<sup>7</sup> Ibid. i. 403, Act 16.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. i. 532, 533.

<sup>8</sup> Virginia's Cure, p. 18. Sad  
State, p. 4.

**CHAP. VI.** authority. Virginia had herself, almost unconsciously, established a nearly independent democracy; and already preferred her own sons for places of authority.<sup>1</sup> The country felt itself honored by those who were "Virginians born;"<sup>2</sup> and emigrants never again desired to live in England.<sup>3</sup> Prosperity advanced with freedom; dreams of new staples and infinite wealth were indulged;<sup>4</sup> while the population of Virginia, at the epoch of the restoration, may have been about thirty thousand. Many of the recent emigrants had been royalists in England, good officers in the war, men of education, of property, and of condition. The revolution had not subdued their characters; but the waters of the Atlantic divided them from the political strifes of Europe; their industry was employed in making the best advantage of their plantations; the interests and liberties of Virginia, the land which they adopted as their country, were dearer to them than the monarchical principles which they had espoused in England;<sup>5</sup> and therefore no bitterness could exist between the firmest partisans of the Stuarts and the friends of republican liberty. Virginia had long been the home of its inhabitants. "Among many other blessings," said their statute-book,<sup>6</sup> "God Almighty hath vouchsafed increase of children to this colony; who are now multiplied to a considerable number;" and the huts in the wilderness were as full as the birds-nests of the woods.

<sup>1</sup> Hammond's Leah and Rachel, 466, 467. Walsh's Appeal, p. 31. p. 15.

<sup>2</sup> Thurloe, ii. 274.

<sup>3</sup> Hammond, 8.

<sup>4</sup> E. Williams, Virginia, and Virginia's Discovery of Silk-worms, 1650.

<sup>5</sup> Clarendon, b. xiii. v. iii. p.

<sup>6</sup> Hening, i. 336. "A very numerous generation of Christian children born in Virginia, who naturally are of beautiful and comely persons, and generally of more ingenious spirits than those of England." Virginia's Cure, 5.

The genial climate and transparent atmosphere delighted those who had come from the denser air of England. Every object in nature was new and wonderful. The loud and frequent thunder-storms were phenomena that had been rarely witnessed in the colder summers of the north ; the forests, majestic in their growth, and free from underwood, deserved admiration for their unrivalled magnificence ; the purling streams and the frequent rivers, flowing between alluvial banks, quickened the ever-pregnant soil into an unwearyed fertility ; the strangest and the most delicate flowers grew familiarly in the fields ; the woods were replenished with sweet barks and odors ; the gardens matured the fruits of Europe, of which the growth was invigorated and the flavor improved by the activity of the virgin mould. Especially the birds, with their gay plumage and varied melodies, inspired delight ; every traveller expressed his pleasure in listening to the mocking-bird, which caroled a thousand several tunes, imitating and excelling the notes of all its rivals. The humming-bird, so brilliant in its plumage, and so delicate in its form, quick in motion, yet not fearing the presence of man, haunting about the flowers like the bee gathering honey, rebounding from the blossoms into which it dips its bill, and as soon returning “to renew its many addresses to its delightful objects,” was ever admired as the smallest and the most beautiful of the feathered race. The rattlesnake, with the terrors of its alarms and the power of its venom ; the opossum, soon to become as celebrated for the care of its offspring as the fabled pelican ; the noisy frog, booming from the shallows like the English bittern ; the flying squirrel ; the myriads of pigeons, darkening the air with the immensity of their flocks,

CHAP. VI. and, as men believed, breaking with their weight the boughs of trees on which they alighted,—were all honored with frequent commemoration, and became the subjects of the strangest tales. The concurrent relation of all the Indians justified the belief, that, within ten days' journey towards the setting of the sun, there was a country where gold might be washed from the sand, and where the natives themselves had learned the use of the crucible ;<sup>1</sup> but definite and accurate as were the accounts, inquiry was always baffled ; and the regions of gold remained for two centuries an undiscovered land.

Various were the employments by which the calmness of life was relieved. George Sandys, an idle man, who had been a great traveller, and who did not remain in America, a poet, whose verse was tolerated by Dryden and praised by Izaak Walton, beguiled the ennui of his seclusion by translating the whole of Ovid's *Metamorphoses*.<sup>2</sup> To the man of leisure, the chase furnished a perpetual resource. It was not long before the horse was multiplied in Virginia ; and to improve that noble animal was early an object of pride, soon to be favored by legislation. Speed was especially valued ; and “the planter's pace” became a proverb.

Equally proverbial was the hospitality of the Virginians. Labor was valuable ; land was cheap ; competence promptly followed industry. There was no need of a scramble ; abundance gushed from the earth for all. The morasses were alive with water-fowl ; the creeks abounded with oysters, heaped together in inexhaustible beds ; the rivers were crowded with

<sup>1</sup> E. Williams, *Virginia, &c.* 17.   <sup>2</sup> Rymer, xviii. 676, 677. Wal-Comp. *Silliman's Journal*, on the ton's Hooker, 32. mines of N. C. xxiii. 8, 9.

fish ; the forests were nimble with game ; the woods CHAP.  
<sup>VI.</sup> rustled with coveys of quails and wild turkeys, while ——  
they rung with the merry notes of the singing-birds ;  
and hogs, swarming like vermin, ran at large in troops.  
It was “the best poor man’s country in the world.”  
“If a happy peace be settled in poor England,” it had  
been said, “then they in Virginia shall be as happy a  
people as any under heaven.”<sup>1</sup> But plenty encour-  
aged indolence. No domestic manufactures were es-  
tablished ; every thing was imported from England.  
The chief branch of industry, for the purpose of ex-  
changes, was tobacco-planting ; and the spirit of in-  
vention was enfeebled by the uniformity of pursuit.

<sup>1</sup> ii. Mass. Hist. Coll. ix. 116. 106. Hammond’s Leah and Rachel, 9,  
10, 5.

## CHAPTER VII.

## COLONIZATION OF MARYLAND.

CHAP. VII. THE limits of Virginia, by its second charter, extended two hundred miles north of Old Point Comfort, and therefore included all the soil which subsequently formed the state of Maryland. It was not long before the country towards the head of the Chesapeake was explored; settlements in Accomack were extended; and commerce was begun with the tribes which Smith had been the first to visit. Porey, the 1621. secretary of the colony, "made a discovery into the great bay," as far as the River Patuxent, which he ascended; but his voyage probably reached no farther to the north. The English settlement of a hundred men, which he is represented to have found already established,<sup>1</sup> was rather a consequence of his voyage, and seems to have been on the eastern shore, perhaps within the limits of Virginia.<sup>2</sup> The hope "of a very good trade of furs," animated the adventurers; and if the plantations advanced but slowly, there is yet evidence, that commerce with the Indians was earnestly pursued under the sanction of the colonial government.<sup>3</sup>

An attempt was made to obtain a monopoly of this commerce<sup>4</sup> by William Clayborne, whose resolute and

<sup>1</sup> Chalmers, 206.

1635. Smith's History of Virginia,

<sup>2</sup> Purchas, iv. 1784. Smith, ii. ii. 63 and 95.  
61—64.

<sup>4</sup> Rel. of Maryland, 1635, p. 10.

<sup>3</sup> Relation of Maryland, 4; ed.

enterprising spirit was destined to exert a powerful <sup>CHAP.</sup>  
 and long-continued influence. His first appearance in <sup>VII.</sup>  
~~—~~ America was as a surveyor,<sup>1</sup> sent by the London com- <sup>1621.</sup>  
 pany to make a map of the country. At the fall of the  
 corporation, he had been appointed by King James a <sup>1624.</sup>  
 member of the council;<sup>2</sup> and, on the accession of  
 Charles, was continued in office, and, in repeated com- <sup>1625.</sup>  
 missions, was nominated secretary of state.<sup>3</sup> At the <sup>1627</sup>  
 same time, he received authority from the governors <sup>to</sup> <sup>1629.</sup>  
 of Virginia to discover the source of the Bay of the  
 Chesapeake, and, indeed, any part of that province,  
 from the thirty-fourth to the forty-first degree of lati-  
 tude.<sup>4</sup> It was, therefore, natural that he should be-  
 come familiar with the opportunities for traffic which  
 the country afforded; and the jurisdiction and the set-  
 tlement of Virginia seemed about to extend to the  
 forty-first parallel of latitude, which was then the  
 boundary of New England. Upon his favorable rep-  
 resentation, a company was formed in England for  
 trading with the natives; and, through the agency of <sup>1631.</sup>  
 Sir William Alexander, the Scottish proprietary of <sup>May</sup> <sup>16.</sup>  
 Nova Scotia, a royal license was issued, sanctioning  
 the commerce, and conferring on Clayborne powers  
 of government over the companions of his voyages.<sup>5</sup>  
 Harvey enforced the commands of his sovereign, and <sup>1632.</sup>  
 confirmed the license by a colonial commission.<sup>6</sup> The <sup>Mar.</sup> <sup>8.</sup>  
 Dutch plantations were esteemed to border upon Vir-  
 ginia. After long experience as a surveyor, and after  
 years employed in discoveries, Clayborne, now acting  
 under the royal license, formed establishments, not  
 only on Kent Island, in the heart of Maryland, but

<sup>1</sup> Hening, i. 116.

<sup>4</sup> Papers in Chalmers, 227.

<sup>2</sup> Hazard, i. 189.

<sup>5</sup> Chalmers, 227, 228.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 234 and 239.

<sup>6</sup> Ibid. 228, 229.

CHAP. also near the mouth of the Susquehannah.<sup>1</sup> Thus the  
 VII. colony of Virginia anticipated the extension of its  
 commerce and its limits; and, as mistress of all the  
 vast and commodious waters of the Chesapeake, and  
 of the soil on both sides of the Potomac, indulged the  
 hope of obtaining the most brilliant commercial suc-  
 cess, and rising into powerful opulence, without the  
 competition of a rival.

It was the peculiar fortune of the United States,  
 that they were severally colonized by men, in origin,  
 religious faith, and purposes, as various as the climes  
 which are included within their limits. Before Vir-  
 ginia could complete its settlements, and confirm its  
 claims to jurisdiction over the country north of the Po-  
 tomac, a new government was erected, on a founda-  
 tion as extraordinary as its results were benevolent.  
 Sir George Calvert had early become interested in col-  
 onial establishments in America. A native of York-  
 shire,<sup>2</sup> educated at Oxford,<sup>3</sup> with a mind enlarged by  
 extensive travel, on his entrance into life befriended  
 by Sir Robert Cecil, advanced to the honors of knight-  
 hood, and at length employed as one of the two secre-  
 taries of state,<sup>4</sup> he not only secured the consideration  
 of his patron and his sovereign,<sup>5</sup> but the good opinion  
 of the world. He was chosen by an immense major-  
 ity to represent in parliament his native county of  
 Yorkshire.<sup>6</sup> His knowledge of business, his industry,  
 and his fidelity, are acknowledged by all historians.  
 In an age when religious controversy still continued

<sup>1</sup> Hazard, i. 430. Relation of Maryland, 34. Thurloe, v. 486. Hazard, i. 630. Maryland Papers, in Chalmers, 293.

<sup>2</sup> Fuller's Worthies, 201.

<sup>3</sup> Wood's *Athenæ Oxonienses*, 522, 523.

<sup>4</sup> Stow, edition of 1631, p. 1031.

<sup>5</sup> Winwood, ii. 58, and iii. 318 and 337.

<sup>6</sup> Debates of 1620 and 1621, i. 175.

to be active, and when the increasing divisions among Protestants were spreading a general alarm, his mind sought relief from controversy in the bosom of the Roman Catholic church; and, preferring the avowal of his opinions to the emoluments of office, he resigned 1624. his place, and openly professed his conversion. King James was never bitter against the Catholics, who respected his pretensions as a monarch; Calvert retained his place in the privy council, and was advanced to the dignity of an Irish peerage. He had, from early life, shared in the general enthusiasm of England in favor of American plantations; he had been a member of the great company for Virginia; and, while secretary of state, he had obtained a special patent for the southern promontory of Newfoundland. How zealous he was in selecting suitable emigrants; how earnest to promote habits of domestic order and economical industry; how lavishly he expended his estate in advancing the interests of his settlement on the rugged shores of Avalon,<sup>1</sup>—is related by those who have written of his life. He desired, as a founder of a colony, not present profit, but a reasonable expectation; and, perceiving the evils of a common stock, he cherished enterprise by leaving each one to enjoy the results of his own industry. But numerous difficulties prevented success in Newfoundland: parliament had ever asserted the freedom of the fisheries,<sup>2</sup> which his grants tended to impair; the soil and the climate proved less favorable than had been described in the glowing and deceptive pictures of his early agents; and the incessant danger of attacks from the French,

<sup>1</sup> Whitbourne's Newfoundland, *Athenæ Oxonienses*, ii. 522, 523; in the Cambridge library. Also Lloyd's State Worthies, in Biog. Purchas, iv. 1882—1891; Collier on Calvert; Fuller's Worthies of Yorkshire, 201, 202; Wood's Brit. article Calvert; Chalmers, 201, 2 Chalmers, 84, 100, 114, 115, 116, 130.

CHAP. VII. who were possessed of the circumjacent continent, spread a gloom over the future. Twice, it is said, did Lord Baltimore, in person, visit his settlement; with ships, manned at his own charge, he repelled the French, who were hovering round the coast with the design of annoying the English fishermen; and, having taken sixty of them prisoners, he secured a temporary tranquillity to his countrymen and his colonists. But, notwithstanding this success, he found all hopes of a thriving plantation in Avalon to be vain. Why should the English emigrate to a rugged and inhospitable island, surrounded by a hostile power, when the hardships of colonizing the milder regions of Virginia had already been encountered, and a peaceful home might now be obtained without peril?

Lord Baltimore looked to Virginia, of which the climate, the fertility, and the advantages, were so much extolled. Yet, as a Papist, he could hardly expect a hospitable welcome in a colony from which the careful exclusion<sup>1</sup> of Roman Catholics had been originally avowed as a special object, and where the statutes of the provincial legislature, as well as the commands of the sovereign, aimed at a perpetual religious uniformity. When Lord Baltimore visited Virginia in person, the zeal of the assembly immediately ordered the oaths of allegiance and supremacy to be tendered him. It was in vain that he proposed a form which he was willing to subscribe; the government firmly insisted upon that which had been chosen by the English statutes, and which was purposely framed in such language as no Catholic could adopt. A letter was transmitted from the assembly to the privy council, explanatory of the dispute which had grown out

<sup>1</sup> Hazard, i. 72.

of the intolerance of European legislation.<sup>1</sup> It was evident that Lord Baltimore could never hope for quiet in any attempt at establishing a colony within the jurisdiction of Virginia.

But the country beyond the Potomac seemed to be as yet untenanted by any but the scattered hordes of the native tribes. The French, the Dutch, and the Swedes, were preparing to occupy the country; and a grant seemed the readiest mode of securing the soil by an English settlement.<sup>2</sup> The canceling of the Virginia patents had restored to the monarch the ample authority of his prerogative over the soil; he might now sever a province from the colony, to which he had at first assigned a territory so vast; and it was not difficult for Calvert—a man of such moderation, that all parties were taken with him;<sup>3</sup> sincere in his character, disengaged from all interests, and a favorite with the royal family—to obtain a charter for domains in that happy clime. The nature of the document itself, and concurrent opinion, leave no room to doubt that it was penned by the first Lord Baltimore himself, although it was finally issued for the benefit of his son.

The fundamental charter<sup>4</sup> of the colony of Maryland, however it may have neglected to provide for the power of the king, was the sufficient frank pledge of the liberties of the colonist, not less than of the rights and interests of the proprietary. The ocean, the fortieth parallel of latitude, the meridian of the western

<sup>1</sup> Ancient Records, in Burk, ii. 24—27.

<sup>2</sup> Hammond's Leah and Rachel, 19.

<sup>3</sup> Collier on Calvert.

<sup>4</sup> The charter may be found in Hazard, i. 327—337; in Bacon's

Laws of Maryland at Large. It is appended in English to the Relation of Maryland, 1635. It has been commented upon by Chalmers, 202—205; very diffusely by McMahon, 133—183; by Story, i. 92—94; and many others.

June 20.

CHAP. fountain of the Potomac, the river itself from its source  
VII. to its mouth, and a line drawn due east from Watkin's  
1632. Point to the Atlantic,—these were the limits of the territory, which was now erected into a province, and from Henrietta Maria, the daughter of Henry IV. and wife of Charles I., whose restless mind, disdaining contentment in domestic happiness, aspired to every kind of power and distinction, received the name of Maryland. The country thus described was given to Lord Baltimore, his heirs and assigns, as to its absolute lord and proprietary, to be holden by the tenure of fealty only, paying a yearly rent of two Indian arrows, and a fifth of all gold and silver ore which might be found. Yet the absolute authority was conceded rather with reference to the crown, than the colonists ; for the charter, unlike any patent which had hitherto passed the great seal of England, secured to the emigrants themselves an independent share in the legislation of the province, of which the statutes were to be established with the advice and approbation of the majority of the freemen or their deputies. Representative government was indissolubly connected with the fundamental charter ; and it was especially provided, that the authority of the absolute proprietary should not extend to the life, freehold, or estate of any emigrant. These were the features which endeared the proprietary government to the people of Maryland ; and, but for these, the patent would have been as worthless as those of the London company, of Warwick, of Gorges, or of Mason. It is a singular fact, that the only proprietary charters, productive of considerable emolument to their owners, were those which conceded popular liberty. Sir George Calvert was a Roman Catholic ; yet, far from guarding his territory against any but those of his

persuasion, as he had taken from himself and his successors all arbitrary power, by establishing the legislative franchises of the people, so he took from them the means of being intolerant in religion, by securing to all present and future liege people of the English king, without distinction of sect or party, free leave to transport themselves and their families to Maryland. Christianity was by the charter made the law of the land, but no preference was given to any sect; and equality in religious rights, not less than in civil freedom, was assured. A monopoly of the fisheries had formerly been earnestly resisted by the commons of England: to avoid all dispute on this point, Calvert, in his charter, expressly renounced any similar claim. As a Catholic, he needed to be free from the jurisdiction of his neighbor; Maryland was carefully separated from Virginia, nor was he obliged to obtain the royal assent to the appointments or the legislation of his province, nor even to make a communication of the results. So far was the English monarch from reserving any right of superintendence in the colony, he left himself without the power to take cognizance of what transpired; and, by an express stipulation, covenanted, that neither he, nor his heirs, nor his successors, should ever, at any time thereafter, set any imposition, custom, or tax, whatsoever, upon the inhabitants of the province. Thus was conferred on Maryland an exemption from English taxation forever. Sir George Calvert was a man of sagacity, and an observing statesman. He had beheld the arbitrary administration of the colonies; and, against any danger of future oppression, he provided the strongest defence which the promise of a monarch could afford. Some other rights were conferred on the proprietary—the ad-

CHAP.  
VII.

CHAP. <sup>VII.</sup> ~~vowson~~ of churches ; the power of creating manors and  
~~~ courts baron, and of establishing a colonial aristocracy  
1632. on the system of sub-infeudation. But these things  
were practically of little moment. Even in Europe,  
feudal institutions appeared like the decrepitude of age  
amidst the vigor and enterprise of a new and more  
peaceful civilization , they could not be perpetuated in  
the lands of their origin ; far less could they renew  
their youth in America. Sooner might the oldest oaks  
in Windsor forest be transplanted across the Atlantic,  
than the social forms, which Europe itself was begin-  
ning to reject as antiquated and rotten. But the seeds  
of popular liberty, contained in the charter, would find,  
in the New World, the very soil best suited to quicken  
them into life and fruitfulness.

Calvert deserves to be ranked among the most wise  
and benevolent lawgivers of all ages. He was the  
first in the history of the Christian world to seek for  
religious security and peace by the practice of justice,  
and not by the exercise of power ; to plan the estab-  
lishment of popular institutions with the enjoyment of  
liberty of conscience ; to advance the career of civiliza-  
tion by recognizing the rightful equality of all Chris-  
tian sects. The asylum of Papists was the spot,  
where, in a remote corner of the world, on the banks  
of rivers which, as yet, had hardly been explored, the  
mild forbearance of a proprietary adopted religious  
freedom as the basis of the state.

April  
15. Before the patent could be finally adjusted and pass  
the great seal, Sir George Calvert died,<sup>1</sup> leaving a  
name against which the breath of calumny has hardly  
whispered a reproach. The petulance of his adversa-

<sup>1</sup> Chalmers, 201.

ries could only taunt him with being “an Hispanio- <sup>CHAP.</sup>  
lized Papist.”<sup>1</sup> His son, Cecil Calvert, succeeded to ~~the~~  
his honors and fortunes. For him, the heir of his fa- <sup>VII.</sup>  
ther’s intentions,<sup>2</sup> not less than of his father’s fortunes, <sup>1632.</sup>  
the charter of Maryland was published and confirmed ;  
and he obtained the high distinction of successfully  
performing what the colonial companies had hardly  
been able to achieve. At a vast expense, he planted  
a colony, which for several generations descended as a  
patrimony to his heirs.

June 20.

Virginia regarded the severing of her territory with <sup>1633.</sup>  
apprehension, and before any colonists had embarked  
under the charter of Baltimore, her commissioners had  
in England remonstrated against the grant as an inva-  
sion of her commercial rights, an infringement on her  
domains, and a discouragement to her planters. In  
Strafford, Lord Baltimore found a friend,—for Strafford  
had been the friend of the father,<sup>3</sup>—and the remon-  
strance was in vain ; the privy council sustained the  
proprietary charter, and, advising the parties to an  
amicable adjustment of all disputes, commanded a free  
commerce and a good correspondence between the re-  
spective colonies.<sup>4</sup>

July 3.

Nor was it long before gentlemen of birth and qual-  
ity resolved to adventure their lives and a good part of  
their fortunes in the enterprise of planting a colony  
under so favorable a charter. Lord Baltimore, who,  
for some unknown reason, abandoned his purpose of  
conducting the emigrants in person, appointed his  
brother to act as his lieutenant ; and, on Friday, the  
twenty-second of November, with a small but favoring  
gale, Leonard Calvert, and about two hundred people,

Nov.  
22.<sup>1</sup> Wilson, in Kennett, iii. 705.<sup>2</sup> The charter asserts it.<sup>3</sup> Chalmers, 209.<sup>4</sup> Hazard, i. 337. Bozman, 381  
and 265. Chalmers, 231.

CHAP. most of them Roman Catholic gentlemen and their ser-  
 VII.  
 ~~~~ vants, in the Ark and the Dove, a ship of large burden,  
 and a pinnace, set sail for the northern bank of the  
 Potomac. Having staid by the way in Barbadoes and  
 1634. St. Christopher, it was not till February of the follow-  
 Feb. 24. ing year, that they arrived at Point Comfort, in Vir-  
 ginia; where, in obedience to the express letters of  
 King Charles, they were welcomed by Harvey with  
 courtesy and humanity. Clayborne also appeared, but  
 it was as a prophet of ill omen, to terrify the company  
 by predicting the fixed hostility of the natives.

Mar. Leaving Point Comfort, Calvert sailed into the Po-  
 tomac;<sup>1</sup> and with the pinnace ascended the stream.  
 A cross was planted on an island, and the country  
 claimed for Christ and for England. At about forty-  
 seven leagues above the mouth of the river, he found  
 the village of Piscataqua, an Indian settlement nearly  
 opposite Mount Vernon. The chieftain of the tribe  
 would neither bid him go nor stay; “he might use his  
 own discretion.” It did not seem safe for the English  
 to plant the first settlement so high up the river; Cal-  
 vert descended the stream, examining, in his barge, the  
 creeks and estuaries nearer the Chesapeake; he en-  
 tered the river which is now called St. Mary’s, and  
 which he named St. George’s; and, about four leagues  
 from its junction with the Potomac, he anchored at the  
 Indian town of Yoacomoco. The native inhabitants,  
 having suffered from the superior power of the Susque-  
 hannahs, who occupied the district between the bays,  
 had already resolved to remove into places of more se-  
 curity in the interior; and many of them had begun to  
 migrate before the English arrived. To Calvert, the  
 spot seemed convenient for a plantation; it was easy,

<sup>1</sup> Winthrop, i. 134.

by presents of cloth and axes, of hoes and knives, to gain the good will of the natives, and to purchase their rights to the soil which they were preparing to abandon. They readily gave consent that the English should immediately occupy one half of their town, and, after the harvest, should become the exclusive tenants of the whole. Mutual promises of friendship and peace were made; so that, upon the twenty-seventh day of March, the Catholics took quiet possession of the little place; and religious liberty obtained a home, its only home in the wide world, at the humble village which bore the name of St. Mary's.

Mar.  
27.

Three days after the landing of Calvert, the Ark and the Dove anchored in the harbor. Sir John Harvey soon arrived on a visit; the native chiefs, also, came to welcome or to watch the emigrants, and were so well received, that they resolved to give perpetuity to their league of amity with the English. The Indian women taught the wives of the new comers to make bread of maize; the warriors of the tribe instructed the huntsmen how rich were the forests of America in game, and joined them in the chase. And, as the season of the year invited to the pursuits of agriculture, and the English had come into possession of ground already subdued, they were able, at once, to possess cornfields and gardens, and prepare the wealth of successful husbandry. Virginia, from its surplus produce, could furnish a temporary supply of food, and all kinds of domestic cattle. No sufferings were endured; no fears of want were excited; the foundation of the colony of Maryland was peacefully and happily laid. Within six months, it had advanced more than Virginia had done in as many years. The proprietary continued with great liberality to provide every thing that was

CHAP. necessary for its comfort and protection, and spared no  
 VII. costs to promote its interests; expending, in the two  
 1634. first years, upwards of forty thousand pounds sterling.<sup>1</sup>  
 But far more memorable was the character of the  
 Maryland institutions. Every other country in the  
 1636 world had persecuting laws; "I will not,"—such was  
 1639. the oath for the governor of Maryland,—"I will not, by  
 myself or any other, directly or indirectly, molest any  
 person professing to believe in Jesus Christ, for or in  
 respect of religion."<sup>2</sup> Under the mild institutions and  
 munificence of Baltimore, the dreary wilderness soon  
 bloomed with the swarming life and activity of pros-  
 perous settlements; the Roman Catholics, who were  
 oppressed by the laws of England, were sure to find a  
 peaceful asylum in the quiet harbors of the Ches-  
 peake; and there, too, Protestants were sheltered  
 against Protestant intolerance.

Such were the beautiful auspices under which the  
 province of Maryland started into being; its prosperity  
 and its peace seemed assured; the interests of its peo-  
 ple and its proprietary were united; and, for some  
 years, its internal peace and harmony were undis-  
 turbed. Its history is the history of benevolence,  
 gratitude, and toleration. No domestic factions dis-  
 turbed its harmony. Every thing breathed peace but  
 Clayborne. Dangers could only grow out of external  
 causes, and were eventually the sad consequences of  
 the revolution in England.

1635. Twelve months had not elapsed before the colony  
 Feb. of Maryland was convened for legislation. Probably  
 all the freemen of the province were present in a  
 strictly popular assembly. The laws of the session

<sup>1</sup> Chalmers, 205—208. McMahon, 196—198.

<sup>2</sup> Chalmers, 235. McMahon, 226.

are no longer extant; but we know, that the necessity of vindicating the jurisdiction of the province against the claims of Clayborne was deemed a subject worthy of the general deliberation and of a decisive act.<sup>1</sup> For he had been roused, by confidence in his power, to resolve on maintaining his possessions by force of arms. The earliest annals of Maryland are defaced by the accounts of a bloody skirmish on one of the rivers near the Isle of Kent. Several lives were lost in the affray; but Clayborne's men were defeated and taken prisoners. Clayborne himself had fled to Virginia; and when he was reclaimed by the government of Maryland, Harvey, though he seems himself to have favored Baltimore, sent the fugitive with the witnesses to England.<sup>2</sup>

When a colonial assembly was next convened, it 1638. passed an act of attainder against Clayborne; for he had not only derided the powers of the proprietary, but had scattered jealousies among the Indians, and infused a spirit of disobedience into the inhabitants of Kent Island. Now that he had fled, his estates were seized, and were declared forfeited to the laws, which he had contemned as invalid.<sup>3</sup> In England, Clayborne attempted to gain a hearing for his wrongs; and, partly by false representations, still more by the influence of Sir William Alexander, succeeded, for a season, in procuring the favorable disposition of Charles. But when the whole affair came to be referred to the commissioners for the plantations, it was found, that, on 1639. received principles, the right of the king to confer April. the soil and the jurisdiction of Maryland could not be

<sup>1</sup> Chalmers, 210 and 232. Bacon, in his *Laws at Large*, makes no mention of this assembly. Ba- 40, 41. Chalmers, 209, 210, 232. McMahon, 12.

<sup>3</sup> Chalmers, 210.

<sup>2</sup> Bozman, 280—282. Burk, ii.

CHAP. VII. controverted ; that the earlier license to traffic did not vest in Clayborne any rights which were valid against the charter ; and therefore that the Isle of Kent belonged absolutely to Lord Baltimore, who alone could permit plantations to be established, or commerce with the Indians to be conducted, within the limits of his territory.<sup>1</sup>

Yet the people of Maryland were not content with vindicating the limits of their province ; they were jealous of their liberties. The charter had secured to them the right of advising and approving in legislation. Did Lord Baltimore alone possess the right of originating laws ? The people of Maryland rejected the code which the proprietary, as if holding the exclusive privilege of proposing statutes, had prepared for their government ; and, asserting their equal rights of legislation, they, in their turn, enacted a body of laws, which they proposed for the assent of the proprietary :—so uniformly active in America was the spirit of popular liberty. How discreetly it was exercised, cannot now be known ; for the laws, which were then enacted, were never ratified, and are therefore not to be found in the provincial records.<sup>2</sup>

1639. In the early history of the United States, nothing is more remarkable than the uniform attachment of each colony to its franchises ; and popular assemblies burst every where into life with a consciousness of their importance, and an immediate capacity for efficient legislation. The first assembly of Maryland had vindicated the jurisdiction of the colony ; the second had asserted its claims to original legislation ; the third,

<sup>1</sup> Bozman, 330—344. Chalmers, Bozman, 299—318, and 324—329  
212. 232—235. McMahon, 145.

<sup>2</sup> Bacon, 1637. Chalmers, 211.

which was now convened, examined its obligations, CHAP.  
and, though not all its acts were carried through the ~~~~~~  
forms essential to their validity, it yet displayed the 1639.  
spirit of the people and the times by framing a declaration  
of rights. Acknowledging the duty of allegiance  
to the English monarch, and securing to Lord  
Baltimore his prerogatives, it likewise confirmed to  
the inhabitants of Maryland all the liberties which an  
Englishman can enjoy at home; established a system  
of representative government; and asserted for the  
general assemblies in the province all such powers as  
may be exercised by the commons of England.<sup>1</sup> Indeed,  
throughout the whole colonial legislation of  
Maryland, the body representing the people, in its  
support of the interests and civil liberties of the province,  
was never guilty of timidity or treachery.<sup>2</sup> It is  
strange that religious bigotry could ever stain the  
statute-book of a colony founded on the basis of the  
freedom of conscience. An apprehension of some re-  
mote danger of persecution seems even then to have  
hovered over the minds of the Roman Catholics; and,  
at this session, they secured to their church its rights  
and liberties. Those rights and those liberties, it is  
plain from the charter, could be no more than the  
tranquil exercise of the Romish worship. The con-  
stitution had not yet attained a fixed form; thus far it  
had been a species of democracy under a hereditary  
patriarch. The act<sup>3</sup> constituting the assembly marks  
the transition to a representative government. At  
this session, any freeman, who had taken no part in  
the election, might attend in person; henceforward,  
the governor might summon his friends by special

<sup>1</sup> Bacon, 1638-9, c. i. ii.  
<sup>2</sup> McMahon, 149.

<sup>3</sup> Bacon, 1638-9, c. i. Griffith's  
Maryland, 7.

CHAP. writ; while the people were to choose as many delegates as "the freemen should think good." As yet there was no jealousy of power, no strife for place. While these laws prepared a frame of government for future generations, we are reminded of the feebleness and poverty of the state, where the whole people were obliged to contribute to "the setting up of a water-mill."<sup>1</sup>

1640. The restoration of the charter of the London company would have endangered the separate existence of Maryland; yet we have seen Virginia, which had ever been jealous of the division of its territory, defeat the attempt to revive the corporation. Meantime, the Oct. legislative assembly of Maryland, in the grateful enjoyment of happiness, seasonably guarded the tranquillity of the province against the perplexities of an "interim," by providing for the security of the government in case of the death of the proprietary. Commerce also was fostered; and tobacco, the staple of the colony, subjected to inspection.

1642. Nor was it long before the inhabitants recognized Mar. 21. Lord Baltimore's "great charge and solicitude in maintaining the government, and protecting them in their persons, rights, and liberties;" and therefore, "out of desire to return some testimony of gratitude," they freely granted "such a subsidy as the young and poor estate of the colony could bear."<sup>2</sup> Maryland, at that day, was unsurpassed for happiness and liberty. Conscience was without restraint; a mild and liberal proprietary conceded every measure which the welfare of the colony required; domestic union, a happy concert between all the branches of government, an in-

<sup>1</sup> Bacon, 1638-9. Chalmers, 213, 214. Griffith, 8.

<sup>2</sup> Bacon, 1641-2, c. v.

creasing emigration, a productive commerce, a fertile soil, which Heaven had richly favored with rivers and deep bays, united to perfect the scene of colonial felicity and contentment. Ever intent on advancing the interests of his colony, Lord Baltimore invited the Puritans of Massachusetts to emigrate to Maryland, offering them lands and privileges, and “free liberty of religion ;” but Gibbons, to whom he had forwarded a commission, was “so wholly tutored in the New England discipline,” that he would not advance the wishes of the Irish peer ; and the people, who subsequently refused Jamaica and Ireland, were not now tempted to desert the Bay of Massachusetts for the Chesapeake.<sup>1</sup>

But secret dangers existed. The aborigines, alarmed at the rapid increase of the Europeans, vexed at being frequently overreached by the cupidity of traders, not yet entirely recovered from the jealousies which the malignant Clayborne had infused, commenced hostilities ; for the Indians, ignorant of the remedy of redress, always plan retaliation. After a war of frontier aggressions, marked by no decisive events, peace was re-established on the usual terms of submission and promises of friendship, and rendered durable by the prudent legislation of the assembly and the firm humanity of the government. The preëmption of the soil was reserved to Lord Baltimore, kidnapping an Indian made a capital offence, and the sale of arms prohibited as a felony.<sup>2</sup> A regulation of intercourse with the natives was the surest preventive of war ; the wrongs of an individual were ascribed to the nation ; the injured savage, ignorant of peaceful justice, panted only for revenge ; and thus

<sup>1</sup> Winthrop, ii. 148, 149.

<sup>2</sup> Bacon, 1649, c. iii. vi.

CHAP. VII. the obscure villany of some humble ruffian, whom the government would willingly punish for his outrages, might involve the colony in the horrors of savage warfare.

1643 But the restless Clayborne, urged, perhaps, by the  
1646. conviction of having been wronged, and still more by the hope of revenge, proved a far more dangerous enemy. Now that the civil war in England left nothing to be hoped from royal patronage, he declared for the popular party, and, with the assistance of one Ingle, who obtained sufficient notoriety to be pro-  
1643. claimed a traitor to the king,<sup>1</sup> he was able to promote a July. rebellion. By the very nature of the proprietary frame of government, the lord paramount could derive physical strength and resources only from his own private fortunes, or from the willing attachment of his lieges. His power depended on a union with his people. In times of peace, this condition was eminently favorable to the progress of liberty; the royal governors were often able, were still more often disposed, to use oppressive and exacting measures; the deputies of the proprietaries were always compelled to struggle for the assertion of the interests of their employer; they could never become successful aggressors on the liberties of the people. Besides, the crown, always jealous of the immense powers which had been carelessly lavished on the proprietary, was usually willing to favor the people in every reasonable effort to improve their condition, or limit the authority of the intermediate sovereign. At present, when the commotions in England left every colony in America almost unheeded, and Virginia and New England were pursuing a course of nearly independent legislation, the power of the proprietary was

<sup>1</sup> Bacon's Preface. Chalmers, 217.

almost as feeble as that of the king. The other colonies took advantage of the period to secure and advance their liberties: in Maryland, the effect was rather to encourage the insubordination of the restless; and Clayborne was able to excite an insurrection. 1644. Early in 1645, the rebels were triumphant; unprepared for an attack, the governor was compelled to fly, and more than a year elapsed before the assistance of the well-disposed could enable him to resume his power and restore tranquillity. The insurgents distinguished the period of their dominion by disorder and misrule, and most of the records were then lost or embezzled.<sup>1</sup> Peace was confirmed by the wise clemency of the government; the offences of the rebellion were concealed by a general amnesty;<sup>2</sup> and the province was rescued, though not without expense,<sup>3</sup> from the distresses and confusion which had followed a short but vindictive and successful insurrection.

The controversy between the king and the parliament advanced; the overthrow of the monarchy seemed about to confer unlimited power in England upon the imbibed enemies of the Romish church; and, as if with a foresight of impending danger, and an earnest desire to stay its approach, the Roman Catholics of Maryland, with the earnest concurrence of their governor and of the proprietary, determined to place upon their statute-book an act for the religious freedom which had ever been sacred on their soil. “And whereas the enforcing of the conscience in matters of religion”—such was the sublime tenor of a part of the statute—“hath frequently fallen out to be of dangerous consequence in those commonwealths where it

<sup>1</sup> Bacon's Preface. Chalmers, 217, 218. Burk, ii. 112. McMan-

<sup>2</sup> Bacon, 1650, c. xxiv.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 1649, c. ix.

CHAP. VII. has been practised, and for the more quiet and peaceable government of this province, and the better to  
 1649. preserve mutual love and amity among the inhabitants, no person within this province, professing to believe in Jesus Christ, shall be any ways troubled, molested, or discountenanced, for his or her religion, or in the free exercise thereof." Thus did the early star of religious freedom appear as the harbinger of day ; though, as it first gleamed above the horizon, its light was colored and obscured by the mists and exhalations of morning. The greatest of English poets, when he represents the ground teeming with living things at the word of the Creator, paints the moment when the forms, so soon to be instinct with perfect life and beauty, are yet emerging from the inanimate earth, and when but

half appeared  
 The tawny lion pawing to get free ;  
 —————— then springs, as broke from bonds,  
 And rampant shakes his brinded mane.

So it was with the freedom of religion in the United States. The clause for liberty in Maryland extended only to Christians, and was introduced by the proviso, that "whatsoever person shall blaspheme God, or shall deny or reproach the Holy Trinity, or any of the three persons thereof, shall be punished with death."<sup>1</sup> No where in the United States is religious opinion now deemed a proper subject for penal enactments. The only fit punishment for error is refutation. God needs no avenger in man. The fool-hardy levity of shallow infidelity proceeds from a morbid passion for notoriety, or the malice that finds pleasure in annoyance. The

<sup>1</sup> These words are omitted in 27—32, and I follow the authentic Bacon's abstract of the law. See document. Compare Hammond's Bacon, 1649, c. i. "A true copy" Leah and Rachel, 20, 21. of the law is printed by Langford,

laws of society should do no more than reprove the CHAP.  
breach of its decorum. Blasphemy is the crime of de- VII.  
spair. One hopeless sufferer commits suicide ; another  
curses Divine Providence for the evil which is in the  
world, and of which he cannot solve the mystery.  
The best medicine for intemperate grief is compas-  
sion ; the keenest rebuke for ribaldry, contempt.

But the design of the law of Maryland was un-  
doubtedly to protect freedom of conscience ; and, some  
years after it had been confirmed, the apologist of Lord  
Baltimore could assert, that his government, in con-  
formity with his strict and repeated injunctions, had  
never given disturbance to any person in Maryland for  
matter of religion ;<sup>1</sup> that the colonists enjoyed freedom  
of conscience, not less than freedom of person and es-  
tate, as amply as ever any people in any place of the  
world.<sup>2</sup> The disfranchised friends of prelacy from  
Massachusetts, and the Puritans from Virginia, were  
welcomed to equal liberty of conscience and political  
rights in the Roman Catholic province of Maryland.<sup>3</sup>

An equal union prevailed between all branches of 1650.  
the government in explaining and confirming the civil April.  
liberties of the colony. In 1642, Robert Vaughan, in  
the name of the rest of the burgesses, had desired,  
that the house might be separated, and thus a negative  
secured to the representatives of the people. Before  
1649, this change had taken place ; and it was con-  
firmed by a statute.<sup>4</sup> The dangerous prerogative of  
declaring martial law was also limited to the precincts  
of the camp and the garrison ;<sup>5</sup> and a perpetual act  
declared, that no tax should be levied upon the free-

<sup>1</sup> Langford, 11.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 5.

<sup>3</sup> Chalmers, 219. Langford, 3.  
Hammond, 20.

<sup>4</sup> Bacon, 1649, c. xii., and note,  
1650, c. i.

<sup>5</sup> Bacon, 1650, c. xxvi.

CHAP. men of the province, except by the vote of their dep-  
~~VII.~~ uties in a general assembly. "The strength of the  
1650. proprietary" was confidently reposed "in the affec-  
tions of his people."<sup>1</sup> Well might the freemen of  
Maryland place upon their records a declaration of  
their gratitude, "as a memorial to all posterities," and  
a pledge that succeeding generations would faithfully  
"remember" the care and industry of Lord Balti-  
more in advancing "the peace and happiness of the  
colony."<sup>2</sup>

But the revolutions in England could not but affect  
the destinies of the colonies; and while New England  
and Virginia vigorously advanced their liberties under  
the salutary neglect, Maryland was involved in the  
miseries of a disputed government. The people were  
ready to display every virtue of good citizens; but  
doubts were raised as to the authority to which obedi-  
ence was due; and the government, which had been a  
government of benevolence, good order, and toleration,  
was, by the force of circumstances, soon abandoned to  
the misrule of bigotry and the anarchy of a disputed  
sovereignty. When the throne and the peerage had  
been subverted in England, it might be questioned  
whether the mimic monarchy of Lord Baltimore  
should be permitted to continue. When hereditary  
power had ceased in the mother country, might it  
properly exist in the colony? It seemed uncertain, if  
the proprietary could maintain his position; and the  
scrupulous Puritans hesitated to take an unqualified  
oath of fealty, with which they might be unable to  
comply.<sup>3</sup> Englishmen were no longer lieges of a sove-  
reign, but members of a commonwealth; and, but

<sup>1</sup> Bacon, 1650, c. xxv

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. 1650, c. xxiii.

<sup>3</sup> Strong's Babylon's Fall, 1, 2.

for the claims of Baltimore, Maryland would equally CHAP.  
 enjoy the benefits of republican liberty. Great as was VII.  
 the temptation to assert independence, it would not  
 have prevailed, could the peace of the province have  
 been maintained. But who, it might well be asked,  
 was the sovereign of Maryland? Her "beauty and  
 extraordinary goodness" had been to her a fatal  
 dowry; and Maryland was claimed by four separate  
 aspirants. Virginia<sup>1</sup> was ever ready to revive its  
 rights to jurisdiction beyond the Potomac, and Clay-  
 borne had already excited attention by his persevering  
 opposition;<sup>2</sup> Charles II., incensed against Lord Balti-  
 more for his adhesion to the rebels and his toleration  
 of schismatics, had issued a commission to Sir William  
 Davenant;<sup>3</sup> Stone was the active deputy of Lord  
 Baltimore; and parliament had already appointed its  
 commissioners.

In the ordinance<sup>4</sup> for the reduction of the rebellious 1650.  
 colonies, Maryland had not been included; if Charles  
 II. had been inconsiderately proclaimed by a tempo-  
 rary officer, the offence had been expiated;<sup>5</sup> and, as  
 assurances had been given of the fidelity of Stone to  
 the commonwealth, no measures against his authority  
 were designed.<sup>6</sup> Yet the commissioners were in- 1651.  
 structed to reduce "all the plantations within the Bay Sept.  
 of the Chesapeake;"<sup>7</sup> and it must be allowed, that  
 Clayborne might find in the ambiguous phrase, intend- 1652.  
 ed, perhaps, to include only the settlements of Virginia,  
 a sufficient warrant to stretch his authority to Mary-  
 land. The commissioners accordingly entered the  
 province; and, after much altercation with Stone, de-

<sup>1</sup> Hazard, i. 620—630. McMahon,  
 207, 208.

<sup>4</sup> Hazard, i. 636.

<sup>5</sup> McMahon, 203.

<sup>2</sup> Bacon, 1650, c. xvii.

<sup>6</sup> Langford, 6 and 7.

<sup>3</sup> Langford, 3, 4. Grahame's U.  
 S. i. 117, 118.

<sup>7</sup> Thurloe, i. 198. Hazard, i.  
 557. Hammond, 20, 21.

- CHAP.** priving him of his commission from Lord Baltimore,  
 VII. **VII.** and changing the officers of the province, they at last  
**1652.** established a compromise. Stone, with three of his  
 June. council, was permitted to retain the executive powe  
 till further instructions should arrive from England.<sup>1</sup>
- 1653.** The dissolution of the Long Parliament threatened  
 April. a change in the political condition of Maryland; for,  
 it was argued, the only authority, under which Bennett  
 and Clayborne had acted, had expired with the body  
 from which it was derived.<sup>2</sup> In consequence, Stone,
- 1654.** Hatton and his friends, reinstated the rights of Lord  
 Baltimore in their integrity; displacing all officers of  
 the contrary party, they introduced the old council, and  
 declared the condition of the colony, as settled by  
 Bennett and Clayborne, to have been a state of re-  
 bellion.<sup>3</sup> A railing proclamation to that effect was  
 published to the Puritans in their church meeting.

The measures were rash and ill advised. No sooner  
 July. did Clayborne and his colleague learn the new revolu-  
 tion, than they hastened to Maryland; where it was  
 immediately obvious, that they could be met by no  
 effectual resistance. Unable to persuade Stone, "in  
 a peaceable and loving way," to abandon the claims  
 of Lord Baltimore, they yet compelled him to surren-  
 der his commission and the government into their  
 hands. This being done, Clayborne and Bennett ap-  
 pointed a board of ten commissioners, to whom the  
 administration of Maryland was intrusted.<sup>4</sup>

Intolerance followed upon this arrangement; for  
 parties had necessarily become identified with religious

<sup>1</sup> Strong, 2 and 3. Langford, 7 and 8. Bacon's Preface. McMa- 1654, as Strong asserts. McMahon, 206, cites Hazard doubtfully. Ba-  
 hon, 204, 205. Chalmers, 122. con, 1654, c. xlvi. Hammond, 22.

<sup>2</sup> Langford, 10. Strong, 3.

<sup>3</sup> Strong, 3. Hazard, i. 626. The date is there 1653. It was in 12. McMahon, 206. Chalmers, 223.

<sup>4</sup> Strong, 3, 4, 5. Langford, 11,

sects; and Maryland itself was the prize contended for.<sup>1</sup> The Puritans, ever the friends of popular liberty, hostile to monarchy, and equally so to a hereditary proprietary, contended earnestly for every civil liberty; but had neither the gratitude to respect the rights of the government, by which they had been received and fostered, nor magnanimity to continue the toleration, to which alone they were indebted for their residence in the colony. A new assembly, convened at Patuxent, acknowledged the authority of Cromwell; but it also exasperated the whole Romish party by their wanton disfranchisement. An act concerning religion confirmed the freedom of conscience, provided the liberty were not extended to "popery, prelacy,<sup>2</sup> or licentiousness" of opinion. Yet Cromwell, a friend to religious toleration, and willing that the different sects, "like the cedar, and the myrtle, and the oil-tree, should be planted in the wilderness together," never approved the ungrateful decree. He commanded the commissioners "not to busy themselves about religion, but to settle the civil government."<sup>3</sup>

When the proprietary heard of these proceedings, he felt indignant at the want of firmness which his lieutenant had displayed.<sup>4</sup> The pretended assembly was esteemed "illegal, mutinous, and usurped;" and Lord Baltimore and his officers determined, under the powers which the charter conferred, to vindicate his supremacy.<sup>5</sup> In the latter end of January, on the arrival of a friendly ship, it was immediately noised abroad, that his patent had been confirmed by the protector; and orders began again to be issued for the entire restoration of his authority. Papists and others<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Hammond, 22. Sad State 9.

<sup>2</sup> Bacon, 1654, c. iv.

<sup>3</sup> Chalmers, 236.

<sup>4</sup> Hazard, i. 629. Strong.

<sup>5</sup> Langford, 9, 10.

<sup>6</sup> Strong, 5.

CHAP. were commissioned by Stone to raise men in arms; VII.  
 ~~ and the leaders of this new revolution were able to  
 1655. surprise and get possession of the provincial records.  
 Mar. They marched, also, from Patuxent towards Anne  
 25. Arundel, the chief seat of the republicans, who insisted  
 on naming it Providence. The inhabitants of  
 Providence and their partisans gathered together with  
 the zeal that belongs to the popular party, and with  
 the courage in which Puritans were never deficient.  
 Vain were proclamations, promises, and threats. The  
 party of Stone was attacked and utterly discomfited;  
 he himself, with others, was taken, and would have  
 been put to death but for the respect and affection  
 borne him by some among the insurgents whom he  
 had formerly welcomed to Maryland. He was kept a  
 prisoner during most of the administration of Crom-  
 well;<sup>1</sup> while four of the principal men of the province,  
 sentenced to death by a council of war, were pres-  
 ently executed.<sup>2</sup>

A friend to Lord Baltimore, then in the province, begged of the protector no other boon than that he would "condescend to settle the country by declaring his determinate will."<sup>3</sup> And yet the same causes which led Cromwell to neglect the internal concerns of Virginia, compelled him to pay but little attention to the disturbances in Maryland. On the one hand, he respected the rights of property of Lord Baltimore; on the other, he protected his own political partisans, corresponded with his commissioners, and expressed no displeasure at their exercise of power.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> On this occasion were published Strong's Babylon's Fall in Maryland, and Langford's Just and Clear Refutation of a Scandalous Pamphlet, entitled Babylon's Fall in Maryland, 1655. Both are minute, and, in the main, agree. Compare Chalmers; McMahon, 207;

Hazard, i. 621—628, and 629, 630; Bacon's Pref.

<sup>2</sup> Hammond, 22, 23.

<sup>3</sup> Barber, in Langford, 15.

<sup>4</sup> Thurloe, i. 724, and iv. 55. Hazard, i. 594, quotes but one of the rescripts. Hammond, 24.

The right to the jurisdiction of Maryland remained, therefore, a disputed question. Fuller, Preston, and the others, appointed by Clayborne, actually possessed authority; while Lord Baltimore, with the apparent sanction of the protector, commissioned<sup>1</sup> Josias Fendall to appear as his lieutenant. Fendall had, the preceding year, been engaged in exciting an insurrection, under pretence of instructions from Stone; he now appeared as an open but unsuccessful insurgent. Little is known of his "disturbance," except that it occasioned a heavy public expenditure.<sup>2</sup>

Yet the confidence of Lord Baltimore was continued to Fendall, who received anew an appointment to the government of the province. For a season, there was a divided rule; Fendall was acknowledged by the Catholic party in the city of St. Mary's; and the commissioners were sustained by the Puritans of St. Leonard's. At length, the conditions of a compromise were settled; and the government of the whole province was surrendered to the agent of the proprietary. Permission to retain arms; an indemnity for arrears; relief from the oath of fealty; and a confirmation of the acts and orders of the recent Puritan assemblies;—these were the terms of the surrender, and prove the influence of the Puritans.<sup>3</sup>

Fendall was a weak and impetuous man; but I cannot find any evidence that his administration was stained by injustice. Most of the statutes enacted during his government were thought worthy of being perpetuated. The death of Cromwell left the condition of England uncertain, and might well diffuse a gloom through the counties of Maryland. For ten

<sup>1</sup> McMahon, 211.

McMahon, 211, and Council Proceedings, in McMahon, note to 14.

<sup>2</sup> Bacon, 1657, c. viii.

<sup>3</sup> Bacon's Preface, and 1658, c. i.

CHAP. years the unhappy province had been distracted by  
 VII. dissensions, of which the root had consisted in the  
 claims that Baltimore had always asserted, and had  
 never been able to establish. What should now be  
 done? England was in a less settled condition than  
 ever. Would the son of Cromwell permanently hold  
 the place of his father? Would Charles II. be restor-  
 ed? Did new revolutions await the colony? new  
 strifes with Virginia, the protector, the proprietary,  
 the king? Wearied with long convulsions, a general  
 1660. assembly saw no security but in asserting the power  
 of the people, and constituting the government on the  
 Mar. expression of their will. Accordingly, just one day  
 12. before that memorable session of Virginia, when the  
 people of the Ancient Dominion adopted a similar  
 system of independent legislation, the representatives  
 of Maryland, convened in the house of Robert Slye,  
 voted themselves a lawful assembly, without depend-  
 ence on any other power in the province. The bur-  
 gesses of Virginia had assumed to themselves the elec-  
 tion of the council; the burgesses of Maryland refused  
 to acknowledge the rights of the body claiming to be  
 an upper house. In Virginia, Berkeley yielded to the  
 public will; in Maryland, Fendall permitted the power  
 of the people to be proclaimed. The representatives  
 of Maryland, having thus successfully settled the  
 government, and hoping for tranquillity after years of  
 storms, passed an act, making it felony to disturb the  
 order which they had established. No authority would  
 henceforward be recognized, except the assembly, and  
 the king of England.<sup>1</sup> The light of peace promised to  
 dawn upon the province.

<sup>1</sup> Bacon, 1659-60. McMahon, historian is remarkably temperate.  
 212. Chalmers, 224, 225. Griffith, All others have been unjust to the  
 18. Ebeling, v. 709. The German legislature of Maryland.

Thus was Maryland, like Virginia, at the epoch of CHAP.  
the restoration, in full possession of liberty, based upon VII.  
the practical assertion of the sovereignty of the people. 1660.  
Like Virginia, it had so nearly completed its institutions, that, till the epoch of its final separation from England, it hardly made any further advances towards freedom and independence.

Men love liberty, even if it be turbulent; and the colony had increased, and flourished, and grown rich, in spite of domestic dissensions. Its population, in 1660, is variously estimated at eight thousand,<sup>1</sup> and at twelve thousand.<sup>2</sup> The country was dear to its inhabitants. There they desired to spend the remnant of their lives; there they coveted to make their graves.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Fuller's Worthies, Ed. 1662.   <sup>2</sup> Chalmers, 226.   <sup>3</sup> Hammond, 25.

## CHAPTER VIII.

## THE PILGRIMS.

**CHAP. VIII.** THE settlement of New England was a result of the Reformation ;<sup>1</sup> not of the contest between the new opinions and the authority of Rome, but of implacable differences between Protestant dissenters and the established Anglican church.

Who will venture to measure the consequences of actions by the apparent humility or the remoteness of their origin ? The mysterious influence of that Power which enchains the destinies of states, overruling the decisions of sovereigns and the forethought of statesmen, often deduces the greatest events from the least commanding causes. A Genoese adventurer, discovering America, changed the commerce of the world ; an obscure German, inventing the printing-press, rendered possible the universal diffusion of increased intelligence ; an Augustine monk, denouncing indulgences, introduced a schism in religion, and changed the foundations of European politics ; a young French refugee, skilled alike in theology and civil law, in the duties of magistrates and the dialectics of religious controversy, entering the republic of Geneva, and conforming its ecclesiastical discipline to the principles of republican simplicity, established a party, of which Englishmen became members, and New England the

<sup>1</sup> Heeren, i. 102, 103.

asylum. The enfranchisement of the mind from religious despotism led directly to inquiries into the nature of civil government; and the doctrines of popular liberty, which sheltered their infancy in the wildernesses of the newly-discovered continent, within the short space of two centuries, have infused themselves into the life-blood of every rising state from Labrador to Chili, have erected outposts on the Oregon and in Liberia, and, making a proselyte of enlightened France, have disturbed all the ancient governments of Europe, by awakening the public mind to resistless action, from the shores of Portugal to the palaces of the czars.

The trading company of the west of England, in- 1606. incorporated in the same patent with Virginia, possessed too narrow resources or too little enterprise for success in establishing colonies. The Spaniards, affecting an exclusive right of navigation in the seas of the new hemisphere, captured and confiscated a vessel<sup>1</sup> which Popham, the chief justice of England, and Gorges, the governor of Plymouth, had, with some others, equipped for discovery. But a second and almost simultaneous expedition from Bristol encountered no disasters; and the voyagers, on their return, increased public confidence, by renewing the favorable reports of the country which they had visited.<sup>2</sup> The spirit of adventure was not suffered to slumber; the lord chief justice displayed persevering vigor, for his honor was interested in the success of the company which his influence had contributed to establish; Gorges,<sup>3</sup> the companion and friend of Raleigh, was still reluctant to surrender his

Nov.  
10.

<sup>1</sup> Purchas, iv. 1827 and 1832, and ff. Gorges' Briefe Narration, c. iv. Prince's N. E. Chronology, 113, 114. ii. Mass. Hist. Coll. ix. 3, 4.

<sup>2</sup> Gorges, c. v. 6.

<sup>3</sup> The name of Gorges occurs in Hume, c. xliv.; Lingard, viii. 449. Compare Belknap's Biography, i. 347—354. Gorges was ever a sincere royalist.

CHAP.  
VIII.

CHAP. sanguine hopes of fortune and domains in America ;  
 VIII. and, in the next year, two ships were despatched to  
 1607. Northern Virginia, commanded by Raleigh Gilbert,  
 Aug. 8. and bearing emigrants for a plantation under the pres-  
 idency of George Popham.<sup>1</sup> After a tedious voyage,  
 mouth of the Kennebec, and, offering public thanks to  
 God for their safety, began their settlement under the  
 auspices of religion, with a government framed as if  
 for a permanent colony. Rude cabins, a storehouse,  
 and some slight fortifications, were rapidly prepared,  
 Dec. 5. and the ships sailed for England, leaving forty-five  
 emigrants in the plantation, which was named St.  
 George. But the winter was intensely cold ; the na-  
 tives, at first friendly, became restless ; the store-  
 house caught fire, and part of the provisions was con-  
 sumed ; the emigrants grew weary of their solitude ;  
 they lost Popham, their president, “the only one<sup>2</sup> of  
 the company that died there ;” the ships which re-  
 1608. visited the settlement with supplies, brought news of  
 the death of the chief justice, the most vigorous friend  
 of the settlement in England ; and Gilbert, the sole in  
 command at St. George, had, by the decease of his  
 brother, become heir to an estate which invited his  
 presence. So the plantation was abandoned ; and  
 the colonists, returning to England, “did coyne many  
 excuses,” and sought to conceal their own deficiency  
 of spirit by spreading exaggerated accounts of the  
 rugged poverty of the soil, and the inhospitable sever-

<sup>1</sup> Gorges, c. vii. viii. ix. Purchas, iv. 1828. Smith, ii. 173—175. Belknap, i. 350—354. i. Mass. Hist. Coll. i. 251, 252. Williamson’s History of Maine, i. 197—203. Prince, 116, 117, 118, 119. Hubbard’s N. E. 36, 37.

*looked at the numerous graves of the dead ;* drawing on his imagination for embellishments. Compare ii. Mass. Hist. Coll. ix. 4. Chalmers, 79, names among those who died, “Gilbert, their chief”—an error.

<sup>2</sup> Chalmers, 79, writes, “They

ity of the climate.<sup>1</sup> But the Plymouth company was CHAP. dissatisfied with their pusillanimity; Gorges esteemed VIII. it a weakness to be frightened at a blast. The idea of a settlement in these northern latitudes was no longer terrific. The American fisheries also constituted a prosperous and well-established business. Three years had elapsed since the French had been settled in their huts at Port Royal; and the ships which carried the English from the Kennebec were on the ocean at the same time with the little squadron of the French, who succeeded in building Quebec, the very summer in which Maine was deserted.

The fisheries and the fur-trade were not relinquished; vessels were annually employed in traffic with the Indians; and once,<sup>2</sup> at least, perhaps oftener, a part of a ship's company remained during a winter on the American coast. But new hopes were awakened, 1614. April. when Smith,—who had already obtained distinction in Virginia, and who had, with rare sagacity, discovered, and, with unceasing firmness, asserted, that colonization was the true policy of England,—with two ships, set sail for the coast north of the lands granted by the Virginia patent. The expedition was a private<sup>3</sup> adventure of “four merchants of London and himself,” and was very successful. The freights were profitable; the health of the mariners did not suffer; and the whole voyage was accomplished in less than seven months. While the sailors were busy with their hooks and lines, Smith examined the shores from the Penobscot to Cape Cod, prepared a map of the coast,<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Sir W. Alexander's Map of New England, 30.

outh company. See Smith, in iii. Mass. Hist. Coll. iii. 19; and in his Historie, ii. 175, 176; Purchas, iv.

<sup>2</sup> Gorges, c. x. Prince, 119.

1828.

<sup>3</sup> Chalmers, 30, erroneously attributes the expedition to the Plym-

<sup>4</sup> Map, in iii. Mass. Hist. Coll. iii.

**CHAP.** and named the country New England,—a title which  
**VIII.** Prince Charles confirmed. The French could boast,  
 with truth, that New France had been colonized before  
 New England obtained a name ; Port Royal was older than Plymouth, Quebec than Boston. Yet the  
 voyage was not free from crime. After Smith had de-  
 parted for England, Thomas Hunt, the master of the  
 second ship, kidnapped a large party of Indians, and,  
 sailing for Spain, sold “the poor innocents” into  
 slavery. It is singular how good is educed from evil :  
 one of the number, escaping from captivity, made his  
 way to London, and, in 1619, was restored to his own  
 country, where he subsequently became an interpreter  
 for English emigrants.<sup>1</sup>

**1615.** Encouraged by commercial success, Smith next  
 endeavored, in the employment of Sir Ferdinando  
 Gorges, and of friends in London, members of the  
 Plymouth company, to establish a colony. Sixteen  
 men<sup>2</sup> were all whom the adventurers destined for the  
 occupation of New England. The attempt was un-  
 successful. Smith was forced by extreme tempests to  
 return. Again renewing his enterprise, he suffered  
 from the treachery of his companions, and was, at last,  
 intercepted by French pirates. His ship was taken  
 away ; he himself escaped alone, in an open boat,  
 from the harbor of Rochelle.<sup>3</sup> The severest privations  
 in a new settlement would have been less wearisome,  
 than the labors which his enthusiasm now prompted  
 him to undertake. Having published a map and a

<sup>1</sup> Smith's Description of New England, 47. Smith's Generall Historie, ii. 176. Morton's Memorial, 55, and Davis on Morton. Prince, 132. Mourt's Relation, in i. M. H. Coll. viii. 238. Plantation of N. England, in ii. Mass. Hist. Coll. ix. 6, 7.

<sup>2</sup> Williamson's Maine, i. 212. The learned and very valuable historian of Maine confounds this design of Smith to found a colony with his previous voyage for trade and discovery.

<sup>3</sup> Smith, ii. 205—215 ; and in iii. Mass. Hist. Coll. iii. 20, 21.

description of New England, he spent many months<sup>1</sup> in visiting the merchants and gentry of the west of England, to excite their zeal for enterprise in America: <sup>CHAP. VIII.</sup> 1617. he proposed to the cities, mercantile profits, to be realized in short and safe voyages; to the noblemen, vast dominions; from men of small means, his earnestness concealed the hardships of emigrants, and, upon the dark ground, drew a lively picture of the rapid advancement of fortune by colonial industry, of the abundance of game, the delights of unrestrained liberty; the pleasures to be derived from “angling and crossing the sweet air from isle to isle, over the silent streams of a calm sea.”<sup>2</sup> The attention of the western company was excited; they began to form vast plans of colonization; Smith was appointed admiral of the country for life; and a renewal of the letters patent, with powers analogous to those possessed by the southern company, became an object of eager solicitation. But a new charter was not obtained without vigorous opposition. “Much difference there was betwixt the Londoners and the Westerlings,”<sup>3</sup> since each was striving to engross all the profits to be derived from America; while the interests of the nation were boldly sustained by others, who were desirous that no monopoly should be conceded to either company. The remonstrances of the Virginia corporation,<sup>4</sup> and a transient regard for the rights of the country, could delay, but not defeat, a measure that was sustained by the personal favorites of the monarch. After two years’ entreaty, the ambitious adventurers gained every thing which they had solicited; and King James issued to forty of his subjects, some of them members

<sup>1</sup> Smith, ii. 218.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. Historie, ii. 201.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. in iii. Mass. Hist. Coll. iii.

<sup>21.</sup> Hubbard, 84, 85. Gorges. Pur-

chas, iv. 1830, 1831.

<sup>4</sup> Stith, 185. Hazard, i. 390.

Nov.  
3.

**CHAP.** of his household and his government, the most wealthy  
<sup>VIII</sup> and powerful of the English nobility, a patent,<sup>1</sup> which  
**1620.** in American annals, and even in the history of the world, has but one parallel. The adventurers and their successors were incorporated as “The Council established at Plymouth, in the county of Devon, for the planting, ruling, ordering and governing New England, in America.” The territory conferred on the patentees in absolute property, with unlimited jurisdiction, the sole powers of legislation, the appointment of all officers and all forms of government, extended, in breadth, from the fortieth to the forty-eighth degree of north latitude, and, in length, from the Atlantic to the Pacific; that is to say, nearly all the inhabited British possessions to the north of the United States, all New England, New York, half of New Jersey, very nearly all Pennsylvania, and the whole of the country to the west of these states, comprising, and, at the time, believed to comprise,<sup>2</sup> much more than a million of square miles, and capable of sustaining far more than two hundred millions of inhabitants, were, by a single signature of King James, given away to a corporation within the realm, composed of but forty individuals. The grant was absolute and exclusive: it conceded the land and islands; the rivers and the harbors; the mines and the fisheries. Without the leave of the council of Plymouth, not a ship might sail into a harbor from Newfoundland to the latitude of Philadelphia; not a skin might be purchased in the interior; not a fish might be caught on the coast; not an emigrant might tread the soil. No regard was shown for the

<sup>1</sup> Trumbull’s Connecticut, i. 546—567. Hazard, i. 103—118. Baylies, i. 160—185. Compare Hubbard, c. xxx.; Chalmers, 81—85.

<sup>2</sup> Smith, in iii. Mass. Hist. Coll.

iii. 31, estimates the land at one million one hundred and twenty thousand square miles—a computation far below the truth.

liberties of those who might become inhabitants of the colony; they were to be ruled, without their own consent, by the corporation in England. The patent favored only the cupidity of the proprietors, and possessed all the worst features of a commercial monopoly. A royal proclamation was soon issued, enforcing its provisions; and a revenue was already considered certain from an onerous duty on all tonnage employed in the American fisheries.<sup>1</sup> The results which grew out of the concession of this charter, form a new proof, if any were wanting, of that mysterious connection of events by which Providence leads to ends that human councils had not conceived. The patent left the emigrants at the mercy of the unrestrained power of the corporation; and it was under concessions from that plenary power, confirmed, indeed, by the English monarch, that institutions the most favorable to colonial liberty were established. The patent yielded every thing to the avarice of the corporation; the very extent of the grant rendered it of little value. The jealousy of the English nation, incensed at the concession of vast monopolies by the exercise of the royal prerogative, immediately prompted the house of commons to question the validity of the grant;<sup>2</sup> and the French nation, whose traders had been annually sending home rich freights of furs, while the English were disputing about charters and commissions, derided the tardy action of the British monarch in bestowing lands and privileges, which their own sovereign, seventeen years before, had appropriated.<sup>3</sup> The patent was designed to hasten plantations,

1621  
April  
25.

<sup>1</sup> Smith, in iii. Mass. Hist. Coll. iii. 32. Smith, ii. 263. mentary Debates, 1620-1, i. 260. 318, 319.

<sup>2</sup> Chalmers, 100—102. Parlia-

<sup>3</sup> iii. Mass. Hist. Coll. iii. 20.

CHAP. VIII. in the belief that men would eagerly throng to the coast, and put themselves under the protection of the council; and, in fact, adventurers were delayed, through fear of infringing the rights of a powerful company.<sup>1</sup> While the English monopolists were wrangling about their exclusive privileges, the first permanent colony on the soil of New England was established without the knowledge of the corporation, and without the aid of King James.

The Reformation in England—an event which had been long and gradually prepared among the people by the opinions and followers of Wickliffe, and in the government by increasing and successful resistance to the usurpations of ecclesiastical jurisdiction—was at length abruptly established during the reign and in conformity with the passions of a despotic monarch. The acknowledgment of the right of private judgment,<sup>2</sup> far from being the cause of the separation from Rome, was one of its latest fruits. Luther was more dogmatical than his opponents; though the deep philosophy with which his mind was imbued, repelled the use of violence to effect conversion in religion.

**1522.** He was wont to protest against propagating reform by persecution and massacres; and, with wise moderation, an admirable knowledge of human nature, a familiar and almost ludicrous quaintness of expression, he would deduce from his great principle of justification by faith alone the sublime doctrine of the freedom of conscience.<sup>3</sup> Yet Calvin, many years after, anxious

<sup>1</sup> iii. Mass. Hist. Coll. iii. 32. Smith, ii. 263.

<sup>2</sup> Under Edward VI. intolerance sanctioned by law. See Rymer, xv. 182, 250, under Elizabeth. Rymer, xv. 740 and 741. Compare Lingard, vii. 286, 287; Hallam's England, i. 130, 131, 132, 133.

<sup>3</sup> Nolle vi et cœde pro evangelio certari. Compare the passages from Luther's Seven Sermons, delivered in March, 1522, at Wittenberg, quoted in Planck's Geschichte des Protestantischen Lehrbegriffs, ii. 68—72. Summa summarum! Predigen will ichs, sagen

ly engaged in dispelling ancient superstitions, was still CHAP.  
VIII.  
fearful of the results of skeptical reform, and, in his ~~two~~  
opinions on heresy and its punishment, shared the un-  
happy error of his time.

In England, so far was the freedom of private inquiry from being recognized as a right, the means of forming a judgment on religious subjects was denied. The act of supremacy,<sup>1</sup> which effectually severed the English nation from the Roman see, contained no clause favorable to religious liberty. It was but a vindication of the sovereign franchise of the English monarch against foreign interference; it did not aim at enfranchising the English church, far less the English people, or the English mind. The king of England became the pope in his own dominions; and heresy was still accounted the greatest of all crimes.<sup>2</sup> The right of correcting errors of religious faith became, by the suffrage of parliament, a branch of the royal prerogative; and, as active minds among the people were continually proposing new schemes of doctrine, a statute, alike arrogant in its pretensions and vindictive in its menaces, was, after great opposition in parliament,<sup>3</sup> enacted "for abolishing diversity of opinions."<sup>4</sup> 1539. All the Roman Catholic doctrines were asserted, except the supremacy of Rome. The pope could praise Henry VIII. for orthodoxy, while he excommunicated

will ichs, schreiben will ichs, aber zwingen, dringen mit Gewalt will ich niemand; denn der Glaube will willig, ungenöthigt und ohne Zwang angenommen werden. I have quoted these words, which are in harmony with Luther's doctrines and his works, as a reply to those, who, like Turner, in his History, iii. 135, erroneously charge the great German reformer with favoring persecution.

<sup>1</sup> 25 Henry VIII., c. xix. xx. xxi.

Statutes, iii. 460—471. 26 Henry VIII., c. i. iii. xiii. Statutes, iii. 492, 493—499. 508, 509. Lingard, iv. 266—270, and vi. 281—283.

<sup>2</sup> Henry, xii. 53. Turner, ii. 349—353. Mackintosh, ii. 147—150.

<sup>3</sup> Strype's Memorials, i. 352.

<sup>4</sup> 31 Henry VIII., c. xiv. Statutes, iii. 739—743. Lingard, vi. 380—386. Bossuet, Hist. des Variations, l. vii. c. xxiv.—xl. Henry, xii. 84.

Nov.  
4.

CHAP. him for disobedience. He commended to the wavering emperor the English sovereign as a model for soundness of belief, and anathematized him only for contumacy.<sup>1</sup> It was Henry's pride to defy the authority of the Roman bishop, and yet to enforce the doctrines of the Roman church. He was as tenacious of his reputation for Catholic orthodoxy, as of his claim to spiritual dominion. He despised submission, and detested heresy.

Nor was Henry VIII. slow to sustain his new prerogatives. He rejected the advice of the commons, as of "brutes and inexpert folks," of men as unfit to advise him as "blind men are to judge of colors."<sup>2</sup> According to ancient usage, no sentence of death, awarded by the ecclesiastical courts, could be carried into effect, until a writ had been obtained from the king. The regulation had been adopted in a spirit of mercy, securing to the temporal authorities the power of restraining persecution.<sup>3</sup> The heretic might appeal from the atrocity of the priest to the mercy of the sovereign. But now, what hope could remain, when the two authorities were united; and the law, which had been enacted as a protection of the subject, was become the powerful instrument of tyranny! The establishment of the English church under the king, was inexorably sustained. No virtue, no eminence, conferred security. Not the forms of worship merely, but the minds of men, were declared subordinate to the government; faith, not less than ceremony, was to vary with the acts of parliament. Death was denounced against the Catholic who denied the king's supremacy, and the Protestant who doubted his creed.

<sup>1</sup> Fra Paolo, i. 82.

<sup>2</sup> Herbert's Henry VIII., 418, 419.

<sup>3</sup> Neal's Puritans, i. 55.

Had Luther been an Englishman, he might have per- CHAP.  
ished by fire.<sup>1</sup> In the latter part of his life, Henry re- VIII.  
voked the general permission of reading the Scriptures,  
and limited the privilege to merchants and nobles.  
He always adhered to his old religion;<sup>2</sup> he believed  
its most extravagant doctrines to the last, and died in  
the Roman, rather than in the Protestant faith.<sup>3</sup> But  
the awakening intelligence of a great nation could not  
be terrified into a passive lethargy. The environs of  
the court displayed no resistance to the capricious  
monarch; a subservient parliament yielded him ab-  
solute authority in religion;<sup>4</sup> but the advancing genius  
of the age, even though it sometimes faltered in its  
progress along untried paths, steadily demanded the  
emancipation of the public mind.

The accession of Edward VI. led the way to the 1547. establishment of Protestantism in England, and, at the Jan.  
same time, gave life to the germs of the difference 28.  
which was eventually to divide the English. A change in the reformation had already been effected among the Swiss, and especially at Geneva. Luther had based his reform upon the sublime but simple truth which lies at the basis of morals—the paramount value of character and purity of conscience; the su-  
periority of right dispositions over ceremonial exact-  
ness; or, as he expressed it, justification by faith alone. But he hesitated to deny the real presence, and was indifferent to the observance of external ceremonies. Calvin, with sterner dialectics, sanctioned by the influence of the purest life, and by his power as the ablest writer of his age, attacked the Roman doctrines

<sup>1</sup> Turner's England, iii. 140.

Henry's Great Britain, xii. p. 107.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. ii. 352.

<sup>4</sup> 37 Henry VIII., c. xvii. Stat-

<sup>3</sup> Bossuet, Hist. des Variations,  
i. viii. c. iii. iv. and xxiv.—xl.

utes, iii. 1009.

**CHAP. VIII.** respecting the communion, and esteemed as a commemoration the rite which the Catholics reverenced as a sacrifice. Luther acknowledged princes as his protectors, and, in the ceremonies of worship, favored magnificence as an aid to devotion ; Calvin was the guide of Swiss republics, and avoided, in their churches, all appeals to the senses as a crime against religion. Luther resisted the Roman church for its immorality ; Calvin for its idolatry. Luther exposed the folly of superstition, ridiculed the hair-shirt and the scourge, the purchased indulgence, and the dearly-bought masses for the dead ; Calvin shrunk from their criminality with impatient horror. Luther permitted the cross and the taper, pictures and images, as things of indifference ; Calvin demanded a spiritual worship in its utmost purity.

The reign of Edward, giving safety to Protestants, soon brought to light that both sects of the reformed church existed in England. The one party, sustained by Cranmer, desired moderate reforms ; the other, countenanced by the protector, were the implacable adversaries of the ceremonies of the Roman church.

**1549** It was still attempted to enforce<sup>1</sup> uniformity by men-  
**and** **1552.** aces of persecution ; but the most offensive of the Roman doctrines were expunged from the liturgy. The tendency of the public mind favored a greater simplicity in the forms of devotion ; the spirit of inquiry was active ; not a rite of the established worship, not a point in church government, escaped unexamined ; not a vestment nor a ceremony remained, of which the propriety had not been denied. The spirit of inquiry rebelled against prescription. A more complete

<sup>1</sup> 2 and 3 Edward VI., c. i. Statutes, iv. 36—39. Rymer, xv. 181—183, and 250—252.

reform was demanded ; and the friends of the established liturgy expressed in the prayer-book itself a wish for its furtherance.<sup>1</sup> The party strongest in numbers pleaded expediency for retaining much that had been sanctioned by ancient usage ; while abhorrence of superstition excited the other party to demand the boldest innovations. The austere principle was now announced, that not even a ceremony should be tolerated, unless it was enjoined by the word of God.<sup>2</sup> And this was Puritanism. The church of England, at least in its ceremonial part, was established by an act of parliament, or a royal ordinance ; Puritanism, zealous for independence, admitted no voucher but the Bible—a fixed rule, which they would allow neither parliament, nor hierarchy, nor king, to interpret. The Puritans adhered to the established church as far as their interpretations of the Bible seemed to warrant ; but no further, not even in things of indifference. They would yield nothing in religion to the temporal sovereign ; they would retain nothing that seemed a relic of the religion which they had renounced. They asserted the equality of the plebeian clergy, and directed their fiercest attacks against the divine right of bishops, as the only remaining strong-hold of superstition. In most of these views they were sustained by the reformers of the continent. Bucer and Peter Martyr<sup>3</sup> both complained of the backwardness of the reformation in England ; Calvin wrote in the same strain.<sup>4</sup> When Hooper, who had gone into exile in

<sup>1</sup> Neal's Puritans, i. 121. Neal's New England, i. 51.

<sup>2</sup> So Cartwright, a few years later, in his Reply to Whitgift, 27 : “In matters of the church, there may be nothing done but by the word of God.”

In his Sec. Reply, 1575, p. 81 : “It is not enough, that the Scripture speaketh not against them, unless it speak for them.”

<sup>3</sup> Strype's Memorials, ii. c. xxviii.

<sup>4</sup> Hallam's England, i. 140.

CHAP. the latter years of Henry VIII., was appointed bishop  
VIII. of Gloucester, he, for a time, refused<sup>1</sup> to be consecrated  
1550. in the vestments which the law required ; and his re-  
July. fusal marks the era when the Puritans first existed as  
a separate party. They demanded a thorough reform ·  
the established church desired to check the propensity  
to change. The strict party repelled all union with  
the Catholics ; the politic party aimed at conciliating  
their compliance. The Churchmen, with, perhaps, a  
wise moderation, differed from the ancient forms as  
little as possible, and readily adopted the use of things  
indifferent ; the Puritans could not sever themselves  
too widely from the Roman usages, and sought glar-  
ing occasions to display their antipathy. The surplice  
and the square cap, for several generations, remained  
things of importance ; for they became the badges of  
a party. They were rejected as the livery of super-  
stition—the outward sign, that prescription was to  
prevail over reason, and authority to control inquiry.  
The unwilling use of them was evidence of religious  
servitude.

1553 The reign of Mary involved both parties in danger ;  
1558. <sup>to</sup> but they whose principles wholly refused communion  
with Rome, were placed in the greatest peril. Rogers  
and Hooper, the first martyrs of Protestant England,  
were Puritans ; and it may be remarked, that, while  
Cranmer, the head and founder of the English church,  
desired, almost to the last, by delays, recantations, and  
entreating, to save himself from the horrid death to  
which he was doomed, the Puritan martyrs never  
sought, by concessions, to escape the flames. For

<sup>1</sup> Strype's Memorials, ii. 226, and 113. Prince, 282—307. Prince Repository, ii. 118—132. Hallam, has written with great diligence i. 141. Neal's Puritans, i. 108— and distinctness.

them, compromise was itself apostasy. The offer of pardon could not induce Hooper to waver, nor the pains of a lingering death impair his fortitude. He suffered by a very slow fire, and at length died as quietly as a child in his bed.

A large part of the English clergy returned to their submission to the see of Rome ; others firmly adhered to the reformation, which they had adopted from conviction ; and very many, who had taken advantage of the laws<sup>1</sup> of Edward, sanctioning the marriage of the clergy, had, in their wives and children, given hostages for their fidelity to the Protestant cause. Multitudes, therefore, hurried into exile to escape the grasp of vindictive bigotry ; but even in foreign lands, two parties among the emigrants were visible ; and the sympathies of a common exile could not immediately eradicate the rancor of religious divisions. The one party<sup>2</sup> aimed at renewing abroad the forms of discipline which had been sanctioned by the English parliaments in the reign of Edward ; the Puritans, on the contrary, endeavored to sweeten exile by a complete emancipation from ceremonies which they had reluctantly observed. The sojourning in Frankfort was imbibited by the anger of consequent divisions ; but Time, the great calmer of the human passions, softened the asperities of controversy ; and a reconciliation of the two parties was prepared by concessions<sup>3</sup> to the Puritans. For the circumstances of their abode on the continent were well adapted to strengthen the influence of the

<sup>1</sup> 2 and 3 Edward VI., c. xxi., 5 and 6 Edward VI., c. xii., in Statutes, iv. 67, and 146, 147. Strype's Memorials, iii. 108.

<sup>2</sup> Discourse of the Troubles in Frankfort.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid., edition of 1642, p. 160,

161, 162, 163. "We will joyne with you to be suitors for the reformation and abolishing of all offensive ceremonies." Prince, 287, 288. The documents refute the contrary opinion expressed by Hallam, Const. Hist. i. 233.

**CHAP. VIII.** stricter sect. While the companions of their exile had, with the most bitter intolerance, been rejected by Denmark and Northern Germany,<sup>1</sup> the English emigrants received in Switzerland the kindest welcome; their love for the rigorous austerity of a spiritual worship was confirmed by the stern simplicity of the republic; and some of them had enjoyed in Geneva the instructions and the friendship of Calvin.

**1558.** On the death of Mary, the Puritans returned to England, with still stronger antipathies to the forms of worship and the vestures, which they now repelled as associated with the cruelties of Roman intolerance at home, and which they had seen so successfully rejected by the churches of Switzerland. The pledges which had been given at Frankfort and Geneva, to promote further reforms, were redeemed.<sup>2</sup> But the controversy did not remain a dispute about ceremonies; it was modified by the personal character of the English sovereign, and became identified with the political parties in the state. The first act of parliament in the reign of Elizabeth declared the supremacy<sup>3</sup> of the crown in the state ecclesiastical; and the uniformity of common prayer was soon established under the severest penalties.<sup>4</sup> In these enactments, the common zeal to assert the Protestant ascendency left out of sight the scruples of the Puritans.

The early associations of the younger daughter of Henry VIII. led her to respect the faith of the Catholics, and to love the magnificence of their worship. She publicly thanked one of her chaplains, who had

<sup>1</sup> Planck's *Geschichte des Protestantischen Lehrbegriffs*, b. v. t. ii. p. 35—45, and 69.

<sup>2</sup> Prince, 288.

<sup>3</sup> 1 Elizabeth, c. i. Statutes, iv.

350—355. Hallam, i. 152. Mackintosh, iii. 45, 46.

<sup>4</sup> 1 Elizabeth, c. ii. Hallam, i. 153. Mackintosh, iii. 46, 47.

asserted the real presence; and, on a revision of the CHAP.  
VIII. creed of the English church, the tenet of transubstantiation was no longer expressly rejected. To calm the fury of religious intolerance, let it be forever remembered, that the doctrine of the real presence, which, by the statutes of the realm in the reign of Edward VI., Englishmen were punished for believing, and in that of Henry VIII. were burned at the stake for denying, was, in the reign of Elizabeth, left undecided, as a question of national indifference. She long struggled to retain images, the crucifix, and tapers, in her private chapel; she was inclined to offer prayers to the Virgin; she favored the invocation of saints.<sup>1</sup> She insisted upon the continuance of the celibacy of the clergy, and, during her reign, their marriages took place only by connivance.<sup>2</sup> For several years, she desired and was able to conciliate the Catholics into a partial conformity.<sup>3</sup> The Puritans denounced concession to the Papists, even in things indifferent; but during the reign of her sister, Elizabeth had conformed in all things, and she still retained an attachment for many tenets that were deemed the most objectionable. Could she, then, favor the party of rigid reform?

Besides the influence of early education, the love of authority would not permit Elizabeth to cherish the new sect among Protestants—a sect which had risen in defiance of all ordinary powers of the world, and which could justify its existence only on a strong claim to natural liberty. The Catholics were friends to monarchy, if not to the monarch; they upheld the forms of regal government, if they were not friends to

<sup>1</sup> Burnett, part ii. b. iii. No. 6. Heylin, 124. Neal's Puritans, i. 191, 192. Mackintosh, iii. 161. Hume, c. xlvi. Hallam, i. 124.

<sup>2</sup> Neal's Puritans, i. 205, 206. Strype's Parker, 107. <sup>3</sup> Southey's Book of the Church, i. 257, 258.

CHAP. the person of the queen. But the Puritans were the  
VIII. harbingers of a revolution; the hierarchy charged  
them with seeking a popular state; and Elizabeth  
openly declared, that they were more perilous than  
the Romanists. At a time when the readiest mode of  
reaching the minds of the common people was through  
the pulpit, and when the preachers would often speak  
with plainness and homely energy on all the events  
of the day, their claim to "the liberty of prophesying"  
was similar to the modern demand of the liberty of the  
press; and the free exercise of private judgment  
threatened, not only to disturb the uniformity of the  
national worship, but to impair the royal authority and  
erect the dictates of conscience into a tribunal, before  
which sovereigns might be arraigned.<sup>1</sup> The Puritan  
clergy were fast becoming tribunes of the people, and  
the pulpit was the place for freedom of rebuke and  
discussion. The queen long desired to establish the  
national religion mid-way between sectarian licentious-  
ness and Roman supremacy; and when her policy in  
religion was once declared, the pride of authority would  
brook no opposition. By degrees she occupied politi-  
cally the position of the head of Protestantism; Catholic  
sovereigns conspired against her kingdom; the con-  
vocation of cardinals proposed measures for her deposi-  
tion; the pope, in his excommunications, urged her  
subjects to rebellions. Then it was, that, as the  
Roman Catholics were no longer treated with forbear-  
ance, so the queen, struggling, from regard to her  
safety, to preserve unity among her friends, hated the  
Puritans, as mutineers in the camp.

1563. The popular voice was not favorable to a rigorous  
Jan. 12. enforcement of the ceremonies. In the first Prot-

<sup>1</sup> Cartwright's Second Reply, 158—170. Hallam, i. 254.

estant convocation of the clergy under Elizabeth, <sup>CHAP.</sup>  
 though the square cap and the surplice found in the <sup>VIII.</sup>  
 queen a resolute friend, and though there were in  
 the assembly many, who, at heart, preferred the old  
 religion, the proposition to abolish a part of the cere-  
 monies was lost in the lower house by the majority  
 of a single vote.<sup>1</sup> Nearly nine years passed away,  
 before the thirty-nine articles, which were then  
 adopted, were confirmed by parliament; and the act, 1571.  
 by which they were finally established, required  
 assent to those articles only, which concern the con-  
 fession of faith and the doctrine of the sacraments<sup>2</sup>—  
 a limitation which the Puritans interpreted in their  
 favor. The house of commons often displayed an  
 earnest zeal for a further reformation;<sup>3</sup> and its active <sup>1565.</sup>  
 interference was prevented only by the authority of <sup>Mar.</sup>  
 the queen.

When rigorous orders for enforcing conformity were first issued,<sup>4</sup> the Puritans were rather excited to defiance than intimidated. Of the London ministers, about thirty refused subscription,<sup>5</sup> and men began to speak openly of a secession from the church.<sup>6</sup> At length, a separate congregation was formed; im- 1567.  
 mediately the government was alarmed; and the June.

<sup>1</sup> Strype's Annals, i. 338, 339. Hallam, i. 238. Prince, 289 -293.

<sup>2</sup> Strype's Annals, ii. 71.

<sup>3</sup> Prince, 300.

<sup>4</sup> Strype's Annals, i. 460, 461. Appendix to Strype's Parker, b. ii. Do. 24.

<sup>5</sup> Strype's Annals, i. 462.

<sup>6</sup> Grindall, in Prince. Cartwright's Second Reply, p. 38. "Not for hatred to the estates of the church of England, but for love to a better."

How little the early Puritans knew of the true results of their doctrines of independence of the

state in religious matters, is evident from such passages as these, from Cartwright's Second Reply—"Meretykes oughte to be put to deathe nowe. If this be bloudise, and extreme, I am contente to be so counted withe the holie Coste." p. 115. "I denie that upon re-pentance ther owghte to followe any pardon of deathe." p. 116. "The magistrates whch punish murther and are lose in punishing the breaches of the first table, beginne at the wronge end." p. 117. The writer continues, displaying intense and consistent bigotry.

CHAP. leading men and several women were sent to Bride-  
 VIII. well for a year.<sup>1</sup> In vain did some of the best English  
 statesmen of the day favor moderation. Grindall had  
 so sincere a reluctance to persecute, that he was him-  
 self charged with secretly favoring Puritanism. The  
 temper of the times is marked by his reply. He de-  
 1574. nied the charge, not as a falsehood only, but as a cal-  
 June 26. umny, declaring, that “some incarnate, never-sleeping  
 devil had wrought him this wrong.” The charge of  
 lenity he repelled as a slander on his office; and  
 claimed sincerity in persecution as essential to his  
 1575. good name.<sup>2</sup> He succeeded in becoming archbishop.  
 Feb. 15. Yet Grindall was by nature averse to violence, and  
 when placed at the head of the English clergy, con-  
 tinued till his death to merit the censure of forbearance.  
 1581. The Puritans, as a body, had avoided a separation  
 from the church. They had desired a reform, and not  
 a schism. When, by espousing a party, a man puts a  
 halter round his neck, and is thrust out from the career  
 of public honor, it is the rash, and the least cautious,  
 and, therefore, the least persevering, who will be the  
 first to display their opinions. So it was in the party  
 of the Puritans. There began to grow up among them  
 a class of men who carried opposition to the church  
 of England to the extreme, and refused to hold com-  
 munion with a church of which they condemned the  
 ceremonies and the government. Henry VIII. had  
 enfranchised the English crown; Elizabeth had en-  
 franchised the Anglican church: the Puritans claimed  
 equality for the plebeian clergy; the Independents as-  
 serted the liberty of each individual mind to discover

<sup>1</sup> Strype's Parker, 242. Strype's Had Prince seen this letter, he  
 Grindall, 114, 115. would hardly have called Grindall

<sup>2</sup> Murdin's State Papers, 275, in a Puritan. See Prince, 298.  
 Mackintosh's Continuator, iii. 261.

“truth in the word of God.” The reformation had begun in England with the monarch; had extended among the nobility; had been developed under the guidance of a hierarchy; and had but slowly penetrated the masses. The party of the Independents was plebeian in its origin, and carried the principle of intellectual enfranchisement from authority into the houses of the common people. Its adherents were “neither gentry nor beggars.” The most noisy advocate of the new opinion was Brown, a man of rashness, possessing neither true courage nor constancy; zealous, but fickle; dogmatical, but shallow. He has acquired historical notoriety, because his hot-headed indiscretion urged him to undertake the defence of separation. 1582. He suffered much oppression; he was often imprisoned; he was finally compelled to go into exile. The congregation which he had gathered, and which banished itself with him, was composed of persons hasty and unstable like himself; it was soon dispersed by its own dissensions. Brown eventually purchased a living in the English church by conformity.<sup>1</sup> He could sacrifice his own reputation; “he forsook the Lord, so the Lord forsook him.”<sup>2</sup> The principles of which the intrepid assertion had alone given him distinction, lay deeply rooted in the public mind; and, as they had not derived life from his support, they did not suffer from his apostasy.

From this time there was a division among the opponents of the church of England. The Puritans acknowledged its merits, but desired its reform; the

<sup>1</sup> Fuller's Church History, b. ix. 167, 168, 169. Neal's Puritans, i. 376—378.

<sup>2</sup> John Robinson's Justification of Separation, 54—a tract of great merit, containing doctrines which necessarily led to the assertion of the freedom of conscience. I use the copy which once belonged to William Bradford, and which is now in the library of Robinson's church.

**CHAP.** Separatists denounced it as an idolatrous institution,  
**VIII.** false to Christianity and to truth : the Puritans considered it as the temple of God, in which they were to worship, though its altars might need purification ; the Separatists regarded the truths which it might profess, as holy things in the custody of the profane, the Ark of the Lord in the hands of Philistines. The enmity between the divisions of the party eventually became bitter. The Puritans reproached the Brownists with ill-advised precipitancy, and in return were censured for paltering cowardice. The one party abhorred the ceremonies which were a bequest of Popery ; the other party reprobated the Establishment itself. The Puritans desired to amend ; the Brownists, to destroy and rebuild. The feud became bitter in England, and eventually led to great political results ; but the controversy could not be continued beyond the Atlantic, for it required to be nourished by the presence of the hierarchy.

**1583.** The accession of Whitgift marks the epoch of extreme and consistent rigor in the public councils ; for the new archbishop was sincerely attached to the English church, and, from a regard to religion, enforced the conformity which the queen desired as the best support of her power. He was a strict disciplinarian, and wished to govern the clergy of the realm as he would rule the members of a college. Subscriptions were now required to points which before had been eluded ;<sup>1</sup> the kingdom rung with the complaints for deprivation ; the most learned and diligent of the ministry<sup>2</sup> were driven from their places ; and those who were introduced to read the liturgy, were so ignorant, that few of them could preach. Did

<sup>1</sup> Neal's Puritans, i. 396.

<sup>2</sup> Hallam's England, i. 270.

men listen to their deprived pastors in the recesses of forests, the offence, if discovered, was visited by fines and imprisonment. A court of high commission was established for the detection and punishment of non-conformity, and was invested with powers as arbitrary as those of the Spanish inquisitors.<sup>1</sup> Men were obliged to answer, on oath, every question proposed, either against others or against themselves. In vain did the sufferers murmur; in vain did parliament disapprove the commission, which was alike illegal and arbitrary; in vain did Burleigh remonstrate against a system so intolerant, that “the inquisitors of Spain used not so many questions to trap their preys.”<sup>2</sup> The archbishop would have deemed forbearance a weakness; and the queen was ready to interpret any freedom in religion as a treasonable denial of her supremacy. Two men were hanged for distributing Brown’s tract on the liberty of prophesying;<sup>3</sup> that is, a tract on the liberty of the pulpit.

The party thus persecuted were the most efficient opponents of Popery. “The Puritans,” said Burleigh, “are over squeamish and nice, yet their careful catechising and diligent preaching lessen and diminish the Papistical numbers.”<sup>4</sup> But for the Puritans, the old religion would have retained the affections of the multitude. If Elizabeth reformed the court, the ministers, whom she persecuted, reformed the commons. That the English people became Protestant is due to the Puritans. How, then, could the party be subdued? The spirit of brave and conscientious men can-

<sup>1</sup> Strype’s Annals, iii. 180. Hall’s England, i. 271—273. Rymer, xvi. 291—297, June 15, 1596, and 546—551, August 26, 1603. Mackintosh, iii. 261, 262. Lingard, vii. 266.

<sup>2</sup> Burleigh, in Strype’s Whitgift, 157.

<sup>3</sup> Strype’s Annals, iii. 186. Fuller’s Church History, b. ix. 169.

<sup>4</sup> Somer’s Tracts, fourth collection, i. 103.

CHAP. not be broken. No part is left but to tolerate or de-  
 VIII. stroy. Extermination could alone produce conformity.

1593. In a few years, it was said in parliament, that there were in England twenty thousand of those who frequented conventicles.<sup>1</sup> It was proposed to banish them, as the Moors had been banished from Spain, and as the Huguenots were afterwards driven from France. This measure was not adopted; but a law of savage ferocity, ordering those, who, for a month, should be absent from the English service, to be interrogated as to their belief, menaced the obstinate non-conformists with exile or with death.<sup>2</sup>

Holland offered an asylum against the bitter severity of this statute. A religious society, founded by the Independents at Amsterdam, continued to exist for a century, and served as a point of hope for the exiles;

1593. Barrow and Greenwood, men of unimpeached loyalty,  
 April 6. were selected as examples, and hanged at Tyburn for their opinions.<sup>3</sup>

The queen repented that she had sanctioned the execution. Her age and the prospect of favor to Puritanism from her successor, conspired to check the spirit of persecution. The leaders of the church became more prudent; and by degrees bitterness subsided. The Independents had, it is true, been nearly exterminated; but the number of the non-conforming clergy, after forty years of molestation, had increased; their popularity was more deeply rooted, and their enmity to the established order was irreconcilable.

<sup>1</sup> D'Ewes's Jour. 517. Strype's Whitgift, 417. Neal's Puritans, i. 513—515. Neal's New England, i. 60.

<sup>2</sup> 35 Eliz. c. i. Stat. iv. 841—843. Parl. Hist. 863. Neal's Puritans, i. 526, 527. Roger Williams's Truth and Peace, 237.

<sup>3</sup> Strype's Whitgift, 414, &c.

They now began to constitute a powerful political party; they inquired into the nature of government; in parliament they opposed monopolies, limited the royal prerogatives, and demanded a reform of ecclesiastical abuses. “The precious spark of liberty,” says an historian who was never accused of favoring the Puritans, “had been kindled and was preserved by the Puritans alone.” Popular liberty, which used to animate its friends by appeals to the examples of ancient republics, now listened to a voice from the grave of Wickliffe, from the ashes of Huss, from the vigils of Calvin. Victorious over her foreign enemies, Elizabeth never could crush the religious sect, of which the increase seemed dangerous to the state. Her career was full of glory abroad; it was unsuccessful against the progress of opinion at home. In the latter years of her reign, her popularity declined; and her death was the occasion of little regret. “In four days, she was forgotten.”<sup>1</sup> The multitude, fond of change, welcomed her successor with shouts; but when the character of that successor was better known, they persuaded themselves that they had revered Elizabeth to the last, and that her death had been honored by inconsolable grief.

The accession of King James would, it was believed, introduce a milder system; and the Puritans might hope even for favor. But the personal character of the new monarch could not inspire confidence.

The pupil of Buchanan was not destitute of learning nor unskilled in rhetoric. Protected from profligate debauchery by the austerity of public morals in Scotland, and incapable of acting the part of a statesman, he had aimed at the reputation of a “most learned

<sup>1</sup> Carte's England, iii. 707.

CHAP. clerk," and had been so successful, that Bacon,<sup>1</sup> with  
 VIII. equivocal flattery, pronounced him incomparable for  
 1603. learning among kings, and Sully, who knew him well,  
 esteemed him the wisest fool in Europe.—The man of  
 letters, who possesses wealth without the capacity for  
 active virtue, often learns to indulge in the vacancy of  
 contemplative enjoyments, and, slumbering on his post,  
 abandons himself to pleasant dreams. This is the eu-  
 thanasia of his honor. The reputation of King James  
 was lost more ignobly. At the mature age of thirty-  
 six he ascended the throne of England; and, for the  
 first time acquiring the opportunity of displaying the  
 worthlessness of his character, he exulted in the free-  
 dom of self-indulgence; in idleness and gluttony.  
 The French ambassador despised him for his frivolous  
 amusements;<sup>2</sup> gross licentiousness in his vicinity was  
 unreproved; and the manners of the palace became  
 so coarsely profligate, that even the women of his  
 court reeled in his presence in a state of disgusting  
 inebriety.<sup>3</sup>

The life of James, as a monarch, was full of mean-  
 nesses. Personal beauty became the qualification of  
 a minister of state. The interests of England were  
 sacrificed, that his son might marry the daughter  
 of a powerful king. His passions were as feeble as  
 his will. His egregious vanity desired perpetual  
 flattery; and no hyperboles excited his distrust. He  
 boasted that England, even in the days of Elizabeth,  
 had been governed by his influence; by proclamation,  
 he forbade the people to talk of state affairs;<sup>4</sup> and  
 in reply to the complaints of his commons, he in-

<sup>1</sup> Bacon's Works, iv. 436.

<sup>2</sup> Lingard's England, ix. 107.

<sup>3</sup> Harrington's *Nugae Antiquae*, i. 348—350.

<sup>4</sup> Rapin's England, ii. 202. Sully's *Memoirs*, l. xv.

sisted that he was and would be the father of their country.<sup>1</sup>

Dissimulation is the vice of those who have neither true judgment nor courage. King James, from his imbecility, was false, and sometimes vindicated his falsehood, as though deception and cunning had been worthy of a king. But he was an awkward liar, rather than a crafty dissembler.<sup>2</sup> He could, before parliament, call God to witness his sincerity, when he was already resolved on being insincere. His cowardice was such, that he feigned a fondness for Carr, whose arrest for murder he had secretly ordered. He was afraid of his wife; could be governed by being overawed; and was easily intimidated by the vulgar insolence of Buckingham.<sup>3</sup> In Scotland, he solemnly declared his attachment<sup>4</sup> to the Puritan discipline and doctrines; but it was from his fear of open resistance. The pusillanimous man assents from cowardice, and recovers boldness with the assurance of impunity.

Demonology was a favorite topic with King James. He demonstrated with erudition the reality of witchcraft; through his solicitation it was made, by statute, a capital offence; he could tell "why the devil doth work more with auncient women than with others;" and hardly a year of his reign went by, but some helpless crone perished on the gallows, to satisfy the vanity and confirm the dialectics of the royal author.

King James was sincerely attached to Protestantism.<sup>5</sup> He prided himself on his skill in theological learning, and challenged the praise of Europe as a subtle con-

<sup>1</sup> Cobbett's Parl. Hist. v. 1. p. 1504.

<sup>2</sup> Hallam's England, i. 404.

<sup>3</sup> Clarendon's Rebellion, i. 16 Hume, c. xlix.

<sup>4</sup> Calderwood's Church of Scotland, 286.

<sup>5</sup> Bentivoglio, Relazione di Fiandra, parte ii. c. iii. Op. Storiche, i. 206, 207.

CHAP. troversialist. With the whole force of English diplomacy, he suggested the propriety of burning an Arminian professor of Holland,<sup>1</sup> while he, at the same time, refuted the errors of the heretic in a harmless tract. He indulged his vanity in a public discussion, and, when the argument was over, procured himself the gratification of burning his opponent at the stake.<sup>2</sup> His mind had been early and deeply imbued with the doctrines of Calvinism ; but he loved arbitrary power better than the tenets of Knox ; and, when the Arminians in England favored royalty, King James became an Arminian. He steadily adhered to his love of flattery and his love of ease ; but he had no fixed principles of conduct or belief.

Such was the king of England, at a period when the limits of royal authority were not as yet clearly defined. Such was the man to whose decision the Puritans must refer the consideration of their claims. Would he be faithful to the principles in which he had been educated ? He had called the church of Scotland "the sincerest kirk of the world ;" he had censured the service of England as "an evil said mass."<sup>3</sup> Would he retain for Puritans the favor which he had promised ?

There were not wanting statesmen whose more profound philosophy favored a liberal toleration. Lord Bacon, in whose vigorous mind the truths of political wisdom had been sown by Burleigh in deep furrows, cherished the established worship, and yet advised concessions,<sup>4</sup> regarding the church as the eye of Eng-

<sup>1</sup> Winwood's Memorials, iii. 290. 293. 295. 298. 316. 339. 357, and other places. Rapin's England, ii. 179, 180.

<sup>2</sup> Lingard's England, ix. 217, 218. Prince, 127.

<sup>3</sup> Calderwood, 286, year 1590.

<sup>4</sup> Bacon's Works, ii. 541. Hume, in Appendix to James I., and Grahame, i. 253, charge Bacon with intolerance ; as I think, most unjustly.

land, in which there might yet be a blemish. The divisions in religion seemed to him a less evil than the violent measures of prevention. The wound, said he, is not dangerous, unless we poison it with our remedies.—The wrongs of the Puritans may hardly be dissembled or excused.—The silencing of ministers for the sake of enforcing the ceremonies, is, in this scarcity of good preachers, a punishment that lighteth upon the people.—The bishops should keep one eye open to look upon the good that those men do.—On subjects of religion, he says of himself, he was always for moderate counsels.<sup>1</sup> Nor did he fear inquiry; for he esteemed controversy “the wind by which truth is winnowed.”

But what relation could subsist between such philosophy and the selfish arrogance of King James? The tolerant views of Bacon were disregarded in his own time; like L'Hopital and Grotius, he scattered the seeds of truth, which were not to ripen till a late generation. The English hierarchy had feared, in the new monarch, the approach of a “Scottish mist;” but apprehension was soon dispelled.<sup>2</sup> The borders of Scotland were hardly passed before James began to identify the interests of the English church with those of his prerogative. No bishop, no king, was a maxim often in his mouth. Whitgift was aware that the Puritans were too numerous to be borne down; “I have not been greatly quiet in mind,” said the disappointed archbishop, “the vipers are so many.” But James was not as yet fully conscious of their strength. While he was in his progress to London, more than seven hundred of them presented the “millenary pe-

<sup>1</sup> Bacon, Of Church Controversies. Of the Pacification of the Church, first published in 1604. Apothegms. Works, ii. 516. 541. 517. 462.

<sup>2</sup> Neal's Puritans, ii. 30.

~~CHAP.~~ <sup>VII.</sup> tition" for a redress of ecclesiastical grievances.<sup>1</sup> He was never disposed to favor the Puritans; but a decent respect for the party to which he had belonged, joined to a desire of displaying his talents for theological debate, induced him to appoint a conference at Hampton Court.

<sup>1604.</sup> The conference was distinguished on the part of <sup>Jan.</sup> <sup>14. 16.</sup> the king by a strenuous vindication of the church of England. Refusing to discuss the question of the power of the church in things indifferent, he substituted authority for argument, and where he could not produce conviction, demanded obedience. "I will have none of that liberty as to ceremonies; I will have one doctrine, one discipline, one religion in substance and in ceremony. Never speak more to that point, how far you are bound to obey."<sup>2</sup>

The Puritans desired permission occasionally to assemble, and at their meetings to have the liberty of free discussions; but the king, prompt to discover that concessions in religion would be followed by greater political liberty, interrupted the petition:— "You are aiming at a Scot's presbytery, which agrees with monarchy as well as God and the devil. Then Jack, and Tom, and Will, and Dick, shall meet, and at their pleasures censure me and my council and all our proceedings. Then Will shall stand up and say, It must be thus; then Dick shall reply and say, Nay, marry, but we will have it thus; and therefore, here I must once more reiterate my former speech, and say,

<sup>1</sup> Hume's England, c. xlv. Neal's Puritans, ii. 31, 32.

<sup>2</sup> Barlow's Sum and Substance of the Conf. at Hampton Court, 71. I chiefly follow this account, which I find in the New England Library of Prince, though more favorable to

the king and bishops than they deserved. Hallam, i. 404. See Nugæ Antiquæ, i. 180, 181, 182, for an account more disgraceful to James. Yet Harrington was a friend to the church.

Le roi s'avisera ; the king alone shall decide.”<sup>1</sup> Turning to the bishops, he avowed his belief, that the hierarchy was the firmest support of the throne. Of the Puritans he added—“I will make them conform, or I will harry them out of the land, or else worse,”<sup>2</sup> “only hang them ; that’s all.” This closed the day’s debate.

On the last day of the conference, the king defended the necessity of subscription, concluding that, “if any would not be quiet and show their obedience, they were worthy to be hanged.” The high commission and the use of inquisitorial oaths equally found in him an advocate. He argued for despotic authority and its instruments.<sup>3</sup> A few alterations in the book of common prayer were the only reforms which the conference effected. It was agreed that a time should be set, within which all should conform ; if any refused to yield before it expired, they were to be removed.<sup>4</sup> The king had insulted the Puritans with vulgar rudeness and indecorous jests ;<sup>5</sup> but his self-complacency was satisfied. He had talked much Latin ;<sup>6</sup> he had spoken a part of the time in the presence of the nobility of Scotland and England, willing admirers of his skill in debate and of his marvellous learning ; and he was elated by the eulogies of the churchmen, who paid full tribute to the vanity of their royal champion. “Your majesty speaks by the special assistance of God’s spirit,” said the aged Whitgift. Bishop Bancroft, on his knees, exclaimed, that his heart melted for joy, “because God had given England such a king as, since Christ’s time, has not been ;”<sup>7</sup> and, in a fool-

<sup>1</sup> Barlow, 79. Neal’s Puritans, ii. 43, 44. Lingard, ix. 30. Hume, c. xlv.

<sup>2</sup> Barlow, 83.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. 90—92.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. 101.

<sup>5</sup> Neal’s Puritans, ii. 45. <sup>6</sup> Nugæ Antiquæ, i. 181. Montague, in Winwood, iii. 13—16.

<sup>7</sup> Barlow, 93, 94. Lingard, ix. 32. Neal’s Puritans, ii. 45.

CHAP. viii. ish letter, James boasted that "he had soundly pep-  
~~~~~ pered off the Puritans."<sup>1</sup>

Whitgift, the archbishop, a man of great consistency of character, estimable for his learning, respected and beloved by his party, did not long survive the conference. He earnestly desired not to live till the next parliament should assemble, for the Puritans would have the majority; and grief,<sup>2</sup> it is thought, hastened

1604. his death, six weeks after the close of the conference,

Feb. 29.

and only eleven months after the death of Elizabeth.

In the parliament, which soon assembled, the party opposed to the church asserted their liberties with such tenacity and vigor, that King James began to hate them as imbibering royalty itself. "I had rather live like a hermit in the forest," he writes, "than be a king over such a people as the pack of Puritans are, that overrules the lower house."<sup>3</sup> At the opening of the session, he had in vain pursued the policy of attempting a union between the old religion and the English church, and had offered "to meet the Catholics in the mid-way," while he had added, that "the sect of Puritans is insufferable in any well-governed commonwealth."<sup>4</sup> It was equally in vain, that, at the

1605. next session of parliament, he expressed himself

Nov. 9.

with more vindictive decision; declaring the Roman Catholics to be faithful subjects, but expressing detestation of the Puritans, as worthy of fire for their opinions.<sup>5</sup> The commons of England resolutely favored the sect which was their natural ally in the struggle against despotism.

Far different was the spirit which actuated the

<sup>1</sup> Strype's Whitgift, App. 239.

<sup>4</sup> Neal's Puritans, ii. 51, 52. Ra-

<sup>2</sup> Fuller's Chh. Hist. b. x. 25.

pin, ii. 165, 166.

<sup>3</sup> Hallam, i. 408—420, especially  
the letter at 419. Note.

<sup>5</sup> Prince, 111. Neal, ii. 52.

convocation of the clergy. They were very ready to decree against obstinate Puritans excommunication and all its consequences.<sup>1</sup> Bancroft, the successor of Whitgift, required<sup>2</sup> conformity with unrelenting rigor; King James issued a proclamation<sup>3</sup> of equal severity; and it is asserted,<sup>4</sup> perhaps with considerable exaggeration, yet by those who had opportunities of judging rightly, that, in the year 1604 alone, three hundred Puritan ministers were silenced, imprisoned, or exiled. But the oppressed party was neither intimidated nor weakened; the moderate men, who assented to external ceremonies as to things indifferent, were unwilling to enforce them by merciless cruelty; and they resisted not the square cap and the surplice, but the compulsory imposition of them. Yet the clergy proceeded with a consistent disregard of the national liberties. The importation of foreign books was impeded; and a severe censorship of the press was exercised by the bishops. Frivolous acts were denounced as ecclesiastical offences. A later convocation, in a series of canons,<sup>5</sup> denied every doctrine of popular rights, asserting the superiority of the king to the parliament and the laws, and admitting, in their zeal for absolute monarchy, no exception to the duty of passive obedience. Thus the opponents of the church became the sole guardians of popular liberty; the lines of the contending parties were distinctly drawn; the established church and the monarch, on the one side, were arrayed against the Puritan clergy and the people. A war of opinion began; immediate success was obtained by the established authority; but the contest would be

<sup>1</sup> Constitution and Canons Ecclesiastical; Neal, ii. 57—60. Prince, 107, 108.

<sup>2</sup> Bancroft, in Neal, ii. 67.

<sup>3</sup> Prince, 109. See the Canons.

<sup>4</sup> Calderwood, in Neal's N. E. i. 73. Compare a note in Neal's Puritans, ii. 64.

<sup>5</sup> Bishop Overall's Convocation Book (not printed till 1690).

**CHAP. VIII.** transmitted to the next generation. Would victory ultimately belong to the Churchmen or to the Puritans? to the monarch or the people? The interests of European liberty were at issue on the contest.

**1602.** Towards the close of the reign of Elizabeth, there had existed in the North of England a congregation of separatists, men who despaired of effecting in the church of England the changes which their consciences demanded, and who preferred, "whatever it might cost them, as the Lord's free people, to join themselves, by covenant, into a church state." Though Calvinists in their faith, according to the straitest system, they renounced all attachment to human authority, and reserved an entire and perpetual liberty of forming their principles and practice from the light that inquiry might shed upon their minds. The history of their wrongs, their pilgrimages, and their success, written by William Bradford, who shared their fortunes and became their leader, has unfortunately perished; but copious extracts from the work have been preserved by the careful Thomas Prince, who merits the gratitude of the inquirer, not less for his judgment and research as an annalist, than for his pious care in collecting and preserving the memorials of the fathers of New England.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> I follow, in my narration, exclusively, the contemporary authors; Robinson's Apology; Gov. Bradford, in Prince, and the few extracts in Hutchinson, ii., Appendix, No. 1; Mourt's Relation; Winslow's Good Newes; Fragments of Bradford's Letter Book; John Smith's Histories and Tracts; the few documents in Hazard, i. I have compared the views of the earlier writers, Hubbard and C. Mather. The English authors, Ogilby, Oldmixon, Neal, Burk,

Chalmers, furnish nothing of additional value, and most of them are not trustworthy. De Laet is too concise. Of late American writers, I have examined Hutchinson, in his Appendix; Belknap's excellent Biographies; Baylies' Memoirs; Thacher's Plymouth; and the very valuable commentary of Davis on Morton. I have consulted the Church Records under the roof of the present pastor of Robinson's church. The Old Colony Records are in good order.

The reformed church, under Robinson, could not hope to escape persecution ; and its members were harassed by imprisonments, search-warrants, trivial prosecutions, and the various malice of intolerance. It is the very nature of the bigotry which insists upon conformity, that the execution of its will is attended with atrocities which were never designed to be sanctioned ; for the enforcement of persecuting laws devolves upon the fanatic or the savage. Men of humane feelings shun the service which is coveted either by the reckless agents of arbitrary power, or by the envenomed adversaries of the suffering sect. Hence the severity of religious persecution usually surpasses the intention of its authors ; and the peaceful members of the church of John Robinson, despairing of finding rest in England, resolved to seek safety in exile.

Holland, in its controversy with Spain, had displayed republican virtues, and, in the reformation of its churches, had chiefly inclined to the discipline of Calvin. England had been its ally in its greatest dangers ; the States, at one time, had almost become a part of the English dominions ; the “cautionary” towns were still garrisoned by English regiments, some of which were friendly to the separatists ; and William Brewster, the ruling elder of the church, had himself served as a diplomatist in the Low Countries. Common sympathies, therefore, attracted the emigrants to Holland.

The departure from England was effected with much suffering and hazard. The first attempt was prevented ; but the magistrates checked the ferocity of the subordinate officers ; and, after a month’s arrest of the whole company, seven only of the principal men were detained in prison.

CHAP. VIII. The next spring, the design was renewed. An unfrequented heath, in Lincolnshire, was the place of 1608. secret meeting. As if it had been a crime to escape from persecution, the embarkation was to be made under the shelter of darkness. After having encountered a night storm, just as a boat was bearing a part of the emigrants to their ship, a company of horsemen appeared in pursuit, and seized on the helpless women and children who had not yet adventured on the surf. "Pitiful it was to see the heavy case of these poor women in distress; what weeping and crying on every side." But when they were apprehended, it seemed impossible to punish and imprison wives and children for no other crime than that they would go with their husbands and fathers. They could not be sent home, for "they had no homes to go to;" so that, at last, the magistrates were "glad to be rid of them on any terms," "though, in the mean time, they, poor souls, endured misery enough." Such was the flight of Robinson and Brewster, and their followers, from the land of their fathers.

1608. Their arrival in Amsterdam was but the beginning of the eventful wanderings of the PILGRIMS. They 1609. soon removed to Leyden, where, for eleven years, they continued to live in great harmony. A clear and well-written apology of their church was published by Robinson; his fame attracted new members from England; his congregation inspired the nuncio of Rome with respect;<sup>1</sup> and, but for fear of offending King James, they would have met with public favor from the Dutch. In the controversy with Arminianism, Robinson was selected as the champion of orthodoxy,

<sup>1</sup> Bentivoglio, Relazione di Fiandra, parte ii. c. xi.

and disputed with a skill which his friends, at least, considered triumphant.

CHAP.  
VIII.

But, notwithstanding the distinction which was thus acquired, the desires of the company were unsatisfied. They were restless from the consciousness of ability to act a more important part on the theatre of the world. The career of maritime discovery had, meantime, been pursued with daring intrepidity, and rewarded with brilliant success. The voyages of Gosnold, and Smith, and Hudson; the enterprise of Raleigh, and Delaware, and Gorges; the compilations of Eden, and Willes, and Hakluyt,—had filled the commercial world with wonder; while weighty reasons, often and seriously discussed, inclined the Pilgrims to change their abode. They had been bred to the pursuits of husbandry, and in Holland they were compelled to learn mechanical trades; Brewster became a printer; Bradford, who had been educated as a farmer, learned the art of dyeing silk. The language of the Dutch never became pleasantly familiar; and their manners still less so. The climate was not grateful to the aged; and close occupation in mechanical trades was detrimental to the young. The dissoluteness of the disbanded soldiers and mariners, who had grown licentious in the recent wars, filled the English with anxiety, lest their children should become contaminated; and they were moved by an enlightened desire of improving their condition—the honorable ambition of becoming the founders of a state.

“Upon their talk of removing, sundry of the Dutch would have them go under them, and made them large offers;” but the Pilgrims were attached to their nationality as Englishmen, and to the language of their line. A secret, but deeply-seated love of their country

- CHAP. led them to the generous purpose of recovering the  
protection of England by enlarging her dominions.  
1617. They were “restless” with the desire to live once more under the government of their native land.

And whither should they go to acquire a province for King James? The beautiful fertility and immeasurable wealth of Guiana had been exhibited in dazzling colors by the brilliant eloquence of Raleigh. But the terrors of the tropical climate, the wavering pretensions of England to the soil, and the proximity of bigoted Catholics, led them rather to look towards Virginia; and Robert Cushman and John Carver repaired to England to obtain consent of the London company to their emigration. The envoys were favorably received; and a patent and ample liberties were cheerfully promised. Assured of the special approbation of Sir Edwin Sandys, they declined completing their negotiation, till they could consult the multitude, with whose interests they were intrusted. The Pilgrims, following the principles of democratic liberty, transmitted to the company their request, signed by the hands of the greatest part of the congregation. “We are well weaned,” added Robinson and Brewster, “from the delicate milk of our mother country, and inured to the difficulties of a strange land; the people are industrious and frugal. We are knit together as a body in a most sacred covenant of the Lord, of the violation whereof we make great conscience, and by virtue whereof we hold ourselves straitly tied to all care of each other’s good, and of the whole. It is not with us as with men whom small things can discourage.”

1618. The messengers of the Pilgrims continued to be received with great kindness by the Virginia company;

Jan.  
27.

they also sought for the favor of the king. But in CHAP.  
viii. vain did they transmit an account of their principles ; in vain was high influence at court exerted in their behalf. Even while the negotiations were pending, a royal declaration constrained the Puritans of Lancashire to conform or leave the kingdom ; and nothing more could be obtained for the wilds of America, than an informal promise of neglect. No public act of toleration could be wrung from the English monarch.

The bigotry of the English hierarchy was a great 1619. discouragement to the church at Leyden. The dissensions in the Virginia corporation occasioned further delay ; but, as the influence of Sir Edwin Sandys, the friend of the Puritans, prevailed, a patent was at length granted to the Pilgrims under the company's seal. It was taken in the name of one who failed to accompany the expedition, and was never of the least service to those who had obtained it with much toil and cost.

One more negotiation remained to be completed. The Pilgrims were not possessed of sufficient capital for the execution of their schemes. The reports of Smith, the efforts of Gorges, the confidence in wealth to be derived from fisheries, had made American expeditions a subject of consideration with English merchants ; and the agents from Leyden were able to form a partnership between their employers and men of business in London. The terms of the contract were deemed exceedingly severe. The whole company constituted a numerous partnership ; the services of each emigrant were rated as a capital of ten pounds, and belonged to the company ; all profits were to be reserved till the end of seven years, when the whole amount, and all houses and land, gardens and fields,

**CHAP. VIII.** were to be divided among the shareholders according to their respective interests. The London merchant, who risked one hundred pounds, would receive for his money tenfold more than the pennyless emigrant for his entire services. This arrangement threatened a seven years' check to the pecuniary prosperity of the community; yet, as it did not interfere with civil rights, or religion, it did not intimidate the Pilgrims.<sup>1</sup>

**1620.** And now the English at Leyden, trusting in God and in themselves, made ready for their departure. The Speedwell, a ship of sixty tons, was purchased in London; the Mayflower, a vessel of one hundred and eighty tons, was hired in England. These could hold but a minority of the congregation; and Robinson was therefore detained at Leyden, while Brewster, the teaching elder, conducted the emigrants. Every enterprise of the Pilgrims began from God. A solemn

**July.** fast was held. "Let us seek of God," said they, "a right way for us, and for our little ones, and for all our substance." Anticipating their high destiny, and the sublime doctrines of liberty that would grow out of the principles on which their religious tenets were established, Robinson gave them a farewell, breathing a freedom of opinion and an independence of authority, such as then were hardly known in the world.

"I charge you, before God and his blessed angels, that you follow me no further than you have seen me follow the Lord Jesus Christ. The Lord has more truth yet to break forth out of his holy word. I can-

<sup>1</sup> "Under the influence of this wild notion, the colonists of New Plymouth, in imitation of the primitive Christians, threw all their property into a common stock," Robertson's America, b. x. One of the many errors with which the volume of Robertson teems. There

was no attempt at imitating the primitive Christians; the partnership was a consequence of negotiations with British merchants; the colonists preferred the system of private property, and acted upon it, as far and as soon as was possible.

not sufficiently bewail the condition of the reformed churches, who are come to a period in religion, and will go at present no further than the instruments of their reformation.—Luther and Calvin were great and shining lights in their times, yet they penetrated not into the whole counsel of God.—I beseech you, remember it,—’tis an article of your church covenant,—that you be ready to receive whatever truth shall be made known to you from the written word of God.”

The Pilgrims were accompanied by most of the brethren from Leyden to Delft-Haven, where the night was passed “in friendly and Christian converse.” As morning dawned, Carver, Bradford, and Winslow, Brewster, the ruling elder, Allerton, and the brave and faithful Standish, with their equal associates, —a feeble band for a perilous enterprise,—bade farewell to Holland; while Robinson, kneeling in prayer by the sea-side, gave to their embarkation the sanctity of a religious rite. A prosperous wind soon wafts the vessel to Southampton, and, in a fortnight, the Mayflower and the Speedwell, freighted with the first colony for New England, leave Southampton for America. But they had not gone far upon the Atlantic before the smaller vessel was found to need repairs; and they enter the port of Dartmouth. After the lapse of eight precious days, they again weigh anchor; the coast of England recedes; already they are unfurling their sails on the broad ocean, when the captain of the Speedwell, with his company, dismayed at the dangers of the enterprise, once more pretends that his ship is too weak for the service. They put back to Plymouth, to dismiss their treacherous companions, though the loss of the vessel was “very grievous and discouraging.” The timid and the hesitating were all freely

CHAP.  
VIII.1620.  
July  
22.Aug.  
5.Aug.  
13.Aug.  
21.

CHAP. allowed to abandon the expedition. Having thus win-  
VIII. ~~~ nowed their numbers of the cowardly and the disaffected-  
1620. ed, the little band, not of resolute men only, but wives,  
some far gone in pregnancy, children, infants, a float-  
ing village, yet, in all, but one hundred and one souls,  
went on board the single ship, which was hired only  
Sept. 6. to convey them across the Atlantic ; and, on the sixth  
day of September, 1620, thirteen years after the first  
colonization of Virginia, two months before the con-  
cession of the grand charter of Plymouth, without any  
warrant from the sovereign of England, without any  
useful charter from a corporate body, the passengers  
in the Mayflower set sail for a new world, where the  
past could offer no favorable auguries.

Had New England been colonized immediately on the discovery of the American continent, the old English institutions would have been planted under the powerful influence of the Roman Catholic religion ; had the settlement been made under Elizabeth, it would have been before activity of the popular mind in religion had conducted to a corresponding activity of mind in politics. The Pilgrims were Englishmen, Protestants, exiles for religion ; men disciplined by misfortune, cultivated by opportunities of extensive observation, equal in rank as in rights, and bound by no code, but that which was imposed by religion, or might be created by the public will.

The eastern coast of the United States abounds in beautiful and convenient harbors, in majestic bays and rivers : the first Virginia colony, sailing along the shores of North Carolina, was, by a favoring storm, driven into the magnificent Bay of the Chesapeake ; the Pilgrims, having selected as the place for their settlement the mouth of the Hudson, the best position

on the whole coast, were, not by the treachery, but <sup>CHAP.</sup>  
 rather by the ignorance and self-will, of their captain,<sup>1</sup> ~~VIII.~~  
 conducted to the most barren and inhospitable part of <sup>1620.</sup>  
 Massachusetts. After a long and boisterous voyage  
 of sixty-three days, during which one person had died, <sup>Nov.</sup>  
 they espied land, and, in two days more, were safely  
 moored in the harbor of Cape Cod. English enter-  
 prise and English intolerance combined to effect the  
 first settlement of New England. <sup>9.</sup>

Yet, before they landed, the manner in which their government should be constituted, was considered; and, as some were observed "not well affected to unity and concord," they formed themselves into a body politic by a solemn voluntary compact.

"In the name of God, amen; we, whose names are underwritten, the loyal subjects of our dread sovereign King James, having undertaken, for the glory of God, and advancement of the Christian faith, and honor of our king and country, a voyage to plant the first colony in the northern parts of Virginia, do, by these presents, solemnly and mutually, in the presence of God, and one of another, covenant and combine ourselves together, into a civil body politic, for our better ordering and preservation, and furtherance of the ends aforesaid; and by virtue hereof, to enact, constitute, and frame, such just and equal laws, ordinances, acts, constitutions, and offices, from time to time, as shall be thought most convenient for the general good of the colony. Unto which we promise all due submission and obedience."

<sup>1</sup> Morton's Memorial, 34, and note. torians reject the idea of treachery. Prince, 170, 171. Mather's Mag- So, too, Gordon, in Hist. of N. Jer- nalia, b. i. c. ii. s. 6. So, too, Bay- sey, 7. The contemporary account lies, i. 26. No one of these is a of Bradford, in Prince, 162, does contemporary. Morton is nearest, not charge the master with any and merits respect. The N. Y. his- purpose of deception.

CHAP. VIII. This instrument was signed by the whole body of men, forty-one in number, who, with their families, constituted the one hundred and one, the whole colony, "the proper democracy," that arrived in New England. This was the birth of popular constitutional liberty. The middle age had been familiar with charters and constitutions; but they had been merely compacts for immunities, partial enfranchisements, patents of nobility, concessions of municipal privileges, or limitations of the sovereign power in favor of feudal institutions. In the cabin of the Mayflower, humanity recovered its rights, and instituted government on the basis of "equal laws" for "the general good." John Carver was immediately and unanimously chosen governor for the year.

Men who emigrate, even in well-inhabited districts, pray that their journey may not be in winter. Wasted by the rough and wearisome voyage, ill supplied with provisions, the English fugitives found themselves, at the opening of winter, on a barren and bleak coast, in a severe climate, with the ocean on one side and the wilderness on the other. There were none to show them kindness or bid them welcome. The nearest French settlement was at Port Royal; it was five hundred miles to the English plantation at Virginia. As they attempted to disembark, the water was found so shallow, that they were forced to wade; and, in the freezing weather, the very act of getting on land sowed the seeds of consumption and inflammatory colds. The bitterness of mortal disease was their welcome to the inhospitable shore.

Nov. 13. The season was already fast bringing winter, and the spot for the settlement remained to be chosen

The shallop was unshipped ; and it was a real disaster to find that it needed repairs. The carpenter made slow work, so that sixteen or seventeen weary days elapsed, before it was ready for service. But Standish and Bradford, and others, impatient of the delay, determined to explore the country by land. "In regard to the danger," the expedition "was rather permitted than approved." Much hardship was endured ; but what discoveries could be made in Truro and near the banks of Paomet Creek ? The first expedition in the shallop was likewise unsuccessful ; "some of the people, that died that winter, took the original of their death" in the enterprise ; "for it snowed and did blow all the day and night, and froze withal." The men who were set on shore, "were tired with marching up and down the steep hills and deep vallies, which lay half a foot thick with snow." A heap of maize was discovered ; and further search led to a burial-place of the Indians ; but they found "no more corn, nor any thing else but graves."

At length, the shallop was again sent out, with Carver, Bradford, Winslow, Standish, and others, with eight or ten seamen. The cold was severe ; the spray of the sea froze as it fell on them, and made their clothes like coats of iron. That day they reached Billingsgate Point, at the bottom of the Bay of Cape Cod, on the western shore of Wellfleet harbor. The next morning, the company divided ; those on shore find a burial-place, graves, and four or five deserted wigwams, but neither people, nor any place inviting a settlement. Before night, the whole party met by the sea-side, and encamped on land together near Namskeket, or Great Meadow Creek.

Dec.  
6.Dec.  
7.

CHAP. VIII. The next day they rose at five; their morning prayers were finished, when, as the day dawned, a war-whoop and a flight of arrows announced an attack from Indians. They were of the tribe of the Nausites, who knew the English as kidnappers; but the encounter was without further result. Again the boat's crew give thanks to God, and steer their bark along the coast for the distance of fifteen leagues. But no convenient harbor is discovered. The pilot of the boat, who had been in these regions before, gives assurance of a good one, which may be reached before night; and they follow his guidance. After some hours' sailing, a storm of snow and rain begins; the sea swells; the rudder breaks; the boat must now be steered with oars; the storm increases; night is at hand; to reach the harbor before dark, as much sail as possible is borne; the mast breaks into three pieces; the sail falls overboard; but the tide is favorable. The pilot, in dismay, would have run the boat on shore in a cove full of breakers. "About with her," exclaimed a sailor, "or we are cast away." They get her about immediately, and, passing over the surf, they enter a fair sound, and shelter themselves under the lee of a small rise of land. It is dark, and the rain beats furiously; yet the men are so wet, and cold, and weak, they slight the danger to be apprehended from the savages, and, after great difficulty, kindle a fire on shore.

Dec. 9. Morning, as it dawned, showed the place to be a small island within the entrance of a harbor. The 10. day was required for rest and preparations. Time was precious; the season advancing; their companions were left in suspense. The next day was the "Christian Sabbath." Nothing marks the character

of the Pilgrims more fully, than that they kept it sacredly, though every consideration demanded haste.

CHAP.  
VIII.

On Monday, the eleventh day of December, old style, the exploring party of the forefathers land at Plymouth. A grateful posterity has marked the rock which first received their footsteps. The consequences of that day are constantly unfolding themselves, as time advances. It was the origin of New England; it was the planting of the New England institutions. Inquisitive historians have loved to mark every vestige of the Pilgrims; poets of the purest minds have commemorated their virtues; the noblest genius has been called into exercise to display their merits worthily, and to trace the consequences of their daring enterprise.

1620.  
Dec.  
11.

The spot, when examined, seemed to invite a settlement; and, in a few days, the Mayflower was safely moored in its harbor. In memory of the hospitalities which the company had received at the last English port from which they had sailed, this oldest New England colony obtained the name of Plymouth. The system of civil government had been established by common agreement; the character of the church had for many years been fixed by a sacred covenant. As the Pilgrims landed, their institutions were already perfected. Democratic liberty and independent Christian worship at once existed in America.

Dec.  
15.

After some days, they began to build—a difficult task for men of whom one half were wasting away with consumptions and lung-fevers. For the sake of haste, it was agreed, that every man should build his own house; but frost and foul weather were great hindrances: they could seldom work half of the week; and tenements were erected as they could be, in the

1621.  
Jan.  
9.

CHAP. short intervals of sunshine between showers of sleet  
VIII.  
and snow-storms.

1621. On the third of March, a south wind brought warm  
Mar. 3. and fair weather. "The birds sang in the woods  
most pleasantly." But it was not till spring had far  
advanced, that the mortality began to cease. It was  
afterwards remarked, with modest gratitude, that, of  
the survivors, very many lived to an extreme old age.  
A shelter, not less than comfort, had been wanting:  
the living had been scarce able to bury the dead; the  
well not sufficient to take care of the sick. At the  
season of greatest distress, there were but seven able  
to render assistance. The benevolent Carver had  
been appointed governor: at his first landing, he had  
lost a son: soon after the departure of the Mayflower  
for England, his health sunk under a sudden attack;  
and his wife, broken-hearted, followed him in death.  
William Bradford, the historian of the colony, was soon  
chosen his successor. The record of misery was kept  
by the graves of the governor and half the company.

But if sickness ceased to prevail, the hardships of  
privation and want remained to be encountered. In  
1621-2 the autumn, an arrival of new emigrants, who came  
unprovided with food, compelled the whole colony, for  
six months in succession, to subsist on half allowance  
only. "I have seen men," says Winslow, "stagger  
by reason of faintness for want of food." They were  
once saved from famishing by the benevolence of fish-  
ermen off the coast. Sometimes they suffered from  
1622. oppressive exactions on the part of ships, that sold  
them provisions at the most exorbitant prices. Nor  
did their miseries soon terminate. Even in the third  
1623. year of the settlement, their victuals were so entirely  
spent, that "they knew not at night where to have a

bit in the morning." Tradition declares, that, at one time, the colonists were reduced to a pint of corn, which, being parched and distributed, gave to each individual only five kernels; but rumor falls short of reality; for three or four months together, they had no corn whatever. When a few of their old friends arrived to join them, a lobster, or a piece of fish, without bread or any thing else but a cup of fair spring water, was the best dish which the hospitality of the whole colony could offer. Neat cattle were not introduced till the fourth year of the settlement. Yet, during all this season of self-denial and suffering, the cheerful confidence of the Pilgrims in the mercies of Providence remained unshaken.

The system of common property had occasioned grievous discontents; the influence of law could not compel regular labor like the uniform impulse of personal interest; and even the threat of "keeping back their bread" could not change the character of the idle. After the harvest of 1623, there was no general want of food; in the spring of that year, it had been agreed, that each family should plant for itself; and parcels of land, in proportion to the respective numbers, were assigned for culture, though not for inheritance. This arrangement produced contented labor and universal industry; "even women and children now went into the field to work." The next spring, every person obtained a little land in perpetual fee. The necessity of the case, and the common interest, demanded a slight departure from the severe agreement with the English merchants. Before many harvests, so much corn was raised, that it began to form a profitable article of commerce, and the Indians, preferring the chase to tillage, abandoned culture, and

CHAP. VIII. looked to the colonists for their supply. The intercourse between the Plymouth colony and the Indians soon assumed the character of commercial familiarity. The exchange of European manufactures for beaver and other skins, was almost the only pursuit which promised to be lucrative.

The spot to which Providence had directed the planters, had, a few years before, been rendered entirely a desert by a pestilence, which had likewise swept over the neighboring tribes, and desolated almost the whole sea-board of New England.

1620. Where the Pilgrims landed, there were the traces of a previous population, but not one living inhabitant.
1621. Smokes from fires in the remote distance alone indicated the vicinity of natives. Miles Standish, "the best linguist" among the Pilgrims, as well as the best soldier, with an exploring party, was able to discover Feb. 16. wigwams, but no tenants. Yet a body of Indians from abroad was soon discovered, hovering near the settlement, though disappearing when pursued. The 17. colony, therefore, assumed a military organization; and Standish, a man of the greatest courage, the devoted friend of the church, which he never joined, was appointed to the chief command. But dangers were not at hand.

Mar. 16. One day, Samoset, an Indian who had learned a little English of the fishermen at Penobscot, boldly entered the town, and, passing to the rendezvous, exclaimed, in English, "Welcome, Englishmen." He belonged to the Wampanoags, a tribe which was destined to become memorable in the history of New England. In the name of his nation, he bade the strangers possess the soil, which there was no one of the original occupants alive to claim. After some

little negotiation, in which an Indian, who had been carried away by Hunt, had learned English in England, and had, in an earlier expedition, returned to his native land, acted as an interpreter, Massassoit himself, the sachem of the tribe possessing the country north of Narragansett Bay, and between the rivers of Providence and Taunton, came to visit the Pilgrims, who, with their wives and children, now amounted to no more than fifty. The chieftain of a race as yet so new to the Pilgrims, was received with all the ceremonies which the condition of the colony permitted. A treaty of friendship was soon completed in few and unequivocal terms. The parties promised to abstain from mutual injuries, and to deliver up offenders; the colonists were to receive assistance, if attacked; to render it, if Massassoit should be attacked unjustly. The treaty included the confederates of the sachem; it is the oldest act of diplomacy recorded in New England; it was concluded in a day, and, being founded on reciprocal interests, was sacredly kept for more than half a century. Massassoit desired the alliance, for the powerful Narragansetts were his enemies; his tribe, moreover, having become habituated to some English luxuries, were willing to establish a traffic; while the emigrants obtained peace, security, and the opportunity of a lucrative commerce.

An embassy from the little colony to their new ally, performed, not with the pomp of modern missions, but through the forests and on foot, and received, not to the luxuries of courts, but to a share in the abstinence of savage life, confirmed the treaty of amity, and prepared the way for a trade in furs. The marks of devastation from a former plague were visible

CHAP.  
VIII.Mar.  
22.

July.

CHAP. wherever the envoys went, and they witnessed the extreme poverty and feebleness of the natives.

1621. The influence of the English over the aborigines was rapidly extended. A sachem, who menaced their safety, was himself compelled to sue for mercy; and

Sept. 18. nine chieftains subscribed an instrument of submission to King James. The Bay of Massachusetts and harbor of Boston were fearlessly explored. Canonicus,

1622. at first desired to treat of peace. A bundle of arrows, wrapped in the skin of a rattlesnake, was now the token of his hostility. But when Bradford stuffed the skin with powder and shot, and returned it, his courage quailed, and he desired to be in amity with a race of men whose weapons of war were so terrible. The hostile expedition which caused the first Indian blood to be shed, grew out of a quarrel, in which the inhabitants of Plymouth were involved by another colony.

1623. For who will define the limits to the graspings of Mar. avarice? The opportunity of gain by the fur-trade had been envied the planters of New Plymouth; and Weston, who had been active among the London ad-

venturers in establishing the Plymouth colony, now desired to engross the profits which he already deemed secure. A patent for land near Weymouth, the first

1622 plantation in Boston harbor, was easily obtained; and a company of sixty men were sent over. Helpless at their arrival, they intruded themselves, for most of the summer, upon the unrequited hospitality of the people of Plymouth. In their plantation, they were soon reduced to necessity by their want of thrift; their injustice towards the Indians provoked hostility;

and a plot was formed for the entire destruction of the English. But the grateful Massasoit revealed the design to his allies; and the planters at Weymouth were saved by the wisdom of the older colony and the intrepid gallantry of Standish. It was "his capital exploit." Some of the rescued men went to Plymouth; some sailed for England. One short year saw the beginning and end of the Weymouth plantation. "Certainly the best works, and of greatest merit for the public," observes the childless Lord Bacon, with complacent self-love, "have proceeded from the unmarried or childless men." Weston's company, after having boasted of their strength, as far superior to Plymouth, which was enfeebled, they said, by the presence of children and women, owed their deliverance to the colony that had many women, children, and weak ones with them.

The danger from Indian hostilities was early removed; the partnership with English merchants occasioned greater inconvenience. Robinson and the rest of his church, at Leyden, were suffering from deferred hopes, and were longing to rejoin their brethren in America. The adventurers in England refused to provide them a passage, and attempted, with but short success, to force upon the colonists a clergyman more friendly to the established church; thus outraging at once the affections and the religious scruples of those whom they had pledged themselves to cherish. Divisions ensued; and the partners in England, offended by opposition, and discouraged at the small returns from their investments, deserted the interests of their associates in America. A ship was even despatched to rival them in their business; goods, which were sent for their supply, were sold to them

CHAP. at an advance of seventy per cent. The curse of  
VIII. usury, which always falls so heavily upon new settlements, did not spare them; for, being left without help from the partners, they were obliged to borrow money at fifty per cent. and at thirty per cent. interest. At last, the emigrants themselves succeeded in purchasing the entire rights of the English adventurers; the common property was equitably divided, and agriculture established immediately and completely on the basis of private possessions. For a six years' monopoly of the trade, eight of the most enterprising men assumed all the engagements of the colony; so that the cultivators of the soil became really freeholders; neither debts nor rent day troubled them.

The colonists of Plymouth had exercised self-government without the sanction of a royal patent. Yet their claim to their lands was valid, according to the principles of English law, as well as natural justice. They had received a welcome from the abo-  
1621. rigines; and the council of Plymouth, through the mediation of Sir Ferdinand Gorges,<sup>1</sup> immediately issued a patent to John Pierce for their benefit. But the trustee, growing desirous of becoming lord pro-  
1622. prietary, and holding them as tenants, obtained a new charter, which would have caused much difficulty, had not his misfortunes compelled him to transfer his rights to the company. When commerce extended to the Kennebec, a patent for the adjacent territory was  
1623. easily procured. The same year, Allerton was again sent to London to negotiate an enlargement of both the grants; and he gained from the council of Plymouth concessions equal to all his desires. But it

<sup>1</sup> Gorges' Description, 24. Briefe Narration, c. xxii.

was ever impossible to obtain a charter from the king; CHAP.  
so that, according to the principles adopted in Eng- VIII.  
land, the planters, with an unquestionable property in 1630.  
the soil, had no right to assume a separate jurisdiction.  
It was therefore in the virtues of the colonists them-  
selves, that their institutions found a guaranty for sta-  
bility. They never hesitated to punish small offences;  
it was only after some scruples, that they inflicted  
capital punishment. Their doubts being once re-  
moved, they exercised the same authority as the  
charter governments. Death was, by subsequent  
laws, made the penalty for several crimes; but was  
never inflicted except for murder. House-breaking  
and highway robbery were offences unknown in their  
courts, and too little apprehended to be made subjects  
of severe legislation.

The progress of population was very slow. The  
lands in the vicinity were not fertile; and at the end  
of ten years the colony contained no more than three  
hundred souls. Few as were their numbers, they had  
struck deep root, and would have outlived every  
storm, even if they had been followed by no other  
colonies in New England. Hardly were they planted  
in America, when their enterprise began to take a  
wide range; before Massachusetts was settled, they  
had acquired rights at Cape Ann, as well as an exten-  
sive domain on the Kennebec; and they were the  
first to possess an English settlement on the banks of  
the Connecticut. The excellent Robinson died at 1625.  
Leyden, before the faction in England would permit Mar.  
1. his removal to Plymouth; his heart was in America,  
where his memory will never die. The remainder of  
his people, and with them his wife and children, emi-  
grated, so soon as means could be provided to defray

CHAP. VIII. the costs. "To enjoy religious liberty was the known end of the first comers' great adventure into this remote wilderness ;" and they desired no increase, but from the friends of their communion. Yet their residence in Holland had made them acquainted with various forms of Christianity ; a wide experience had emancipated them from bigotry ; and they were never betrayed into the excesses of religious persecution, though they sometimes permitted a disproportion between punishment and crime.

The frame of civil government in the Old Colony was of the utmost simplicity. A governor was chosen by general suffrage ; whose power, always subordinate to the general will, was, at the desire of Bradford, 1624. specially restricted by a council of five, and afterwards 1633. of seven, assistants. In the council, the governor had but a double vote. For more than eighteen years, "the whole body of the male inhabitants" constituted the legislature ; the state was governed, like our towns, as a strict democracy ; and the people were frequently convened to decide on executive not less 1639. than on judicial questions. At length, the increase of population, and its diffusion over a wider territory, led to the introduction of the representative system, and each town sent its committee to the general court. We shall subsequently find the colony a distinct member of the earliest American Confederacy ; but it is chiefly as guides and pioneers that the fathers of the Old Colony merit gratitude.

Through scenes of gloom and misery, the Pilgrims showed the way to an asylum for those who would go to the wilderness for the purity of religion or the liberty of conscience. Accustomed "in their native land to no more than a plain country life and the in-

nocent trade of husbandry," they set the example of colonizing New England, and formed the mould for the civil and religious character of its institutions. <sup>CHAP. VIII.</sup> ~~1639~~

Enduring every hardship themselves, they were the servants of posterity, the benefactors of succeeding generations. In the history of the world, many pages are devoted to commemorate the heroes who have besieged cities, subdued provinces, or overthrown empires. In the eye of reason and of truth, a colony is a better offering than a victory; the citizens of the United States should rather cherish the memory of those who founded a state on the basis of democratic liberty; the fathers of the country; the men who, as they first trod the soil of the New World, scattered the seminal principles of republican freedom and national independence. They enjoyed, in anticipation, the thought of their extending influence, and the fame which their grateful successors would award to their virtues. "Out of small beginnings," said Bradford, "great things have been produced; and as one small candle may light a thousand, so the light here kindled hath shone to many, yea, in some sort to our whole nation."—"Let it not be grievous to you,"—such was the consolation offered from England to the Pilgrims in the season of their greatest sufferings,—"let it not be grievous to you, that you have been instruments to break the ice for others. The honor shall be yours to the world's end."

## CHAPTER IX.

## THE EXTENDED COLONIZATION OF NEW ENGLAND.

CHAP. <sup>IX.</sup> THE council of Plymouth for New England, having  
~~~~~~~ obtained of King James the boundless territory and  
<sup>1620.</sup> the immense monopoly which they had desired, had  
no further obstacles to encounter but the laws of  
nature and the remonstrances of parliament. No  
tributaries tenanted their countless millions of uncultivated acres; and exactions upon the vessels of Eng-  
lish fishermen were the only means of acquiring an  
immediate revenue from America. But the spirit of  
the commons indignantly opposed the extravagant  
pretensions of the favored company, and demanded  
for every subject of the English king the free liberty  
of engaging in a pursuit which was the chief source  
<sup>1621.</sup> of wealth to the merchants of the west. “Shall the  
<sup>April 25.</sup> English,” said Sir Edwin Sandys, the statesman so  
well entitled to the enduring gratitude of Virginia,  
“be debarred from the freedom of the fisheries, a priv-  
ilege which the French and Dutch enjoy? It costs  
the kingdom nothing but labor; employs shipping;  
and furnishes the means of a lucrative commerce with  
Spain.”—“The fishermen hinder the plantations,”  
replied Calvert; “they choke the harbors with their  
ballast, and waste the forests by improvident use.  
America is not annexed to the realm, nor within the  
jurisdiction of parliament; you have therefore no right

to interfere."—"We may make laws for Virginia," rejoined another member, intent on opposing the flagrant benevolence of the king, and wholly unconscious of asserting, in the earliest debate on American affairs, the claim of parliament to that absolute sovereignty which the colonies never acknowledged, and which led to the war of the revolution; "a bill passed by the commons and the lords, if it receive the king's assent, will control the patent." The charter, argued Sir Edward Coke, with ample reference to early statutes, was granted without regard to previously-existing rights, and is therefore void by the established laws of England. So the friends of the liberty of fishing triumphed over the advocates of the royal prerogative, though the parliament was dissolved before a bill could be carried through all the forms of legislation.

Yet enough had been done to infuse vigor into mercantile enterprise; in the second year after the settlement of Plymouth, five-and-thirty sail of vessels went to fish on the coasts of New England, and made good voyages. The monopolists appealed to King James; and the monarch, preferring to assert his own extended prerogative, rather than to regard the spirit of the house of commons, issued a proclamation, which forbade any to approach the northern coast of America, except with the special leave of the company of Plymouth, or of the privy council. It was monstrous thus to attempt to seal up a large portion of an immense continent; it was impossible to carry the ordinance into effect; and here, as so often, despotism caused its own fall. By desiring strictly to enforce its will, it provoked a conflict in which it was sure of being defeated.

CHAP. IX. But the monopolists endeavored to establish their claims. One Francis West was despatched with a commission as admiral of New England, for the purpose of excluding from the American seas such fishermen as came without a license. But his feeble authority was derided; the ocean was a wide place over which to keep sentry. The mariners refused to pay the tax which he imposed; and his ineffectual authority was soon resigned. In England, the attempt occasioned the severest remonstrances, which did not fail to make an impression on the ensuing parliament.

The patentees, alike prodigal of charters and treacherous of their monopoly, having given to Robert Dec. 13. Gorges, the son of Sir Ferdinand, a patent for a tract extending ten miles on Massachusetts Bay, and thirty 1623. miles into the interior, now appointed him lieutenant-general of New England, with power "to restrain interlopers," not less than to regulate the affairs of the corporation. His patent was never permanently used; though the colony at Weymouth was renewed, to meet once more with ill fortune. He was attended by Morrell, an Episcopal clergyman, who was provided with a commission for the superintendence of ecclesiastical affairs. Instead of establishing a hierarchy, Morrell, remaining in New England about a year, wrote a description of the country in verse; while the civil dignity of Robert Gorges ended in a short-lived dispute with Weston. They came to plant a hierarchy and a general government, and they produced only a fruitless quarrel and a dull poem.

1624. But when parliament was again convened, the controversy against the charter was once more renewed; and the rights of liberty found an inflexible champion

in the aged Sir Edward Coke, who now expiated the sins of his early ambition by devotion to the interests of the people. It was in vain that the patentees relinquished a part of their pretensions; the commons resolved that English fishermen shall have fishing with all its incidents. “Your patent”—thus Gorges was addressed by Coke from the speaker’s chair—“contains many particulars contrary to the laws and privileges of the subject; it is a monopoly, and the ends of private gain are concealed under color of planting a colony.” “Shall none,” observed the veteran lawyer in debate, “shall none visit the sea-coast for fishing? This is to make a monopoly upon the seas, which wont to be free. If you alone are to pack and dry fish, you attempt a monopoly of the wind and the sun.” It was in vain for Sir George Calvert to resist. The bill passed without amendment, though it never received the royal assent.<sup>1</sup>

The determined opposition of the house, though it could not move the king to overthrow the corporation, paralyzed its enterprise; many of the patentees abandoned their interest; so that the Plymouth company now did little except issue grants of domains; and the cottages, which, within a few years, were sprinkled along the coast from Cape Cod to the Bay of Fundy, were the consequence of private adventure.

The territory between the River of Salem and the Kennebec became, in a great measure, the property of two enterprising individuals. We have seen that Martin Pring was the discoverer of New Hampshire, 1603

<sup>1</sup> The original authorities,—Debates of the Commons, 1620-1, i. 258, 260, 261, 318, 319; Journal of Commons, in Chalmers, 100—102, and 103, 104; Sir F. Gorges’ Narration; Morrell, in i. Mass

Hist. Coll. i. 125—139; Smith, in iii. Mass. Hist. Coll. iii. 25; Hazard, i. 151—155. Compare Prince, Morton, Hutchinson, Belknap, and Chalmers.

1624  
Mar.  
17.

CHAP. and that John Smith of Virginia had examined and  
<sup>IX.</sup>  
 extolled the deep waters of the Piscataqua. Sir  
 1614. Ferdinand Gorges, the most energetic member of the  
 1620. council of Plymouth, always ready to encounter risks  
     in the cause of colonizing America, had not allowed  
     repeated ill success to chill his confidence and decision ;  
     and now he found in John Mason, " who had been  
     governor of a plantation in Newfoundland, a man of  
 1621. action," like himself. It was not difficult for Mason,  
<sup>Mar.</sup>  
<sup>9.</sup> who had been elected an associate and secretary of  
     the council, to obtain a grant of the lands between  
     Salem River and the farthest head of the Merrimac ;  
     but he did no more with his vast estate than give it a  
 1622. name. The passion for land increased ; and Gorges  
<sup>Aug.</sup>  
<sup>10.</sup> and Mason next took a patent for Laconia, the whole  
     country between the sea, the St. Lawrence, the Mer-  
     rimac, and the Kennebec ; a company of English  
     merchants was formed ; and under its auspices per-  
 1623. manent plantations were established on the banks of  
     the Piscataqua.<sup>1</sup> Portsmouth and Dover are among  
     the oldest towns in New England. Splendid as were  
     the anticipations of the proprietaries, and lavish as was  
     their enthusiasm in liberal expenditures, the immediate  
     progress of the plantations was inconsiderable, and,  
     even as fishing stations, they do not seem to have  
     prospered.

1628. When the country on Massachusetts Bay was  
     granted to a company, of which the zeal and success  
     were soon to overshadow all the efforts of proprietaries  
 1629. and merchants, it became expedient for Mason to  
<sup>Nov.</sup>  
<sup>7.</sup> procure a new patent ; and he now received a fresh

<sup>1</sup> Gorges' Narrative, c. xxiv. ff. Belknap's New Hampshire, c. i.  
 Hubbard, 614—616. Prince, 215.  
 Adams's Annals of Portsmouth, 9,  
 10. Williamson's Maine, i. 222, and  
     a truly valuable work, highly creditable to American literature.

title<sup>1</sup> to the territory between the Merrimac and CHAP.  
Piscataqua, in terms which, in some degree, interfered IX.  
with the pretensions of his neighbors on the south. This was the patent for New Hampshire, and was pregnant with nothing so signally as suits at law. The country had been devastated by the mutual wars of the tribes, and the same wasting pestilence which left New Plymouth a desert; no notice seems to have been taken of the rights of the natives; nor did they now issue any deed of their lands;<sup>2</sup> but the soil in the immediate vicinity of Dover, and afterwards of Portsmouth, was conveyed to the planters themselves, or to those at whose expense the settlement had been made.<sup>3</sup> A favorable impulse was thus given to the little colonies; and houses now began to be built on the "Strawberry Bank" of the Piscataqua. But the progress of the town was slow; Josselyn<sup>4</sup> described the whole coast as a mere wilderness, with here and there a few huts scattered by the sea-side; and thirty years after its settlement, Portsmouth made only the moderate boast of containing "between fifty and sixty families."<sup>5</sup>

When the grand charter, which had established the council of Plymouth, was about to be revoked, Mason extended his pretensions to the Salem River, the southern boundary of his first territory, and obtained of the expiring corporation a corresponding patent. There is room to believe, that the king would, without scruple, have confirmed the grant,<sup>6</sup> and conferred upon him the powers of government, as absolute lord and proprietary; but the death of Mason cut off all the

April  
22.Nov.  
26.<sup>1</sup> Hazard, i. 290—293.<sup>4</sup> Josselyn's Voyages, 20.<sup>2</sup> Savage on Winthrop, i. 405, and ff.<sup>5</sup> Farmer's Belknap, 434.<sup>3</sup> Adams's Portsmouth, 17-19.<sup>6</sup> Ibid. 431, and c. ii.

CHAP. IX. hopes which his family might have cherished of territorial aggrandizement and feudal supremacy. His widow 1638. in vain attempted to manage the colonial domains; the costs exceeded the revenue; the servants were ordered to provide for their own welfare; the property of the great landed proprietor was divided among them for the payment of arrears; and Mason's American estate was completely ruined. Neither king nor proprietary troubled the few inhabitants of New Hampshire; they were left to take care of themselves—the best dependence for states, as well as for individuals.

The enterprise of Sir Ferdinand Gorges, though sustained by stronger expressions of royal favor, and continued with indefatigable perseverance, was not followed by much greater success. We have seen a 1606. colony established, though but for a single winter, on the shores which Pring had discovered, and Weymouth had been the first to explore. After the bays of New 1615. England had been more carefully examined by the same daring adventurer who sketched the first map of the Chesapeake, the coast was regularly visited by fishermen and traders. A special account of the country was one of the fruits of Hakluyt's inquiries, and was published in the collections of Purchas. At Winter Harbor, near the mouth of Saco River, Englishmen, under Richard Vines, again encountered the 1616-7 severities of the inclement season; and not long afterwards, the mutineers of the crew of Rocraft lived from 1618-9 autumn till spring on Monhegan Island, where the 1607. colony of Popham had anchored, and the ships of John 1614. Smith had made their station during his visit to New England. The earliest settlers, intent only on their immediate objects, hardly aspired after glory; from the

few memorials which they have left, it is not, perhaps, possible to ascertain the precise time, when the rude shelters of the fishermen on the sea-coast began to be tenanted by permanent inmates, and the fishing stages of a summer to be transformed into regular establishments of trade.<sup>1</sup> The first settlement was probably made “on the Maine,” but a few miles from Monhegan, at the mouth of the Pemaquid. The first observers could not but admire the noble rivers and secure bays, which invited commerce, and gave the promise of future opulence; but if hamlets were soon planted near the mouths of the streams; if forts were erected to protect the merchant and the mariner,—agriculture received no encouragement; and so many causes combined to check the growth of the country, that, notwithstanding its natural advantages, nearly two centuries glided away, before the scattered settlements along the sea-side rose into a succession of busy marts, sustained and enriched by the thriving villages of a fertile interior.

The settlement at Piscataqua could not quiet the ambition of Gorges. As a Protestant and an Englishman, he was almost a bigot, both in patriotism and in religion. Unwilling to behold the Roman Catholic church and the French monarch obtain possession of the eastern coast of North America, his first act with reference to the territory of the present state of Maine was, to invite the Scottish nation to become the

<sup>1</sup> For the early history of Maine, the original authorities are in Purchas, vol. iv.; the Relation of the President and Council for New England; Josselyn's Voyages; and the Narration which Gorges himself composed in his old age. Materials may be found also in Sullivan's History; and far better in the

elaborate and most minute work of Williamson. I have also derived advantage from Geo. Folsom's Saco and Biddeford, and W. Willis's Portland. Williamson, i. 227, describes Saco as a permanent settlement in 1623; I incline rather to the opinion of Willis and Folsom.

CHAP. IX. guardians of its frontier. Sir William Alexander, the ambitious writer of turgid rhyming tragedies, a man of influence with King James, and already filled with the desire of engaging in colonial adventure, seconded a design, which promised to establish his personal dignity and interest; and he obtained, without difficulty, a patent for all the territory east of the River St. Croix, and south of the St. Lawrence.<sup>1</sup> The whole region, which had already been included in the French provinces of Acadia and New France, was designated in English geography by the name of Nova Scotia. Thus were the seeds of future wars scattered broadcast by the unreasonable pretensions of England; for James now gave away lands, which, already and with a better title on the ground of discovery, had been granted by Henry IV. of France, and which had been immediately occupied by his subjects; nor could it be supposed, that the reigning French monarch would esteem his rights to his rising colonies invalidated by a parchment under the Scottish seal, or prove himself so forgetful of honor, as to discontinue the protection of the emigrants who had planted themselves in America on the faith of the crown.<sup>2</sup>

Yet immediate attempts were made to effect a Scottish settlement. One ship, despatched for the purpose, did but come in sight of the shore, and then, declining the perilous glory of colonization, returned to the permanent fishing station on Newfoundland. The next spring, a second ship arrived; but the two vessels in company hardly possessed courage to sail to and fro along the coast, and make a partial survey of

<sup>1</sup> The patent is in Hazard, v. i. p. 134—145; in Purchas, v. iv. p. 1871. See, also, Gorges' Narration, c. xxiv; Laing's Scotland, iii. 477.

<sup>2</sup> Chalmers, 92.

the harbors and the adjacent lands. The formation CHAP.  
of a colony was postponed; and a brilliant eulogy of IX.  
the soil, climate, and productions of Nova Scotia, was  
the only compensation for the delay.<sup>1</sup>

The marriage of Charles I. with Henrietta Maria 1625.  
promised between the rival claimants of the wilds of May.  
Acadia such friendly relations as would lead to a  
peaceful adjustment of jarring pretensions. Yet, even  
at that period, the claims of France were not recog-  
nized by England; and a new patent confirmed to  
Sir William Alexander all the prerogatives with  
which he had been lavishly invested,<sup>2</sup> with the right of  
creating an order of baronets. The sale of titles  
proved to the poet a lucrative traffic, and the project  
of a colony was abandoned.

The citizens of a republic are so accustomed to see  
the legislation and the destinies of their country con-  
trolled only by public opinion, as formed and expressed  
in masses, that they can hardly believe the extent in  
which the fortunes of European nations have, at least  
for a short season, been moulded by the caprices of indi-  
viduals: how often the wounded vanity of a courtier,  
or an unsuccessful passion of a powerful minister, has  
changed the foreign relations of a kingdom! The  
feeble monarch of England, having twice abruptly  
dissolved parliament, and having vainly resorted to  
illegal modes of taxation, had forfeited the confidence  
of his people, and, while engaged in a war with Spain,  
was destitute of money and of credit. It was at such  
a moment, that the precipitate gallantry of the favorite 1627.  
Buckingham, eager to thwart the jealous Richelieu,  
to whom he was as far inferior in the qualities of a

<sup>1</sup> Purchas's Pilgrims, iv. 1872. Charlevoix, i. 274. De Laet. 62.

<sup>2</sup> Hazard, i. 206, and ff. Biog. Brit. sub voce Alexander.

CHAP. statesman, as he was superior in youth, manners, and  
<sup>IX.</sup>  
personal beauty, hurried England into an unnecessary  
and disastrous conflict with France. The siege of  
Rochelle invited the presence of an English fleet; but  
the expedition was fatal to the honor and the objects  
of Buckingham.

Hostilities were no where successfully attempted,  
1628. except in America. Port Royal fell easily into the  
hands of the English; the conquest was no more than  
the acquisition of a small trading station. It was a  
bolder design to attempt the reduction of Canada.  
Sir David Kirk and his two brothers, Louis and  
Thomas, were commissioned to ascend the St. Law-  
rence, and Quebec received a summons to surrender.  
The garrison, destitute alike of provisions and of  
military stores, had no hope but in the character of  
Champlain, its commander: his answer of proud  
defiance concealed his weakness; and the intimidated  
1629. assailants withdrew. But Richelieu sent no season-  
able supplies; the garrison was reduced to extreme  
suffering and the verge of famine; and when the  
squadron of Kirk reappeared before the town, the  
English were welcomed as deliverers. Favorable  
terms were demanded and promised; and Quebec  
capitulated. Thus did England, one hundred and  
thirty years before the enterprise of Wolfe, make the  
conquest of the capital of New France; that is to  
say, she gained possession of a barren rock and a few  
wretched hovels, tenanted by a hundred miserable  
men, who were now but beggars for bread of their  
vanquishers. Yet the event might fairly be deemed  
of importance, as pregnant with consequences; and  
the English admiral could not but admire the position  
of the fortress. Not a port in North America remained

to the French ; from Long Island to the Pole, England CHAP.  
IX.  
was without a rival.<sup>1</sup>

But before the conquest of Canada was achieved, 1629  
May. peace had been proclaimed between the contending states ; and an article in the treaty promised the restitution of all acquisitions, made subsequent to April 14, 1629.<sup>2</sup> The possession of New France would have been too dearly purchased by the dishonor of falsehood ; and it was readily agreed to restore Quebec.<sup>3</sup> Perhaps an indifference to the issue prevailed in France ; but the pride of honor and of religion seconded the claims to territory ; and the genius of Richelieu succeeded in obtaining the restitution, 1632  
Mar.  
29. not of Canada only, but of Cape Breton and the undefined Acadia.<sup>4</sup> The event has been frequently deplored ; but misery ensued, because neither the boundaries of the rival nations were distinctly marked, nor the spirit of the compact honestly respected.

While the eastern provinces of America were thus recovered by the firmness and ability of the French minister, very different causes delayed the colonization of Maine. Hardly had the little settlement, which claimed the distinction of being the oldest plantation 1628. on that coast, gained a permanent existence, before a succession of patents distributed the whole territory from the Piscataqua to the Penobscot among various proprietors. The grants were couched in vague 1629 language, and were made in hasty succession, without to  
1631 deliberation on the part of the council of Plymouth, and without any firm purpose of establishing colonies

<sup>1</sup> Mémoires, in Hazard, i. 285—287. Charlevoix, i. 259, and ff. Compare, also, Haliburton's N. Scotia, i. 43, 46, &c.

<sup>2</sup> Rushworth, ii. 24.

<sup>3</sup> Hazard, i. 314, 315.

<sup>4</sup> Charlevoix, i. 273. Winthrop, i. 13. Hazard, i. 319, 320. Williamson, i. 246, 247. Dummer's Memorial, in iii. M. H. Coll. i. 232, is an *ex parte* statement, unworthy to be cited as of authority.

CHAP. on the part of those for whose benefit they were  
<sup>IX.</sup> issued. The consequences were obvious. As the neighborhood of the indefinite possessions of France foreboded the border feuds of a controverted jurisdiction, so the domestic disputes about land-titles and boundaries threatened perpetual lawsuits. At the same time, enterprise was wasted by its diffusion over too wide a surface. Every harbor along the sea was accessible ; groups of cabins were scattered at wide intervals, without any common point of attraction ; and the agents of such proprietaries as aimed at securing a revenue from colonial rents, were often, perhaps, faithless, were always unsuccessful. How feeble were the attempts at planting towns, is evident from the nature of the tenure by which the lands near the Saco were held ; the condition of the grant was the introduction of fifty settlers within seven years ! Agriculture was hardly attempted. A district of forty miles square, named Lygonia, and stretching from 1630. Harpswell to the Kennebunk, was set apart for the first colony of farmers ; but when a vessel of sixty tons brought over the emigrants who were to introduce the plough into the regions on Casco Bay, the earlier resident adventurers treated their scheme with derision. The musket and the hook and line were more productive than the implements of husbandry ; the few members of the unsuccessful company remained but a single year in a neighborhood where the culture of the soil was so little esteemed, and, embarking once more, sought a home among the rising settlements of Massachusetts. Except for the wealth to be derived from the forest and the sea, the coast of Maine would not at that time have been tenanted by Englishmen ; and this again was fatal to the

expectations of the proprietaries ; since furs might be gathered and fish taken without the payment of quit-rents or the purchase of lands.<sup>1</sup>

Yet a pride of character sustained in Gorges an unbending hope ; and he clung to the project of Feb. 3. territorial aggrandizement. When Mason limited himself to the country west of the Piscataqua, and while Sir William Alexander obtained of the Plymouth company a patent for the eastern extremity of the United States, Gorges, alike undismayed by previous losses, and by the encroaching claims of the French, who had already advanced their actual boundary to the Penobscot, succeeded in soliciting the whole district that lies between the Kennebec and the boundary of New Hampshire. The earnestness of his designs is apparent from his appointment as governor-general of New England. If an unforeseen accident prevented his embarkation for America, and relieved Massachusetts of its apprehensions, he at least sent his nephew, William Gorges, to govern his territory. That officer repaired to the province without delay. Saco may have contained one hundred and fifty inhabitants, when the first court ever duly organized on the soil of Maine was held within its limits.<sup>2</sup> Before that time, there may have been some voluntary combinations among the settlers themselves ; but there had existed on the Kennebec no jurisdiction of sufficient power to prevent or to punish bloodshed among the traders.<sup>3</sup> William Gorges remained in the country less than two years ; the six Puritans of Massachusetts and Connecticut, who received a commission to act as his

<sup>1</sup> Hubbard's Narrative, 204. Willis, 13. 17, &c. Folsom, 318, &c. Williamson, i. 237, and ff. Gorges, 48, 49.

<sup>2</sup> Documents in Folsom, 49—52. Josselyn, 200.

<sup>3</sup> Hubbard, 167, 168. Winthrop.

CHAP. successors, declined the trust,<sup>1</sup> and the infant settlements then called New Somersetshire were abandoned to anarchy, or to so imperfect a government, that of the events of two years no records can be found.

<sup>1639.</sup> Meantime a royal charter now constituted Gorges, <sup>April 3.</sup> in his old age, the lord proprietary of the country; and his ambition immediately soared to the honor of establishing boroughs, framing schemes of colonial government, and enacting a code of laws. The veteran royalist, clearly convinced of the necessity of a vigorous executive, had but dim conceptions of popular liberty and rights; and he busied himself in making such arrangements as might have been expected from an old soldier, who was never remarkable for sagacity, had never seen America, and who, now in his dotage, began to act as a lawgiver for a rising state in another hemisphere.<sup>2</sup>

Such was the condition of the settlements at the north at a time when the region which lies but a little nearer the sun, was already converted, by the energy of religious zeal, into a busy, well-organized, and even opulent state. The early history of Massachusetts is the history of a class of men as remarkable for their qualities and their influence on public happiness, as any by which the human race has ever been diversified.

<sup>1624.</sup> The settlement near Weymouth was revived; a <sup>1625.</sup> new plantation was begun near Mount Wollaston, within the present limits of Quincy; and the merchants of the West continued their voyages to the islands of New England. But these things were of

<sup>1</sup> Winthrop. Hubbard, 261, 262. Williamson, i. 268.

<sup>2</sup> Gorges, 50, and ff.

feeble influence compared with the consequences of the attempt at a permanent establishment near Cape Ann; for White, a minister of Dorchester, a Puritan, but not a Separatist, breathed into the enterprise a higher principle than that of the desire of gain. Roger Conant, having already left New Plymouth for Nantasket, through a brother in England, who was a friend of White, obtained the agency of the adventure. A year's experience proved to the company, that their speculation must change its form, or it would produce no results; the merchants, therefore, paid with honest liberality all the persons whom they had employed, and abandoned the unprofitable scheme. But Conant, a man of extraordinary vigor, "inspired as it were by some superior instinct," and confiding in the active friendship of White, succeeded in breathing a portion of his sublime courage into his three companions; and, making choice of Salem, as opening a convenient place of refuge for the exiles for religion, they resolved to remain as the sentinels of Puritanism on the Bay of Massachusetts.<sup>1</sup>

The design of a plantation was now ripening in the mind of White and his associates in the south-west of England. About the same time, some friends in Lincolnshire fell into discourse about New England; imagination swelled with the thought of planting the pure gospel among the quiet shades of America; it seemed better to depend on the benevolence of uncultivated nature and the care of Providence, than to endure the constraints of the English laws and the severities of the English hierarchy; and who could doubt, that, at the voice of undefiled religion, the wil-

<sup>1</sup> Hubbard, 102. 106—108. Prince, 224. 229. 231. 235. 236. Cotton Mather, b. i. c. iv. s. 3.

CHAP. derness would change to a paradise for a people who  
 IX. lived under a bond with the Omnipresent God?  
 After some deliberation, persons in London and the West Country were made acquainted with the design.<sup>1</sup>

1628. The council for New England, itself incapable of Mar.  
 19. the generous purpose of planting colonies, was ever ready to make sale of patents, which had now become their only source of revenue. Little concerned even at making grants of territory which had already been purchased,<sup>2</sup> they sold to Sir Henry Roswell, Sir John Young, Thomas Southcoat, John Humphrey, John Endicott, and Simon Whetcomb, gentlemen of Dorchester,<sup>3</sup> a belt of land, stretching from the Atlantic to the Pacific, extending three miles south of the River Charles and the Massachusetts Bay, and three miles north of every part of the River Merrimac.<sup>4</sup> The zeal of White sought and soon found other and powerful associates in and about London,<sup>5</sup> kindred spirits, men of religious fervor, uniting the emotions of enthusiasm with unbending perseverance in action,—Winthrop, Dudley, Johnson, Pynchon, Eaton, Saltonstall, Bellingham, so famous in colonial annals, besides many others, men of fortune, and friends to colonial enterprise, who desired to establish a plantation of “the best” of their countrymen on the shores of New England, in a safe seclusion, which the corruptions of human superstition might never invade. Three of the

<sup>1</sup> Dudley to the countess of Lincoln, in i. Mass. Hist. Coll. viii. 37.

The countess of Lincoln, to whom Dudley wrote, was “the approved Lady Brigid,” daughter of Lord Say, the sister-in-law, and *not the mother*, of the Lady Arbella. Savage on Winthrop, i. 2. Walpole’s Royal and Noble Authors, ii. 272—275.

The mother of Arbella was an authoress.

<sup>2</sup> Chalmers, 135.

<sup>3</sup> Hubbard, 108.

<sup>4</sup> Prince, 247. The charter repeats the boundaries.

<sup>5</sup> Hubbard, 109. Mather, i. c. iv. s. 3.

original purchasers parted with all their rights ; Hum- CHAP.  
phrey, Endicot, and Whetcomb, retained an equal in- IX.  
terest with the new partners.<sup>1</sup>

The company, already possessing the firmness of religious zeal and the resources of mercantile opulence, and having now acquired a title to an extensive territory, immediately prepared for the emigration of a colony ; and Endicot—a man of dauntless courage, and that cheerfulness which accompanies courage ; benevolent, though austere ; firm, though choleric ; of a rugged nature, which the sternest form of Puritanism had not served to mellow—was selected as “a fit instrument to begin this wilderness work.”<sup>2</sup> His wife and family were the companions of his voyage, the hostages of his fixed attachment to the New World. His immediate attendants, and those whom the company sent over the same year, in all, not far from one hundred in number,<sup>3</sup> were welcomed by Conant and his faithful associates to gloomy forests and unsubdued fields. Yet, even then, the spirit of enterprise predominated over the melancholy which is impressed upon nature in its savage state ; and seven or more threaded a path through the woods to the neck of land which is now Charlestown. English courage had preceded them ; they found there one English hovel already tenanted.<sup>4</sup>

When the news reached London of the safe arrival of the emigrants, the number of the adventurers had already been much enlarged. The “Boston men” next lent their strength to the company ;<sup>5</sup> and the Puritans throughout England began to take an inter-

1629.

Feb.  
13.Mar.  
2.<sup>1</sup> Prince, 247. Col. Records.

Hist. Coll. i. 123. Dudley's Letter.

<sup>2</sup> Johnson, b. i. c. ix. Hutchinson's Coll. 51, 52.<sup>4</sup> Charlestown Records, in Prince, 250 ; in Edward Everett's Address,<sup>3</sup> Hubbard, 110. Higginson's N. E. Plantation, in i. Mass.

18, 19.

<sup>5</sup> Colony Records.

CHAP. est in the efforts which invited the imagination to  
 IX. indulge in delightful visions. Interest was also made  
 ~~ to obtain a royal charter, with the aid of Bellingham  
 and of White, an eminent lawyer, who advocated the  
 design. The earl of Warwick had always been the  
 friend of the company; Gorges had seemed to favor  
 its advancement;<sup>1</sup> and Lord Dorchester, then one of  
 the secretaries of state, is said<sup>2</sup> to have exerted a pow-  
 erful influence in its behalf. At last, after much labor  
 1629. and large expenditures,<sup>3</sup> the patent<sup>4</sup> for the Company  
 Mar. 4. of the Massachusetts Bay passed the seals; a few  
 days only before Charles I., in a public state-paper,  
 avowed his design of governing without a parliament.

The charter, which bears the signature of Charles I., and which was cherished for more than half a century as the most precious boon, established a corporation, like other corporations within the realm. The associates were constituted a body politic by the name of the Governor and Company of the Massachusetts Bay in New England. The administration of its affairs was intrusted to a governor, deputy, and eighteen assistants, who were to be annually elected by the stockholders, or members of the corporation. Four times a year, or oftener if desired, a general assembly of the freemen was to be held; and to these assemblies, which were invested with the necessary powers of legislation, inquest, and superintendence, the most important affairs were referred. No provision required the assent of the king to render the acts of the body valid; in his eye it was but a

<sup>1</sup> Prince, 254. Gorges' Description, 25. Gorges' Narrative, c. xxvi.

<sup>2</sup> Document in Chalmers.

<sup>3</sup> Letter in Hazard, i. 237.

<sup>4</sup> The patent is at the State House in Boston, and is printed in Colony Laws, in Hutchinson's Coll., and in Hazard.

trading corporation, not a civil government ; its doings <sup>CHAP.</sup>  
~~IX.~~  
were esteemed as indifferent as those of any guild or ~~—~~  
company in England ; and if powers of jurisdiction  
in America were conceded, it was only from the nature  
of the business in which the stockholders were to  
engage.

For the charter designedly granted great facilities for colonization. It allowed the company to transport to its American territory any persons, whether English or foreigners, who would go willingly, would become lieges of the English king, and were not restrained “by especial name.” It empowered, but it did not require, the governor to administer the oaths of supremacy and allegiance ; yet the charter, according to the strict rules of legal interpretation,<sup>1</sup> was far from conceding to the patentees the privilege of freedom of worship. Not a single line alludes to such a purpose ; nor can it be implied by a reasonable construction from any clause. The omission of an express guaranty left religious liberty unprovided for and unprotected. The instrument confers on the colonists the rights of English subjects ; it does not confer on them new and greater rights. On the contrary, they are strictly forbidden to make laws or ordinances repugnant to the laws and statutes of the realm of England. The express concession of power to administer the oath of supremacy, demonstrates that universal religious toleration was not designed ; and the freemen of the corporation, it should be remembered, were not at that time separatists. Even Higginson, and Hooker, and Cotton, were still ministers of the church of England ; nor could the patentees foresee, nor the English government anticipate, how wide a departure from English

<sup>1</sup> Story's MS. Opinion.

CHAP. usages would grow out of the emigration of Puritans  
IX. to America.<sup>1</sup>

Considering the subject from the historical point of view, it must be observed, that the establishment of Episcopacy in New England, as the religion of the state, was impossible ; since the character of the times was a guaranty, that the immense majority of emigrants would prove its uncompromising opponents. Episcopacy had no motive to emigrate ; it was Puritanism, almost alone, that emigrated ; and freedom of Puritan worship was necessarily the purpose and the result of the colony. If the privilege could not have been established as a legal right, it followed so clearly from the facts, that, in 1662, the sovereign of England, probably with the assent and at the instance of Clarendon, declared, "the principle and foundation of the charter of Massachusetts to be the freedom of liberty of conscience."<sup>2</sup>

The political condition of the colonists was not deemed by King Charles a subject worthy of his consideration. Full legislative and executive authority was conferred, not on the emigrants, but on the company, of which the emigrants could not be active members, so long as the charter of the corporation remained in England. The associates in London were to establish ordinances, to settle forms of government, to name all necessary officers, to prescribe their duties, and to establish a criminal code. Massachusetts was not erected into a province, to be governed by laws of its own enactment ; it was reserved for the corporation to decide what degree of

<sup>1</sup> The editor of Winthrop did me the kindness to read to me unpublished letters, which are in his possession, and which prove that the

Puritans in England were amazed, as well as alarmed, at the boldness of their brethren in Massachusetts.

<sup>2</sup> Document in Hutch. Coll. 378.

civil rights its colonists should enjoy. The charter on <sup>CHAP.</sup> ~~IX.~~ which the freemen of Massachusetts succeeded in ~~in~~ erecting a system of independent representative <sup>1629.</sup> liberty, did not secure to them a single privilege of self-government; but left them, as the Virginians had been left, without one valuable franchise, at the mercy of a corporation within the realm. This was so evident, that some of those who had already emigrated clamored that they were become slaves.<sup>1</sup>

It was equally the right of the corporation to establish the terms on which new members should be admitted to its freedom. Its numbers could be enlarged or changed only by its own consent.

It was perhaps implied, though it was not expressly required, that the affairs of the company should be administered in England; yet the place for holding the courts was not specially appointed. What if the corporation should vote the emigrants to be freemen, and call a meeting beyond the Atlantic? What if the governor, deputy, assistants, and freemen, should themselves emigrate, and thus break down the distinction between the colony and the corporation? The history of Massachusetts is the counterpart to that of Virginia; the latter obtained its greatest liberty by the abrogation of the charter of its company; the former by a transfer of its charter, and a daring construction of its powers by the successors of the original patentees.

The charter had been granted in March; in April, preparations were hastening for the embarkation of new emigrants. The government which was now established for Massachusetts merits commemoration, though it was never duly organized. It was to consist

<sup>1</sup> Hazard, i. 257.

CHAP. IX. of a governor and counsellors, of whom eight out of the thirteen were appointed by the corporation in 1629. England; three were to be named by these eight; and, as it was said, to remove all grounds of discontent, the choice of the remaining two counsellors was granted to the colonists as a liberal boon. The board, when thus constituted, was invested with all the powers of legislation, justice, and administration. Such was the inauspicious dawn of civil and religious liberty on the Bay of Massachusetts.<sup>1</sup>

Benevolent instructions to Endicott were at the same time issued. "If any of the salvages"—such were the orders long and uniformly followed in all changes of government, and placed on record more than half a century before William Penn proclaimed the principles of peace on the borders of the Delaware—"pretend right of inheritance to all or any part of the lands granted in our patent, we pray you endeavor to purchase their tytle, that we may avoid the least scruple of intrusion." "Particularly publish, that no wrong or injury be offered to the natives."<sup>2</sup>

The departure of the fleet for America was now anxiously desired. The colonists were to be cheered by the presence of religious teachers; and the excellent and truly catholic John Higginson, an eminent non-conforming minister, receiving an invitation to conduct the emigrants, esteemed it as a call from Heaven.<sup>3</sup> The propagation of the gospel among the heathen was earnestly desired; in pious sincerity they resolved if possible to redeem these wrecks of human nature; the colony seal was an Indian, erect,

<sup>1</sup> Col. Records. Hazard, i. 256—268, and 268—271. Bentley, in i. Mass. Hist. Coll. vi. 235, 236.

<sup>2</sup> Hazard, i. 263, 277.  
<sup>3</sup> Hutchinson's Coll. 24, 25. Hubbard, 112.

with an arrow in his right hand, and the motto, CHAP.  
IX.  
“Come over and help us;”<sup>1</sup>—a device of which the ~~  
appropriateness has been lost by the modern substitu- 1629.  
tion of the favorite line of Algernon Sidney;—and  
three additional ministers attended the expedition.  
The company of emigrants was winnowed before  
sailing; and servants of ill life were discharged.  
“No idle drone may live amongst us,”<sup>2</sup> was the  
spirit as well as the law of the dauntless community,  
which was to turn the sterility of New England into a  
cluster of wealthy states.

As the ships were bearing Higginson and his fol- May.  
lowers out of sight of their native land, they remem-  
bered it, not as the scene of their sufferings from  
intolerance, but as the home of their fathers, and the  
dwelling-place of their friends. They did not say  
“Farewell, Babylon! farewell, Rome! but FAREWELL,  
DEAR ENGLAND!”<sup>3</sup>

It was in the last days of June, that the little  
band of two hundred arrived at Salem, where the  
“corruptions of the English church” were never to  
be planted, and where a new “reformation” was to  
be reduced to practice. They found neither church  
nor town; eight or ten pitiful hovels, one more  
stately tenement for the governor, and a few corn-  
fields, were the only proofs that they had been pre-  
ceded by their countrymen. The whole body of  
old and new planters now amounted to three hun-  
dred; of whom one third joined the infant settlement  
at Charlestown.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Douglass, i. 409. Douglass is of course, the highest authority.  
almost as rash as Oldmixon.

See Hutchinson's Collection, 32—

<sup>2</sup> Hazard, i. 283, 284, 256.

50, and i. Mass. Hist. Coll. i. 117—

<sup>3</sup> Mather, b. iii. c. i. s. 12.

124. Charlestown Records, in

<sup>4</sup> Higginson's whole account is,

Prince, 261.

CHAP. IX. To the great European world the few tenants of  
 the mud-hovels and log-cabins at Salem might appear  
 too insignificant to merit notice ; to themselves they  
 were as the chosen emissaries of God ; outcasts from  
 England, yet favorites with Heaven ; destitute of se-  
 curity, of convenient food and shelter, and yet blessed  
 beyond all mankind, for they were the depositaries of  
 the purest truth, and the selected instruments to kindle  
 in the wilderness the beacon of pure religion, of which  
 the undying light should not only penetrate the wig-  
 wams of the heathen, but spread its benignant beams  
 across the darkness of the whole civilized world. The  
 emigrants were not so much a body politic, as a church  
 in the wilderness, with no benefactor around them  
 but nature, no present sovereign but God. An entire  
 separation was made between state and church ; re-  
 ligious worship was established on the basis of the in-  
 dependence of each separate religious community ; all  
 officers of the church were elected by its members ;  
 and these rigid Calvinists, of whose rude intolerance  
 the world has been filled with malignant calumnies,  
 subscribed a covenant, cherishing, it is true, the se-  
 verest virtues, but without one tinge of fanaticism. It  
 was an act of piety, not of study ; it favored virtue, not  
 superstition ; inquiry, and not submission. The people  
 were enthusiasts, but not bigots.<sup>1</sup> The church was  
 self-constituted.<sup>2</sup> It did not ask the assent of the  
 king, or recognize him as its head ; its officers were  
 set apart and ordained among themselves ;<sup>3</sup> it used no  
 liturgy ; it rejected unnecessary ceremonies, and re-  
 duced the simplicity of Calvin to a still plainer stand-

<sup>1</sup> See the covenant in Neal's N. E., i. 141—143, and in Bentley's Salem, App. No. iv.

<sup>2</sup> Hubbard, 116—120. Prince,

263, 264. Neal's N. England, i. 144. <sup>3</sup> Felt's Annals of Salem, 573—an accurate and useful work, the fruit of much original research.

ard. The motives which controlled their decisions were so deeply seated in the very character of their party, that the doctrine and discipline then established at Salem remained the rule of Puritans in New England.

CHAP.  
IX.

There existed, even in this little company, a few individuals to whom the new system was unexpected ; and in John and Samuel Browne, they found able leaders. Both were members of the colonial council ; they had been favorites of the corporation in England ; and one of them, an experienced lawyer, had been a member of the board of assistants in London.<sup>1</sup> They declared their dissent from the church of Higginson ; and, at every risk of union and tranquillity, they insisted upon the use of the English liturgy. But should the emigrants give up the very purpose for which they had crossed the Atlantic ? Should not even the forests of Massachusetts be safe against the intrusion of the hierarchy, before which they had fled ? They were, in one sense, a garrison, set for the defence of the territory against insincere friends not less than open foes. They deemed the coëxistence of their liberty and of prelacy impossible : anticipating invasions of their rights, they feared to find in the adherents of the Establishment persons who would act as spies in the camp, and betray them to their persecuting adversaries ; the form of religion, from which they had suffered, was therefore attacked, not as a sect, but as a tyranny.<sup>2</sup> The charter, by implication, had conferred on the company the right of expelling from its colonial domains every person whose presence seemed a detriment to its welfare ;

<sup>1</sup> Hazard, i. 267. 269.

<sup>2</sup> Montesquieu, L. xxv. c. ix.

Hutchinson, quoting the remark, omits the best part of it.

CHAP. and the instructions from the company required the  
 IX. enforcement of the provision.<sup>1</sup> Finding it to be a  
 1629. vain attempt to persuade the Brownes to relinquish  
 their resolute opposition, and believing that their  
 speeches tended to produce disorder and dangerous  
 feuds, Endicot sent them to England in the returning  
 ships; and faction, deprived of its leaders, died away.<sup>2</sup>

1629      Winter brought disease and the sufferings incident  
 to 1630. to early settlements. Above eighty, almost half of the  
 emigrants, died before spring;<sup>3</sup> lamenting only that  
 they were removed from the world before beholding  
 the perfect establishment of their religion. Higginson  
 himself fell a victim to a hectic fever; the future  
 prosperity of New England, and the glories of the  
 many churches which were to adorn and gladden the  
 wilderness, were the cheering visions, that, in the  
 hour of death, floated before his eyes.<sup>4</sup>

1629. The Brownes returned to England, breathing ineffectual menaces.<sup>5</sup> The ships also carried with them a description of New England by Higginson; a tract of which three editions were published within a few months, so intense an interest in the new colony had been diffused throughout the realm.

For the concession of the Massachusetts charter seemed to the Puritans like a summons from Heaven, inviting them to America. There the gospel might be taught in its purity; and the works of nature would alone be the safe witnesses of their devotions. England, by her persecutions, proved herself weary of her inhabitants, who were now esteemed more vile

<sup>1</sup> "If any prove incorrigible, ship such persons home by the Lyon's Whelp." Hazard, i. 263.

<sup>2</sup> Prince, 264. Bentley, 241, 242. Mather, b. i. c. 4. s. 3. Eliot, in i. Mass. Hist. Coll. ix. 3—6. Chal-

mers, 144—146. Neal's N. E., i. 144, 145. The liberal Ebeling, i. 869, defends the measure.

<sup>3</sup> Dudley, 38. Prince, 271.

<sup>4</sup> Mather, b. iii. c. i. s. 14.

<sup>5</sup> Hazard, i. 287. 289.

than the earth on which they trod. Habits of expense degraded men of moderate fortune; and even the schools, which should be the fountains of living waters, had become corrupt. The New World shared in the providence of God; it had claims, therefore, to the benevolence and exertions of man. What nobler work than to abandon the comforts of England, and plant the church in a remote land, into which the advocates of false religion should never penetrate?

But was it right, a scrupulous conscience demanded, to fly from persecutions? Yes, they answered, for persecutions might lead their posterity to abjure the truth. The certain misery of their wives and children was the most gloomy of their forebodings; and it must have been a stern sense of duty, which could command the powerful emotions of nature to be silent, and set aside all considerations of physical evils as the fears of too carnal minds. The rights of the natives offered an impediment more easily removed; much land had been desolated by the plague; and the good leave of the Indians might be purchased. The ill success of other plantations could not chill the rising enthusiasm: former enterprise had aimed at profit; the present object was purity of religion: the earlier settlements had been filled with a lawless multitude; it was now proposed to form "a peculiar government," and to colonize "THE BEST." Such were the "Conclusions"<sup>1</sup> which were privately circulated among the Puritans of England.

On the suggestion of the generous Matthew Cradock, the governor of the company,<sup>2</sup> it was proposed

1629  
July 28.

<sup>1</sup> Hutchinson's Collect. 27—31.  
Mather, b. i. c. iv. s. 5.

<sup>2</sup> Prince, 262. Savage on Winthrop, i. 2. I have carefully consult-

ed the Colony Records, which are, in general, in a good state of preservation, and which are diffuse on the subject of the transfer of the charter.

CHAP. that the charter should be transferred to those of the  
<sup>IX.</sup>  
 freemen who should themselves inhabit the colony ;  
 1629. and the question immediately became the most im-  
 portant that could be debated. An agreement was  
 Aug. 24. at once formed at Cambridge in England, between  
 men of fortune and education, that they would them-  
 selves embark for America, if, before the last of Sep-  
 tember, the whole government should be legally trans-  
 ferred to them and the other freemen of the company,  
 who should inhabit the plantation.<sup>1</sup> The plan was  
 sufficient to excite in the family of John Winthrop,  
 and in many of the purest men in England, the  
 desire to emigrate. "I shall call that my country,"  
 said the younger Winthrop to his father, "where I  
 may most glorify God, and enjoy the presence of my  
 dearest friends. Therefore herein I submit myself to  
 God's will and yours, and dedicate myself to God  
 and the company, with the whole endeavors, both  
 of body and mind. The Conclusions which you  
 sent down are unanswerable ; and it cannot but be a  
 prosperous action which is so well allowed by the  
 judgments of God's prophets, undertaken by so reli-  
 gious and wise worthies in Israel, and indented to  
 Aug. 31. God's glory in so special a service."<sup>2</sup> Two days  
 after the contract had been executed, the subject was  
 Sept. 1. again brought before the court. A serious debate  
 ensued, and continued the next day, when it was fully  
 and with general consent declared, that the govern-  
 ment and the patent should be transferred beyond the  
 Atlantic, and settled in New England.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Hutchinson's Coll. 25, 26.

<sup>2</sup> Winthrop, i. 359, 360. The publicity of the admirable letter is due to Savage.

<sup>3</sup> Records, i. 31 ; "soe far as it

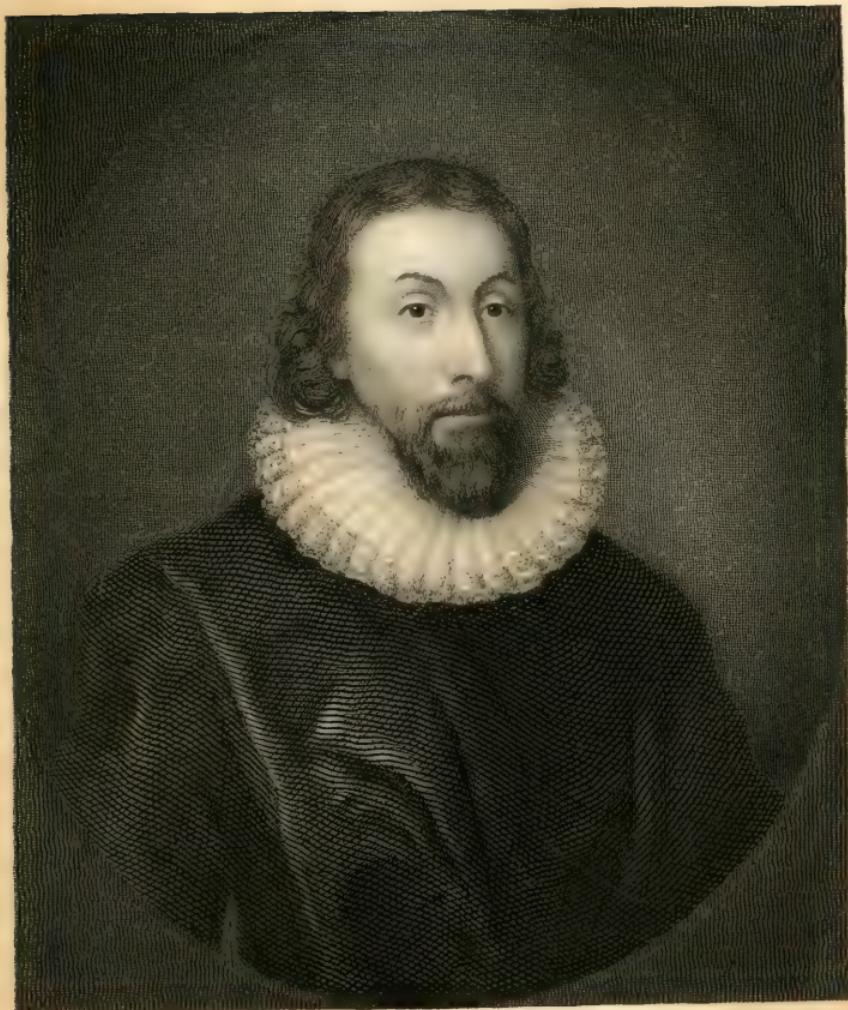
may be done legally." Yet, Sept. 29, 1629, a committee was raised "to take advice of Learned Counsell, whether the same may be legally done or no." Records, i. 33.

This vote was simply a decision of the question, where the future meetings of the company should be held; and yet it effectually changed a commercial corporation into an independent provincial government. The measure was believed to be consistent with the principles of the charter. The corporation did not sell itself; the corporation emigrated. They could not assign the patent; but they could call a legal meeting at London or on board ship in an English harbor; and why not in the port of Salem as well as at the Isle of Wight? in a cabin or under a tree at Charlestown, as well as at the house of Goffe in London? The propriety of the measure in a juridical point of view, has been questioned.<sup>1</sup> "The charter," said the government of Charles II. in 1679, "was originally to have been executed in the kingdom;" yet, two years before, the chief-justices Rainsford and North described the "charter as making the adventurers a corporation upon the place." Similar patents were granted by the Long Parliament and Charles II., to be exercised in Rhode Island and Connecticut; Baltimore and Penn long resided on their domains; and the Pilgrims brought with them a patent, which, it is true, had not passed the seals, but which was invalid for a very different reason. But, whatever may be thought of the legality of the transfer of the charter, it certainly conferred no new franchises or power on the emigrants, unless they were already members of the company; it admitted no new freemen; it gave to Massachusetts a present government; but the corporation, though it was to meet in New England, retained in its full integrity the chartered

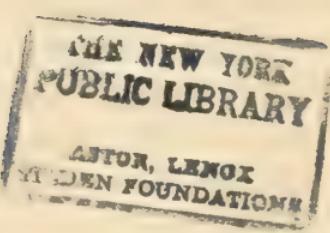
<sup>1</sup> Story's MS. Opinion.

CHAP. right of admitting freemen according to its pleasure.  
IX.  
~~~ The manner in which that power was to be exer-  
1629. cised would control the early political character of  
Massachusetts.

Oct. 20. At the court convened for the purpose of appoint-  
ing officers who would emigrate, John Winthrop, a  
man approved for piety, liberality, and conduct, was  
chosen governor, and the whole board of assistants  
1630. selected for America. Yet, as the hour of departure  
Feb. drew near, the consciousness of danger spread such  
terrors, that even the hearts of the strong began to  
fail. One and another of the magistrates declined.  
Mar. 18. It became necessary to hold a court at Southampton  
for the election of three substitutes among the assist-  
ants; and of these three, one never came over. Even  
after they had embarked, a court was held on board  
the Arbella, and Thomas Dudley was chosen deputy-  
governor in the place of Humphrey, who staid behind.  
Dudley emigrated, and had hardly reached America,  
before he repented that he had come; the country had  
been described in too favorable colors. It was princi-  
pally the calm decision of Winthrop which sustained  
the courage of his companions. In him a yielding  
gentleness of temper was secured against weakness  
by deep but tranquil enthusiasm. "Parent-like dis-  
tributing his goods to brethren and neighbors at his  
first coming," and, for the welfare of Massachusetts,  
cheerfully encountering poverty and premature age,  
his lenient benevolence could temper, if not subdue,  
the bigotry of his times. An honest royalist, averse  
to pure democracy, yet firm in his regard for existing  
popular liberties; in England a conformist, yet loving  
"gospel purity" even to Independency; in America  
mildly aristocratic, advocating a government of "the



Go: wnt hys:



least part," yet desiring that part to be "the wiser CHAP.  
of the best;" disinterested, brave, and conscientious, IX.  
—his character marks the transition of the reformation 1630.  
into avowed republicanism; when the sentiment of  
loyalty, still sacredly cherished, was gradually yielding  
to the irresistible spirit of civil freedom.

The whole number of ships employed during the season was seventeen; and they carried over not far from fifteen hundred souls. About eight hundred—all of them Puritans, inclined to the party of the Independents; many of them men of high endowments, large fortune, and the best education; scholars, well versed in all the learning of the times; clergymen, who ranked among the most eloquent and pious in the realm—embarked with Winthrop for their asylum, bearing with them the charter, which was to be the basis of their liberties. The land was planted with a noble vine, wholly of the right seed. Religion did not expel the feelings of nature: before leaving Yarmouth, they published to the world the grounds of their removal, and bade an affectionate farewell to the church of England and to the land of their nativity. "Our hearts," say they, "shall be fountains of tears for your everlasting welfare, when we shall be in our poor cottages in the wilderness."

The emigrants were a body of sincere believers, desiring purity of religion, and not a colony of philosophers, bent upon universal toleration. Reverence for their faith led them to a new hemisphere, where distance might protect them from inquisition; to a soil of which they had purchased the exclusive possession, with a charter of which they had acquired the entire control; for the sake of reducing to practice the doctrines of religion and the forms of civil

CHAP. liberty, which they cherished more than life itself.  
<sup>IX.</sup> They constituted a corporation to which they themselves might establish, at their pleasure, the terms of admission. They held in their own hands the key to their asylum, and maintained their right of closing its doors against the enemies of its harmony and its safety.

In June and July, the ships which bore Winthrop and his immediate companions, arrived to a scene of gloom ; such of the earlier emigrants as had survived the previous winter, were poor and weak from sickness ; their corn and bread were hardly enough for a fortnight's supply. Instead of offering a welcome, they thronged to the new-comers to be fed. Nearly two hundred servants, who had been sent over at a great expense, received their liberty, free from all engagements : their labor—such was the excessive scarcity—was worth less than the cost of their maintenance.

The selection of places for the new plantations became the immediate care. The bay and the adjoining rivers were examined : if Charlestown was the place of the first sojourning, it was not long before the fires of civilization, never more to be quenched, were kindled in Boston and the adjacent villages. Boston, especially, had “sweet and pleasant springs,” “and good land, affording rich corn-fields and fruitful gardens.” The dispersion of the company was esteemed a grievance; but no time was left for long deliberation, and those who had health began to build. Yet sickness delayed the progress of the work; and death often withdrew the laborer from the fruit of his exertions. Every hardship was encountered. The emigrants lodged at best in tents of cloth and in

miserable hovels ; they beheld their friends “ weekly, <sup>CHAP.</sup>  
~~IX.~~ yea, almost daily, drop away before their eyes ; ” in a ~~country~~ <sup>1630.</sup> country abounding in secret fountains, they perished for the want of good water. Many of them had been accustomed to plenty and ease, the refinements of cultivated life, and the conveniences of luxury. Woman was there to struggle against unforeseen hardships, unwonted sorrows ; the men, who defied trials for themselves, were miserable at beholding those whom they cherished dismayed by the horrors which encompassed them. The virtues of Arbella Johnson, a daughter of the house of Lincoln, could not break through the gloomy shadows that surrounded her ; and as she had been ill before her arrival, grief soon hurried her to the grave. Her husband, one of the first men in the colony, zealous for pure religion, in life “ the greatest furtherer of the plantation,” and by his bequests a benefactor of the infant state, was subdued by the force of disease and afflictions ; but “ he died willingly and in sweet peace,” making a “ most godly end.” Winthrop lost a son, though not by disease. A hundred or more, some of them of the board of assistants, men who had enjoyed high consideration, and had been revered with confidence as the inseparable companions of the common misery or the common success, disheartened by the scenes of woe, and dreading famine and death, deserted Massachusetts, and sailed for England. Before December, two hundred, at the least, had died. Yet, as the brightest lightnings are kindled in the darkest clouds, the general distress did but augment the piety and confirm the fortitude of the colonists. Their enthusiasm was softened by the mildest sympathy with suffering humanity ; while a sincere religious

CHAP. IX. faith kept guard against despondency and weakness. Not a hurried line, not a trace of repining, appears in 1630. their records; the congregations always assembled at the stated times, whether in the open fields or under the shade of an ancient tree; in the midst of want they abounded in hope; in the solitudes of the wilderness, they believed themselves in company with the Greatest, the most Benevolent of Beings. Honor is due not less to those who perished than to those who survived; to the martyrs the hour of death was an hour of triumph; such as is never witnessed in more tranquil seasons; just as there can be no gorgeous sunset, but when the vapors of evening gather in heavy masses round the west, to reflect the glories of declining day. For that placid resignation, which diffuses grace round the bed of sickness, and makes death too serene for sorrow and too beautiful for fear, no one was more remarkable than the daughter of Thomas Sharp, whose youth and sex, and, as it seemed, unequalled virtues, won the warmest eulogies of the austere Dudley. Even children caught the spirit of the place; and in their last hours, awoke to the awful mystery of the impending change, awaited its approach in the tranquil confidence of faith, and went to the grave full of immortality. The survivors bore all things meekly, "remembering the end of their coming hither." "We here enjoy God and Jesus Christ," wrote Winthrop to his wife, whom pregnancy had detained in England, "and is not this enough? I thank God I like so well to be here, as I do not repent my coming. I would not have altered my course, though I had foreseen all these afflictions. I never had more content of mind."

Such were the scenes in the infant settlements of

Massachusetts. In the two following years, the colony CHAP.  
had not even the comfort of receiving large accessions. ~~~  
In 1631, ninety only came over; a smaller number 1630.  
than had returned the preceding year. In 1632, no  
more than two hundred and fifty arrived. Men  
dreaded the hazards of the voyage and the wilderness;  
and waited to learn the success of the first adven-  
turers. Those who had deserted excused their  
cowardice by defaming the country. Dudley wrote  
plainly of the hardships to be encountered; and, more-  
over, the apprehension was soon raised, and never  
quieted, that the liberties of the colonists would be  
subverted by the government in England.

Purity of religion and civil liberty were the objects  
nearest the wishes of the emigrants. The first court Aug.  
of assistants took measures for the support of the  
ministers. As others followed, the form of the ad-  
ministration was considered; that the liberties of the  
people might be secured against the encroachments of  
the rulers; "for," say they, "the waves of the sea  
do not more certainly waste the shore, than the minds  
of ambitious men are led to invade the liberties of  
their brethren." By the charter, fundamental laws  
were to be enacted in the assembly of all the freemen  
of the colony; and a general court was accordingly  
convened at Boston to settle the government. More  
than one hundred persons, many of them old planters  
and members of no church, were admitted to the  
franchises of the corporation; the inconvenience of  
gathering the whole body for purposes of legislation  
became but the greater and the more apparent; and  
the people did but reserve to themselves the right of  
filling such vacancies as might occur in the board of  
assistants. Thus the government became, for a season,

23.

Oct.  
19.

CHAP. an elective aristocracy ; the magistrates, holding their  
IX. offices for no limited period, were to choose the go-  
~~~ vernor and deputy from among themselves, and were  
intrusted with every branch of political power.

1631. This arrangement was temporary. At the next  
May, general court, convened late in May, after "the corn  
O. S. 18,  
N. S. 28. was set," the freemen, scarce one hundred and fifty in  
number, revoking a part of the authority of which they  
had been too lavish, reserved to the commons the right  
of annually making in the board such changes as a  
majority should desire. Should the right not be exer-  
cised, the former magistrates remained in power. And  
a law of still greater moment, pregnant with evil and  
with good, was at the same time established. "To  
the end the body of the commons may be preserved of  
honest and good men, it was ordered and agreed, that,  
for the time to come, no man shall be admitted to the  
freedom of this body politic, but such as are members  
of some of the churches within the limits of the same."  
Thus was the elective franchise narrowed. The polity  
was a sort of theocracy ; God himself was to govern  
his people ; and the select band of religious votaries—  
the men whose names an immutable decree had regis-  
tered from eternity as the objects of divine love, whose  
election had been manifested to the world by their con-  
scious experience of religion in the heart, whose union  
was confirmed by the most solemn compact formed  
with Heaven and one another, around the memorials  
of a crucified Redeemer—were, by the fundamental law  
of the colony, constituted the oracle of the divine will.  
An aristocracy was founded, but not of wealth. The  
servant, the bondman, might be a member of the  
church, and therefore a freeman of the company.  
Other states have limited the possession of political  
rights to the opulent, to free-holders, to the first-

born ; the Calvinists of Massachusetts, scrupulously refusing to the clergy the least shadow of political power, established the reign of the visible church—a commonwealth of the chosen people in covenant with God.

The dangers apprehended from England seemed to require a union consecrated by the holiest rites. The public mind of the colony was in other respects ripening for democratic liberty. It could not rest satisfied with leaving the assistants in possession of all authority, and of an almost independent existence ; and the magistrates, with the exception of the passionate Ludlow, were willing to yield. It was therefore agreed, at the next general court, that the governor and assistants should be annually chosen. The people, satisfied with the recognition of their right, re-elected their former magistrates with silence and modesty. The germ of a representative government was already visible ; each town was ordered to choose two men, to appear at the next court of assistants, and concert a plan for a public treasury. The measure had become necessary ; for a levy, made by the assistants alone, had already awakened alarm and opposition.

While a happy destiny was thus preparing for Massachusetts a representative government, relations of friendship were established with the natives. From the banks of the Connecticut came the sagamore of the Mohegans, to extol the fertility of his country, and solicit an English plantation as a bulwark against the Pequods ; the nearer Nipmucks invoked the aid of the emigrants against the tyranny of the Mohawks ; the son of the aged Canonicus exchanged presents with the governor ; and Miantonomoh himself, the great warrior of the Narragansetts, the youthful colleague of Canonicus, became a guest at the board of Winthrop, and was present with the congregation at a

1632.  
May  
8.

1631.  
April  
4.

May  
16.

July  
13.

1632.  
Aug.  
5.

CHAP. sermon from Wilson. At last a Pequod sachem, with  
IX. great store of wampumpeag, and bundles of sticks in  
1634. promise of so many beaver and otter skins, also came  
Nov. 6. to solicit the English alliance and mediation.

Intercourse was also cherished with the earlier European settlements. To perfect friendship with the pilgrims, the governor of Massachusetts, with  
1632. Oct. 26. Wilson, pastor of Boston, repaired to Plymouth.  
From the south shore of Boston harbor, it was a day's journey, for they travelled on foot. In honor of the great event, Bradford and Brewster, the governor and elder of the Old Colony, came forth to meet them, and conduct them to the town, where they were kindly entertained and feasted. "On the Lord's day, they did partake of the sacrament;" in the afternoon, a question was propounded for discussion; the pastor spoke briefly; the teacher prophesied; the governor of Plymouth, the elder, and others of the congregation, took part in the debate, which, by express desire, was closed by the guests from Boston. Thus was fellowship confirmed with Plymouth. From the Chesapeake a rich freight of corn had already been received, and trade was begun with the Dutch at Hudson's River.

These better auspices, and the invitations of Win-  
1633. throp, won new emigrants from Europe. During the July long summer voyage of the two hundred passengers, and Aug. who freighted the Griffin, three sermons a day beguiled their weariness. Among them was Haynes, a man of very large estate, and larger affections; of a "heavenly" mind, and a spotless life; of rare sagacity, and accurate but unassuming judgment; by nature tolerant, ever a friend to freedom, ever conciliating peace; an able legislator; dear to the people by his benevolent virtues and his disinterested conduct. Then also came the most revered spiritual teachers of two common-

wealths—the acute and subtile Cotton, the son of a CHAP.  
IX.  
Puritan lawyer; eminent at Cambridge as a scholar; —  
quick in the nice perception of distinctions, and pliant 1633.  
in dialectics; in manner persuasive rather than com-  
manding; skilled in the fathers and the schoolmen, but  
finding all their wisdom compactly stored in Calvin;  
deeply devout by nature as well as habit from child-  
hood; hating heresy and still precipitately eager to  
prevent evil actions by suppressing ill opinions, yet  
verging towards a progress in truth and in religious  
freedom; an avowed enemy to democracy, which he  
feared as the blind despotism of animal instincts in  
the multitude, yet opposing hereditary power in all its  
forms; desiring a government of moral opinion, accord-  
ing to the laws of universal equity, and claiming “the  
ultimate resolution for the whole body of the peo-  
ple:”—and Hooker, of vast endowments, a strong  
will, and an energetic mind; ingenuous in his temper,  
and open in his professions; trained to benevolence by  
the discipline of affliction; versed in tolerance by his  
refuge in Holland; choleric, yet gentle in his affections;  
firm in his faith, yet readily yielding to the power of  
reason; the peer of the reformers, without their harsh-  
ness; the devoted apostle to the humble and the  
poor, severe towards the proud, mild in his soothings of  
a wounded spirit, glowing with the raptures of devo-  
tion, and kindling with the messages of redeeming  
love; his eye, voice, gesture, and whole frame animate  
with the living vigor of heart-felt religion; public-  
spirited and lavishly charitable; and, “though persecu-  
tions and banishments had awaited him as one wave  
follows another,” ever serenely blessed with “a glorious  
peace of soul;” fixed in his trust in Providence, and in  
his adhesion to that cause of advancing civilization,  
which he cherished always, even while it remained to

CHAP. him a mystery. This was he, whom, for his abilities  
<sup>IX.</sup> and services, his contemporaries placed “in the first  
1633. rank” of men; praising him as “the one rich pearl,  
with which Europe more than repaid America for the  
treasures from her coast.” The people to whom Hooker  
ministered had preceded him; as he landed, they  
Sept. crowded about him with their welcome. “Now I live”  
<sub>4.</sub> —exclaimed he, as with open arms he embraced them  
—“now I live, if ye stand fast in the Lord.”

1634. Thus recruited, the little band in Massachusetts  
grew more jealous of its liberties. “The prophets in  
exile see the true forms of the house.” By a general  
impulse, the freemen of the towns chose deputies to  
consider in advance the duties of the general court.  
The charter plainly gave legislative power to the whole  
body of the freemen; if it allowed representatives,  
thought Winthrop, it was only by inference; and as  
the whole people could not always assemble, the chief  
power, it was argued, lay necessarily with the assistants.

Far different was the reasoning of the people. To  
May. check the democratic tendency, Cotton, on the election  
day, preached to the assembled freemen against rota-  
tion in office. The right of an honest magistrate to his  
place was like that of a proprietor to his freehold.  
But the electors, now full three hundred and eighty in  
number, were bent on exercising “their absolute  
power,” and, reversing the decision of the pulpit, chose  
a new governor and deputy. The mode of taking the  
votes was at the same time reformed; and instead of  
the erection of hands, the ballot-box was introduced.  
Thus “the people established a reformation of such  
things as they judged to be amiss in the government.”

It was further decreed, that the whole body of the  
freemen should be convened only for the election of the  
magistrates; to these, with deputies to be chosen by

the several towns, the powers of legislation and appointment were henceforward intrusted. The trading corporation was unconsciously become a representative democracy.

The law against arbitrary taxation followed. None but the immediate representatives of the people might dispose of lands or raise money. Thus early did Massachusetts echo the voice of Virginia ; like the mountain replying to the thunder, or like deep calling unto deep. The state was filled with the hum of village politicians ; “ the freemen of every town in the Bay were busy in inquiring into their liberties and privileges.” With the exception of the principle of universal suffrage, now so happily established, the representative democracy was as perfect two centuries ago as it is to-day. Even the magistrates, who acted as judges, held their office by the annual popular choice. “ Elections cannot be safe there long,” said the lawyer Lechford. The same prediction has been made these two hundred years. The public mind, ever in perpetual agitation, is still easily shaken, even by slight and transient impulses ; but after all its vibrations, it follows the laws of the moral world, and safely recovers its balance.

To limit the discretion of the executive, the people next demanded a written constitution ; and a commission was appointed “ to frame a body of grounds of laws in resemblance to a magna charta,” to serve as a bill of rights. The ministers, as well as the general court, were to pass judgment on the work ; and, with partial success, Cotton urged that God’s people should be governed by the laws from God to Moses.

The relative powers of the assistants and the deputies remained for nearly ten years the subject of discussion and contest. Both were elected by the people ; the former by the whole colony, the latter by the sev-

1635.  
May.

1644.  
to

CHAP. <sup>IX.</sup> eral towns. The two bodies acted together in convention; but the assistants claimed and exercised the further right of a separate negative vote on all joint proceedings. The popular branch resisted; yet the authority of the patricians was long maintained, sometimes by wise delay, sometimes by "a judicious sermon;" till, at 1644. last, a compromise divided the court into two branches, Mar. and gave to each a negative on the other.

The controversy had required the arbitrament of the elders; for the rock on which the state rested was religion; a common faith had gathered, and still bound the people together. They were exclusive, for they had come to the outside of the world for the privilege of living by themselves. Fugitives from persecution, they shrank from contradiction as from the approach of peril. And why should they open their asylum to their oppressors? Religious union was made the bulwark of the exiles against expected attacks from the hierarchy of England. The wide continent of America invited colonization; they claimed their own narrow domains for "the brethren." Their religion was their life; they welcomed none but its adherents; they could not tolerate the scoffer, the infidel, or the dissenter; and the whole people met together in their congregations. Such was the system, cherished as the strong-hold of their freedom and their happiness. "The order of the churches and the commonwealth," wrote Cotton to friends in Holland, "is now so settled in New England by common consent, that it brings to mind the new heaven and new earth wherein dwells righteousness."

While the state was thus connecting by the closest bonds the energy of its faith with its form of government, there appeared in its midst one of those clear

minds, which sometimes bless the world by their power of receiving moral truth in its purest light, and of reducing the just conclusions of their principles to a happy and consistent practice. In February of the first year of the colony, but a few months after the arrival of Winthrop, and before either Cotton or Hooker had embarked for New England, there arrived at Nantasket, after a stormy passage of sixty-six days, "a young minister, godly and zealous, having precious" gifts. It was Roger Williams. He was then but a little more than thirty years of age; but his mind had already matured a doctrine which secures him an immortality of fame, as its application has given religious peace to the American world. He was a Puritan, and a fugitive from English persecution; but his wrongs had not clouded his accurate understanding; in the capacious recesses of his mind he had revolved the nature of intolerance, and he, and he alone, had arrived at the great principle which is its sole effectual remedy. He announced his discovery under the simple proposition of the sanctity of conscience. The civil magistrate should restrain crime, but never control opinion; should punish guilt, but never violate the freedom of the soul. The doctrine contained within itself an entire reformation of theological jurisprudence: it would blot from the statute-book the felony of non-conformity; would quench the fires that persecution had so long kept burning; would repeal every law compelling attendance on public worship; would abolish tithes and all forced contributions to the maintenance of religion; would give an equal protection to every form of religious faith; and never suffer the authority of the civil government to be enlisted against the mosque of the Mussulman or

1631.  
Feb. 5.

CHAP. IX. the altar of the fire-worshipper, against the Jewish synagogue or the Roman cathedral. It is wonderful with what distinctness Roger Williams deduced these inferences from his great principle, the consistency with which, like Pascal and Edwards, those bold and profound reasoners on other subjects, he accepted every fair inference from his doctrines, and the circumspection with which he repelled every unjust imputation. In the unwavering assertion of his views he never changed his position ; the sanctity of conscience was the great tenet, which, with all its consequences, he defended, as he first trod the shores of New England; and in his extreme old age it was the last pulsation of his heart. But it placed the young emigrant in direct opposition to the whole system on which Massachusetts was founded ; and gentle and forgiving as was his temper, prompt as he was to concede every thing which honesty permitted, he always asserted his belief with temperate firmness and unbending benevolence.

So soon, therefore, as Williams arrived in Boston, he found himself among the New England churches, but not of them. They had not yet renounced the use of force in religion ; and he could not with his entire mind adhere to churches which retained the offensive features of English legislation. What, then, was the commotion in the colony, when it was found that the people of Salem desired to receive him as their teacher ! The court of Boston "marvelled" at the precipitate decision, and the people of Salem were required to forbear. Williams withdrew to the settlement of Plymouth, and remained there about two years. But his virtues had won the affections of the 1633. church of Salem ; and the apostle of intellectual lib-

erty was once more welcomed to their confidence. CHAP.  
IX.  
~~~  
He remained the object of public jealousy. How mild was his conduct is evident from an example. He had written an essay on the nature of the tenure by which the colonists held their lands in America ; and he had argued that an English patent could not invalidate the rights of the native inhabitants. The opinion sounded, at first, like treason against the cherished charter of the colony ; Williams desired only that the 1634.  
Jan.  
24. offensive manuscript might be burned ; and so effectually explained its purport, that the court applauded his temper, and declared “ that the matters were not so evil, as at first they seemed.”<sup>1</sup>

But the principles of Roger Williams led him into perpetual collision with the clergy and the government of Massachusetts. It had ever been their custom to respect the church of England, and in the mother country they frequented its service without scruple ; yet its principles and its administration were still harshly exclusive. Williams would hold no communion with intolerance ; for, said he, “ the doctrine of persecution for cause of conscience is most evidently and lamentably contrary to the doctrine of Christ Jesus.”

The magistrates insisted on the presence of every man at public worship ; Williams reprobated the law ; the worst statute<sup>2</sup> in the English code was that which did but enforce attendance upon the parish church.

<sup>1</sup> I derive the account of Roger Williams, in Massachusetts, exclusively from the Colony Records, Winthrop, John Cotton’s diffuse quarto, and the letters and writings of Roger Williams himself. Yet I have carefully compared all that has been published about him by

Hubbard, C. Mather, Prince, Calleender, Hopkins, Backus, Bentley, Eliot, Dwight, Allen, Davis on Morton, Savage on Winthrop, Eddy, Felt, Upham, Knowles.

<sup>2</sup> 35 Elizabeth, c. i. Statutes, iv. 841.

CHAP. IX. To compel men to unite with those of a different creed, he regarded as an open violation of their natural rights ; to drag to public worship the irreligious and the unwilling, seemed only like requiring hypocrisy. “ An unbelieving soul is dead in sin”—such was his argument ;—and to force the indifferent from one worship to another, “ was like shifting a dead man into several changes of apparell.” “ No one should be bound to worship, or,” he added, “ to maintain a worship, against his own consent.” “ What ! ” exclaimed his antagonists, amazed at his tenets ; “ is not the laborer worthy of his hire ? ” “ Yes,” replied he, “ from them that hire him.”

The magistrates were selected exclusively from the members of the church ; with equal propriety, reasoned Williams, might “ a doctor of physick or a pilot ” be selected according to his skill in theology and his standing in the church.

It was objected to him, that his principles subverted all good government. The commander of the vessel of state, replied Williams, may maintain order on board the ship, and see that it pursues its course steadily, even though the dissenters of the crew are not compelled to attend the public prayers of their companions.

But the controversy finally turned on the question of the rights and duty of magistrates to guard the minds of the people against corruption, and to punish what would seem to them error and heresy. Magistrates, Williams asserted, are but the agents of the people, or its trustees, on whom no spiritual power in matters of worship can ever be conferred ; since conscience belongs to the individual, and is not the property of the body politic ; and with admirable dialectics,

clothing the great truth in its boldest and most general forms, he asserted that “the civil magistrate may not intermeddle even to stop a church from apostacy and heresy,” “that his power extends only to the bodies and goods and outward estate of men.”<sup>1</sup> With corresponding distinctness he foresaw the influence of his principles on society. “The removal of the yoke of soul-oppression,”—to use the words in which, at a later day, he confirmed his early view,—“as it will prove an act of mercy and righteousness to the enslaved nations, so it is of binding force to engage the whole and every interest and conscience to preserve the common liberty and peace.”<sup>2</sup>

The same magistrates who punished Eliot, the apostle of the Indian race, for censuring their measures, could not brook the independence of Williams; and the circumstances of the times seemed to them to justify their apprehensions. An intense jealousy was excited in England against Massachusetts; “members of the Generall Court received intelligence of some episcopal and malignant practises against the country;” and the magistrates on the one hand were scrupulously careful to avoid all unnecessary offence to the English government, on the other were sternly consolidating their own institutions, and even preparing for resistance. It was in this view that the Freeman’s Oath was appointed; by which every freeman was obliged to pledge his allegiance, not to King Charles, but to Massachusetts. There was room for scruples on

Nov.  
27.1634.  
Dec.

<sup>1</sup> I quote from a very rare tract of Roger Williams, which, after much search, I was so happy as to find in the hands of the aged Moses Brown, of Providence. It is “Mr. Cotton’s Letter, lately printed, Examined and Answered. By Roger

Williams, of Providence, in New England. London. Imprinted in the yeere 1644.” Small 4to. pp. 47. It is preceded by an address of two pages to the Impartial Reader.

<sup>2</sup> R. Williams’s *Hireling Ministry*, 29.

CHAP. the subject; and an English lawyer would have questioned the legality of the measure. The liberty of conscience for which Williams contended, denied the right of a compulsory imposition of an oath:<sup>1</sup> when he was summoned before the court, he could not renounce his belief; and his influence was such "that the government was forced to desist from that proceeding." To the magistrates he seemed the ally of a civil faction; to himself he appeared only to make a frank avowal of the truth. In all his intercourse with the tribunals, he spoke with the distinctness of settled convictions. He was fond of discussion; but he was never betrayed into angry remonstrance. If he was charged with pride, it was only for the novelty of his opinions.

The scholar who is accustomed to the pursuits of abstract philosophy, lives in a region of thought far different from that by which he is surrounded. The range of his understanding is remote from the paths of common minds, and he is often the victim of the contrast. It is not unusual for the world to reject the voice of truth, because its tones are strange; to declare doctrines unsound, only because they are new; and even to charge obliquity or derangement on the man who brings forward principles which the selfish repudiate. Such has ever been the way of the world; and Socrates, and St. Paul, and Luther, and others of the most acute dialecticians, have been ridiculed as drivellers and madmen. The extraordinary development of one faculty may sometimes injure the balance of the mind; just as the constant exercise of one member of the body injures the beauty of its propor-

<sup>1</sup> See his opinions, fully reduced in 1647, in ii. Mass. Hist. Coll. to the form of a law, at Providence, vii. 96.

tions ; or as the exclusive devotedness to one pursuit, CHAP.  
politics for instance, or money, brushes away from ~~the~~  
conduct and character the agreeable varieties of light 1635.  
and shade. It is a very ancient remark, that folly has  
its corner in the brain of every wise man ; and certain  
it is, that not the poets only, like Tasso, but the clear-  
est minds, Sir Isaac Newton, Pascal, Spinoza, have  
been deeply tinged with insanity. Perhaps Williams  
pursued his sublime principles with too scrupulous mi-  
nuteness ; it was at least natural for Bradford and his  
contemporaries, while they acknowledged his power as  
a preacher, to esteem him “unsettled in judgment.”

The court at Boston remained as yet undecided ;  
when the church of Salem,—those who were best ac-  
quainted with Williams,—taking no notice of the recent  
investigations, elected him to the office of their teach-  
er. Immediately the evils inseparable on a religious  
establishment began to be displayed. The ministers  
got together and declared any one worthy of banish-  
ment, who should obstinately assert, that “ the civil  
magistrate might not intermeddle even to stop a church  
from apostasy and heresy ;” the magistrates delayed  
action, only that a committee of divines might have  
time to repair to Salem and deal with him and with  
the church in a church way. Meantime, the people  
of Salem were blamed for their choice of a religious  
guide ; and a tract of land, to which they had a claim,  
was withheld from them as a punishment.

The breach was therefore widened. To the minis-  
ters Williams frankly, but temperately, explained his  
doctrines ; and he was armed at all points for their  
defence. As his townsmen had lost their lands in  
consequence of their attachment to him, it would have  
been cowardice on his part to have abandoned them ;

July  
8.

CHAP. and the instinct of liberty led him again to the sugges-  
 IX. ~~IX.~~ tion of a proper remedy. In conjunction with the  
 1635. church, he wrote "letters of admonition unto all the  
 churches whereof any of the magistrates were mem-  
 bers, that they might admonish the magistrates of their  
 injustice." The church members alone were freemen;  
 Williams, in modern language, appealed to the people,  
 and invited them to instruct their representatives to do  
 justice to the citizens of Salem.

This last act seemed flagrant treason;<sup>1</sup> and at the next general court, Salem was disfranchised till an ample apology for the letter should be made. The town acquiesced in its wrongs, and submitted; not an individual remained willing to justify the letter of remonstrance; the church of Williams would not avow his great principle of the sanctity of conscience; even his wife, under a delusive idea of duty, was for a season influenced to disturb the tranquillity of his home by her reproaches.<sup>2</sup> Williams was left alone, absolutely alone. Anticipating the censures of the colonial churches, he declared himself no longer subjected to their spiritual jurisdiction. "My own voluntary withdrawing from all these churches, resolved to continue in persecuting the witnesses of the Lord, presenting light unto them, I confess it was mine own voluntary act; yea, I hope the act of the Lord Jesus, sounding forth in me the blast, which shall in his own holy season cast down the strength and confidence of Oct. those inventions of men."<sup>3</sup> When summoned to appear before the general court, he avowed his convictions in the presence of the representatives of the state, "maintained the rocky strength of his grounds," and

<sup>1</sup> Cotton calls it *crimen majestatis laesae*.

<sup>2</sup> Master John Cotton's Reply, 9.  
<sup>3</sup> Cotton's Letter Examined, 3.

declared himself “ready to be bound and banished and even to die in New England,” rather than renounce the opinions which had dawned upon his mind in the clearness of light. At a time when Germany was the battle-field for all Europe in the implacable wars of religion; when even Holland was bleeding with the anger of vengeful factions; when France was still to go through the fearful struggle with bigotry; when England was gasping under the despotism of intolerance; almost half a century before William Penn became an American proprietary; and two years before Descartes founded modern philosophy on the method of free reflection,—Roger Williams asserted the great doctrine of intellectual liberty. It became his glory to found a state upon that principle, and to stamp himself upon its rising institutions, in characters so deep that the impress has remained to the present day, and, can never be erased without the total destruction of the work. The principles which he first sustained amidst the bickerings of a colonial parish, next asserted in the general court of Massachusetts, and then introduced into the wilds on Narragansett Bay, he soon found occasion to publish to the world, and to defend as the basis of the religious freedom of mankind; so that, borrowing the rhetoric employed by his antagonist in derision, we may compare him to the lark, the pleasant bird of the peaceful summer, that, “affecting to soar aloft, springs upward from the ground, takes his rise from pale to tree,” and at last, surmounting the highest hills, utters his clear carols through the skies of morning.<sup>1</sup> He was the first person in modern Christendom to assert in its plenitude the doctrine of the liberty of

<sup>1</sup> John Cotton’s Reply, 2.

CHAP. conscience, the equality of opinions before the law ;  
<sup>IX.</sup> and in its defence he was the harbinger of Milton, the precursor and the superior of Jeremy Taylor. For Taylor limited his toleration to a few Christian sects ; the philanthropy of Williams compassed the earth : Taylor favored partial reform, commended lenity, argued for forbearance, and entered a special plea in behalf of each tolerable sect ; Williams would permit persecution of no opinion, of no religion, leaving heresy unharmed by law, and orthodoxy unprotected by the terrors of penal statutes. Taylor still clung to the necessity of positive regulations enforcing religion and eradicating error ; he resembled the poets, who, in their folly, first declare their hero to be invulnerable, and then clothe him in earthly armor : Williams was willing to leave Truth alone, in her own panoply of light,<sup>1</sup> believing that if, in the ancient feud between Truth and Error, the employment of force could be entirely abrogated, Truth would have much the best of the bargain. It is the custom of mankind to award high honors to the successful inquirer into the laws of nature, to those who advance the bounds of human knowledge. We praise the man who first analyzed the air, or resolved water into its elements, or drew the lightning from the clouds ; even though the discoveries may have been as much the fruits of time as of genius. A moral principle has a much wider and nearer influence on human happiness ; nor can any discovery of truth be of more direct benefit to society, than that which establishes a perpetual religious peace, and spreads tranquillity through every community and every bosom. If Copernicus is held in perpetual reverence, because, on his death-bed, he published to the world that the

<sup>1</sup> The expression is partly from Gibbon and Sir Henry Vane.

sun is the centre of our system ; if the name of Kepler is preserved in the annals of human excellence for his sagacity in detecting the laws of the planetary motion ; if the genius of Newton has been almost adored for dissecting a ray of light, and weighing heavenly bodies as in a balance,—let there be for the name of Roger Williams at least some humble place among those who have advanced moral science, and made themselves the benefactors of mankind.

But if the opinion of posterity is no longer divided, 1635. the members of the general court of that day pronounced against him the sentence of exile ;<sup>1</sup> yet not by a very numerous majority. Some, who consented to his banishment, would never have yielded but for the persuasions of Cotton ; and the judgment was vindicated, not as a punishment for opinion, or as a restraint on freedom of conscience, but because the application of the new doctrine to the construction of the patent, to the discipline of the churches, and to the “oaths for making tryall of the fidelity of the people,” seemed about “to subvert the fundamental state and government of the country.”

Winter was at hand ; Williams succeeded in obtaining permission to remain till spring ; intending then to begin a plantation in Narragansett Bay. But the affections of the people of Salem revived, and could not be restrained ; they thronged to his house to hear him whom they were so soon to lose forever ; it began to be rumored, that he could not safely be allowed to found a new state in the vicinity ; “many of the people were much taken with the apprehension of his godliness ;” his opinions were contagious ; the

<sup>1</sup> Winthrop, i. 170, 171. Colony Records, i. 163. John Cotton’s Re-

ply, 27. 29. Roger Williams’s Account, ibid. 24, and ff.

CHAP. IX.  
1636. Jan. infection spread widely. It was therefore resolved to remove him to England in a ship that was just ready to set sail. A warrant was accordingly sent to him to come to Boston and embark. For the first time, he declined the summons of the court. A pinnace was sent for him; the officers repaired to his house; he was no longer there. Three days before, he had left Salem, in winter snow and inclement weather, of which he remembered the severity even in his late old age. "For fourteen weeks, he was sorely tost in a bitter season, not knowing what bread or bed did mean."<sup>1</sup> Often in the stormy night he had neither fire, nor food, nor company; often he wandered without a guide, and had no house but a hollow tree.<sup>2</sup> But he was not without friends. The same scrupulous respect for the rights of others, which had led him to defend the freedom of conscience, had made him also the champion of the Indians. He had already been zealous to acquire their language, and knew it so well that he could debate with them in their own dialect. During his residence at Plymouth, he had often been the guest of the neighboring sachems; and now, when he came in winter to the cabin of the chief of Pokanoket, he was welcomed by Massasoit; and "the barbarous heart of Canonicus, the chief of the Narragansetts, loved him as his son to the last gasp." "The ravens," he relates with gratitude, "fed me in the wilderness." And in requital for their hospitality, he was ever through his long life their friend and benefactor; the apostle of Christianity to them without hire, without weariness, and without impatience at their idolatry; the guardian of their rights; the pacif-

<sup>1</sup> Roger Williams to Mason, in i. Mass. Hist. Coll. i. 276. <sup>2</sup> Roger Williams's Key. Reprinted in R. I. Hist. Coll. i.

icator, when their rude passions were inflamed ; and their unflinching advocate and protector, whenever Europeans attempted an invasion of their rights. 1636.

He first pitched and began to build and plant at Seekonk. But Seekonk was found to be within the patent of Plymouth ; on the other side of the water, the country opened in its unappropriated beauty ; and there he might hope to establish a community as free as the other colonies. “ That ever-honored Governor Winthrop,” says Williams, “ privately wrote to me to steer my course to the Narragansett Bay, encouraging me from the freeness of the place from English claims or patents. I took his prudent motion as a voice from God.”

It was in June that the lawgiver of Rhode Island, with five companions, embarked on the stream ; a frail Indian canoe contained the founder of an independent state and its earliest citizens. Tradition has marked the spring near which they landed ; it is the parent spot, the first inhabited nook of Rhode Island. To express his unbroken confidence in the mercies of God, Williams called the place PROVIDENCE. “ I desired,” said he, “ it might be for a shelter for persons distressed for conscience.”<sup>1</sup>

In his new abode, Williams could have less leisure for contemplation and study. “ My time,” he observes of himself,—and it is a sufficient apology for the roughness of his style, as a writer on morals,—“ was not spent altogether in spiritual labors ; but, day and night, at home and abroad, on the land and water, at the hoe, at the oar, for bread.”<sup>2</sup> In the course of two

<sup>1</sup> Backus, i. 94. There is in Backus much evidence of diligent research and critical respect for documentary testimony. He de-

serves more reputation than he has had.

<sup>2</sup> Bloody Tenent yet more Bloody, 38, in Knowles.

CHAP. years, he was joined by others, who fled to his asylum.  
 IX. ~~~ The land which was now occupied by Williams, was  
 within the territory of the Narragansett Indians; it  
 1638. was not long before an Indian deed from Canonicus  
 Mar. 24. and Miantonomoh<sup>1</sup> made him the undisputed possessor  
 of an extensive domain. Nothing displays more clearly  
 the character of Roger Williams than the use which  
 he made of his acquisition of territory. The soil he  
 could claim as his "own, as truly as any man's coat  
 upon his back;"<sup>2</sup> and he "reserved to himself not one  
 foot of land, not one tittle of political power, more  
 than he granted to servants and strangers." "He  
 gave away his lands and other estate to them that he  
 thought were most in want, until he gave away all."<sup>3</sup>  
 He chose to found a commonwealth in the unmixed  
 forms of a pure democracy; where the will of the ma-  
 jority should govern the state; yet "only in civil  
 things;" God alone was respected as the Ruler of  
 conscience. To their more aristocratic neighbors, it  
 seemed as if these fugitives "would have no magis-  
 trates;"<sup>4</sup> for every thing was as yet decided in con-  
 vention of the people. This first system has had its  
 influence on the whole political history of Rhode  
 Island; in no state in the world, not even in the  
 agricultural state of Vermont, has the magistracy so  
 little power, or the representatives of the freemen so  
 much. The annals of Rhode Island, if written in the  
 spirit of philosophy, would exhibit the forms of society  
 under a peculiar aspect: had the territory of the state  
 corresponded to the importance and singularity of the  
 principles of its early existence, the world would have

<sup>1</sup> Backus, i. 89, 90. Knowles, 106, 107. <sup>3</sup> Letter of Daniel Williams.  
<sup>2</sup> Backus, i. 290. Knowles, c. 338. <sup>4</sup> Winthrop, i. 293. Hubbard,  
 viii.

been filled with wonder at the phenomena of its history. CHAP.  
IX.  
~~~

The most touching trait in the founder of Rhode Island was his conduct towards his persecutors. Though keenly sensitive to the hardships which he had endured, he was far from harboring feelings of revenge towards those who banished him, and only regretted their delusion. “I did ever, from my soul, honor and love them, even when their judgment led them to afflict me.”<sup>1</sup> In all his writings on the subject, he attacked the spirit of intolerance, the doctrine of persecution, and never his persecutors or the colony of Massachusetts. Indeed, we shall presently behold him requite their severity by exposing his life at their request and for their benefit. It is not strange, then, if “many hearts were touched with relentings. That great and pious soul, Mr. Winslow, melted, and kindly visited me,” says the exile, “and put a piece of gold into the hands of my wife, for our supply;”<sup>2</sup> the founder, the legislator, the proprietor of Rhode Island, owed a shelter to the hospitality of an Indian chief, and his wife the means of sustenance to the charity of a stranger. The half-wise Cotton Mather concedes, that many judicious persons confessed him to have had the root of the matter in him; and his nearer friends, the immediate witnesses of his actions, declared him, from “the whole course and tenor of his life and conduct, to have been one of the most disinterested men that ever lived, a most pious and heavenly-minded soul.”<sup>3</sup>

Thus was Rhode Island the offspring of Massachusetts; but her political connections were long influenced by the circumstance of her origin. The loss of the

<sup>1</sup> Winthrop and Savage, i. 65

<sup>2</sup> Williams to Mason.

<sup>3</sup> Callendar, 17.

CHAP. few emigrants who resorted to the new state, was  
IX. not sensibly felt in the parent colony; for the Bay of Massachusetts was already thronged with squadrons. The emigrants had from the first been watched in the mother country with intense interest; a letter from New England was venerated "as a sacred script, or as the writing of some holy prophets, and was carried many miles, where divers came to hear it."<sup>1</sup> When the first difficulties had been surmounted, the stream of emigration flowed with a full current; "Godly people in England began to apprehend a special hand 1634. of Providence in raising this plantation, and their hearts were generally stirred to come over." New settle- 1635. ments were, therefore, formed. A little band, toiling through thickets of ragged bushes, and clambering over crossed trees, made its way along Indian paths to the green meadows of Concord. The suffering settlers burrowed for their first shelter under a hill-side. Tearing up roots and bushes from the ground, they subdued the stubborn soil with the hoe, glad to gain even a lean crop from the wearisome and imperfect culture. The cattle sickened on the wild fodder; sheep and swine were destroyed by wolves; there was no flesh but game. The long rains poured through the insufficient roofs of their smoky cottages, and troubled even the time for sleep. Yet the men labored willingly, for they had their wives and little ones about them. The forest rung with their psalms; and "the poorest of the people of God in the whole world," they were resolved "to excel in holiness." Such was the infancy of a New England village.<sup>2</sup> Would that village one day engage the attention of the world?

<sup>1</sup> Old Planters' Narrative, 17.

<sup>2</sup> Johnson, c. xxxv. R. W. Emerson's Historical Discourse, 7. 11.

Meantime the fame of the liberties of Massachusetts extended widely: the good-natured earl of Warwick, a friend to advancement in civil liberty, though not a republican, offered his congratulations on its prosperity; and in a single year three thousand new settlers were added to the Puritan colony. Among these was the fiery Hugh Peters, who had been pastor of a church of English exiles in Rotterdam; a republican of an enlarged spirit, great energy, and popular eloquence, not always tempering active enterprise with solidity of judgment. At the same time came Henry Vane, the younger, a man of the purest mind; a statesman of spotless integrity; whose name the progress of intelligence and liberty will erase from the rubric of fanatics and traitors, and insert high among the aspirants after truth and the martyrs for liberty. He had valued the “obedience of the gospel” more than the successful career of English diplomacy, and cheerfully “forsook the preferments of the court of Charles for the ordinances of religion in their purity in New England.” He was happy in the possession of an admirable genius, though naturally more inclined to contemplative excellence than to action: he was happy in the eulogist of his virtues; for Milton, ever so parsimonious of praise, reserving the majesty of his verse to celebrate the glories and vindicate the providence of God, was lavish of his encomiums on the youthful friend of religious liberty. But Vane was still more happy in attaining early in life a firmly-settled theory of morals, and in possessing an energetic will, which made all his conduct to the very last conform to the doctrines he had espoused, turning his dying hour into a seal of the witness, which his life had ever borne with noble consistency to the freedom

CHAP IX. of conscience and the people. "If he were not superior to Hampden," says Clarendon, "he was inferior to no other man;" "his whole life made good the imagination, that there was in him something extraordinary."<sup>1</sup>

The freemen of Massachusetts, pleased that a young man of such elevated rank and distinguished ability should have adopted their creed, and joined them in 1636. their exile, elected him their governor. The choice was unwise; for neither the age nor the experience of Vane entitled him to the distinction. He came but as a sojourner, and not as a permanent resident; neither was he imbued with the colonial prejudices, the genius of the place; and his clear mind, unbiased by previous discussions, and fresh from the public business of England, saw distinctly what the colonists did not wish to see, the really wide difference between their practice under their charter and the meaning of that instrument on the principles of English jurisprudence.<sup>2</sup>

These latent causes of discontent could not but be eventually displayed; at first the arrival of Vane was considered an auspicious pledge for the emigration of men of the highest rank in England. Several of the English peers, especially Lord Say and Seal, a Presbyterian, a friend to the Puritans, yet with but dim perceptions of the true nature of civil liberty, and Lord Brooke, a man of charity and meekness, an early friend to tolerance, had begun to inquire into the character of the rising institutions, and to negotiate for such changes as would offer them inducements for removing to America. They demanded a division

<sup>1</sup> Clarendon, b. vii. and b. iii. vol. ii. 379, and vol. i. 186, 187, 188. son's Coll. 72, 73, 76, and 83; so, too, in Winthrop, i. 187.

<sup>2</sup> I find proofs of this in Hutchin-

of the general court into two branches, that of assistants and of representatives,—a change which was acceptable to the people, and which, from domestic reasons, was ultimately adopted; but they further required an acknowledgment of their own hereditary right to a seat in the upper house. The fathers of Massachusetts were disposed to conciliate these powerful friends: they promised them the honors of magistracy, would have readily conferred it on some of them for life, and actually began to make appointments on that tenure; but as for the establishment of hereditary dignity, they answered by the hand of Cotton, “Where God blesseth any branch of any noble or generous family with a spirit and gifts fit for government, it would be a taking of God’s name in vain to put such a talent under a bushel, and a sin against the honor of magistracy to neglect such in our public elections. But if God should not delight to furnish some of their posterity with gifts fit for magistracy, we should expose them rather to reproach and prejudice, and the commonwealth with them, than exalt them to honor, if we should call them forth, when God doth not, to public authority.”<sup>1</sup> And thus the proposition for establishing hereditary nobility was defeated. The people, moreover, soon became uneasy at the concession of office during lifetime; nor would they be quieted, till it was made a law, that those who were appointed magistrates for life, should yet not be magistrates except in those years in which they might be regularly chosen at the annual election.<sup>2</sup>

The institutions of Massachusetts, which were thus endangered by the influence of men of rank in Eng-

<sup>1</sup> Hutchinson, i. 44, and 433—<sup>2</sup> Winthrop, i. 184. 302. Hubbard, 244.  
436. Hazard, i. 379.

CHAP. land, were likewise in jeopardy from the effects of religious divisions. The minds of the colonists were excited to intense activity on questions which the nicest subtlety only could have devised, and which none but those experienced in the shades of theological opinions could long comprehend. For it goes with these opinions as with colors; of which the artist who works in mosaic, easily and regularly discriminates many thousand varieties, where the common eye can discern a difference only on the closest comparison. Boston and its environs were now employed in theological controversy; and the transports of enthusiasm sustained the toil of abstruse speculations. The most profound questions which can relate to the mysteries of human existence and the laws of the moral world, questions which the mind, in the serenity of unclouded reflection, may hardly aspire to solve, were discussed with passionate zeal; eternity was summoned to reveal its secrets; human tribunals pretended to establish for the Infinite Mind the laws on which the destinies of the soul depend; the Holy Spirit was claimed as the inward companion of man; while many persons, in their zeal to distinguish between abstract truth and the outward forms under which truth is conveyed, between unchanging principles and changing institutions, were in perpetual danger of making shipwreck of all religious faith, and hardly paused to sound their way, as they proceeded through the "dim and perilous" paths of speculative science.

Amidst the arrogance of spiritual pride, the vagaries of undisciplined imaginations, and the extravagances to which the intellectual power may be led in its pursuit of ultimate principles, the formation of two distinct parties may be perceived. The first consisted

of the original settlers, the framers of the civil government, and their adherents; they who were intent on the foundation and preservation of a commonwealth,<sup>1636.</sup> and were satisfied with the established order of society. They had founded their government on the basis of the church, and church membership could be obtained only by the favor of the clergy and an exemplary life. They dreaded unlimited freedom of opinion as the parent of ruinous divisions. "The cracks and flaws in the new building of the reformation," thought they, "portend a fall;"<sup>1</sup> they desired patriotism, union, and a common heart; they were earnest to confirm and build up the state, the child of their cares and their sorrows. They were reproached with being "priest-ridden magistrates,"<sup>2</sup> "under a covenant of works."

The other party was composed of individuals who had arrived after the civil government and religious discipline of the colony had been established. They came fresh from the study of the tenets of Geneva; and their pride consisted in following the principles of the reformation with logical precision to all their consequences. Their eyes were not primarily directed to the institutions of Massachusetts, but to the doctrines of their religious system. They had come to the wilderness for freedom of religious opinion; and they resisted every form of despotism over the mind. To them the clergy of Massachusetts were "the ushers of persecution,"<sup>3</sup> "popish factors,"<sup>4</sup> who had not imbibed the true doctrines of Christian reform; and they applied to the influence of the Puritan ministers the principle which Luther and Calvin had employed against the observances and pretensions of the Roman

<sup>1</sup> Shepherd's Lamentation, 2.

<sup>3</sup> Coddington, in Besse, ii. 267.

<sup>2</sup> The phrase is William Coddington's. See Besse, ii. 267.

<sup>4</sup> Weld's Rise, Reign, and Ruin.

**CHAP. IX.** church.<sup>1</sup> Every political opinion, every philosophical tenet, assumed in those days a theological form: with the doctrine of justification by faith alone, they derided the formality of the established religion; and by asserting that the Holy Spirit dwells in every believer, that the revelation of the Spirit is superior "to the ministry of the word,"<sup>2</sup> they sustained with intense fanaticism the paramount authority of private judgment.

The founder of this party was Anne Hutchinson, a woman of such admirable understanding "and profitable and sober carriage,"<sup>3</sup> that she won a powerful party in the country,<sup>4</sup> and her enemies could never speak of her without acknowledging her eloquence and her ability. She was encouraged by John Wheelwright, her brother, and by Henry Vane, the governor of the colony; while a majority of the people of Boston sustained her in her rebellion against the clergy. Scholars and men of learning, members of the magistracy and the general court adopted her opinions.<sup>5</sup> The public mind seemed hastening towards an insurrection against spiritual authority; and she was denounced as "weakening the hands and hearts of the people towards the ministers,"<sup>6</sup> as being "like Roger Williams or worse."<sup>7</sup>

The subject possessed the highest political importance. Nearly all the clergy, except Cotton, in whose house Vane was an inmate,<sup>8</sup> clustered together<sup>9</sup> in defence of their influence, and in opposition to Vane; and Wheelwright, who, in a fast-day's sermon, had strenuously maintained the truth of his opinions, and

<sup>1</sup> Winthrop, i. 213, 214.

<sup>2</sup> Winthrop, i. 201, and in Hutchinson, ii. 443.

<sup>3</sup> Welde's Rise, Reign, &c.

<sup>4</sup> Dudley, in Hutchinson, ii. 427.

<sup>5</sup> Welde's Rise, Reign, &c.

<sup>6</sup> Winthrop, in Hutch., ii. 443.

<sup>7</sup> Winthrop, in Hutch. Coll.

<sup>8</sup> Suffolk Prob. Records, i. 72.

<sup>9</sup> Winthrop, i. 215.

1637.  
Mar.

had never been confuted,<sup>1</sup> in spite of the remonstrance of the governor, was censured by the general court ~~—~~<sup>CHAP. IX.</sup> for sedition.<sup>2</sup> At the ensuing choice of magistrates, ~~—~~<sup>1637.</sup> the religious divisions controlled the elections. The ~~—~~<sup>May 17.</sup> friends of Wheelwright had threatened an appeal to England; but in the colony “it was accounted perjury and treason to speak of appeals to the king.”<sup>3</sup> The contest appeared, therefore, to the people, not as the struggle for intellectual freedom against the authority of the clergy, but as a contest for the liberties of Massachusetts against the power of the English government. Could it be doubted who would obtain the confidence of the people? In the midst of such high excitement, that even the pious Wilson climbed into a tree to harangue the people on election day, Winthrop and his friends, the fathers and founders of the colony, recovered the entire management of the government.<sup>4</sup> But the dispute infused its spirit into every thing; it interfered with the levy of troops for the Pequod war;<sup>5</sup> it influenced the respect shown to the magistrates; the distribution of town-lots; the assessment of rates; and at last the continued existence of the two opposing May. parties was considered inconsistent with the public peace. To prevent the increase of a faction esteemed to be so dangerous, a law, somewhat analogous to the alien law in England, and to the European policy of passports, was enacted by the party in power; none should be received within the jurisdiction, but such as should be allowed by some of the magistrates. The dangers which were simultaneously menaced from the Episcopal party in the mother

<sup>1</sup> Henry Vane, in Hutch. Coll. 82.

<sup>2</sup> Comp. S. Gorton's Simplicity's Defence, 44.

<sup>3</sup> Burdett's Letter to Laud.

<sup>4</sup> Winthrop, i. 219, 220. Col. Records, Hutch. Coll. 63, and ff.

<sup>5</sup> Welde, 27. Mather, b. vii. c. iii. s. 5. Hutch. Coll. 80.

CHAP. country, gave to the measure an air of magnanimous  
IX.  
~~~ defiance ; it was almost a proclamation of independence. As an act of intolerance, it found in Vane an inflexible opponent, and, using the language of the times, he left a memorial of his dissent. "Scribes and Pharisees, and such as are confirmed in any way of error,"—these are the remarkable words of the man, who soon embarked for England, where he afterwards pleaded in parliament for the liberties of Catholics and Dissenters,—"all such are not to be denied cohabitation, but are to be pitied and reformed. Ishmael shall dwell in the presence of his brethren."

The friends of Wheelwright could not brook the censure of their leader ; but they justified their indignant remonstrances by the language of fanaticism. "A new rule of practice by immediate revelations,"<sup>1</sup> was now to be the guide of their conduct ; not that they expected a revelation "in the way of a miracle ;" such an idea Anne Hutchinson rejected "as a delusion ;"<sup>2</sup> they only slighted the censures of the ministers and the court, and avowed their determination to follow the impulses of conscience. But individual conscience is often the dupe of interest, and often but a more honorable name for self-will. The government Aug. feared, or pretended to fear, a disturbance of the public peace, a wild insurrection of lawless fanatics. A synod of the ministers of New England was therefore assembled, to accomplish the difficult task of settling the true faith. Numerous opinions were harmoniously condemned ; and vagueness of language, so often the parent of furious controversy, performed the office of a peace-maker. Now that Vane had returned

<sup>1</sup> Welde, 45, ed. 1692, or 42, ed. 1644. <sup>2</sup> Testimony of John Cotton, in Hutchinson, ii. 443.

to England, it was hardly possible to find any grounds CHAP.  
of difference between the flexible Cotton and his ~~IX.~~  
equally orthodox opponents. The general peace of  
the colony being thus assured, the triumph of the  
clergy was complete; and the civil magistrates pro-  
ceeded to pass sentence on the more resolute offend-  
ers. Wheelwright, Anne Hutchinson, and Aspinwall,  
were exiled from the territory of Massachusetts, as  
“unfit for the society” of its citizens; and their ad-  
herents, who, it was feared, “might, upon some revela-  
tion, make a sudden insurrection,” and who were ready  
to seek protection by an appeal from the authority of  
the colonial government, were, like the tories during  
the war for independence, required to deliver up  
their arms.

So ended the Antinomian strife in Massachusetts.<sup>1</sup> The principles of Anne Hutchinson were a natural consequence of the progress of the reformation. She had imbibed them in Europe; and it is a singular fact, though easy of explanation, that, in the very year 1637 in which she was arraigned at Boston, Descartes, like herself a refugee from his country, like herself a prophetic harbinger of the spirit of the coming age, established philosophic liberty on the method of free reflection. Both asserted that the conscious judgment of the mind is the highest authority to itself. Descartes did but promulgate, under the philosophic form of free reflection, the same truth which Anne Hutchinson, with the fanaticism of impassioned conviction, avowed under the form of inward revelations.

<sup>1</sup> On this strife I have read the Col. Records; the decisions of the synod; the copious Winthrop; the Documents in Hutchinson's Coll.; Welde's Rise, Reign, and Ruin; T. Shepherd's Lamentation; a frag-

ment of Wheelwright's Sermon; and the statement of John Cotton himself, in his reply to Williams; also, Saml. Gorton, Hubbard, C. Mather, Neal, Hutchinson, Callender, Backus, Savage, and Knowles.

**CHAP.  
IX.** The true tendency of the principles of Anne Hutchinson is best established by examining the institutions which were founded by her followers. We shall hereafter trace the career of Henry Vane.

Wheelwright and his immediate friends removed to the banks of the Piscataqua; and, at the head of tide waters on that stream, they founded the town of Exeter; one more little republic in the wilderness, organized on the principles of natural justice by the voluntary combination of the inhabitants.<sup>1</sup>

The larger number of the friends of Anne Hutchinson, led by John Clarke and William Coddington, proceeded to the south, designing to make a plantation on Long Island, or near Delaware Bay. But Roger

**1638.** Williams welcomed them to his vicinity; and his own  
**Mar. 24.** influence, and the powerful name of Henry Vane, prevailed

with Miantonomoh, the chief of the Narragansetts, to obtain for them a gift of the beautiful island of Rhode Island. The spirit of the institutions established by this band of voluntary exiles, on the soil which they owed to the benevolence of the natives, was derived from natural justice: a social compact, signed after the manner of the precedent at New Plymouth, so often imitated in America, founded the

**Mar. 7.** government upon the basis of the universal consent of every inhabitant: the forms of the administration were borrowed from the examples of the Jews. Coddington was elected judge in the new Israel; and three elders were soon chosen as his assistants. The colony rested on the principle of intellectual liberty:

philosophy itself could not have placed the right on a broader basis. The settlement prospered; and it became necessary to establish a constitution. It was

**1641.** **Mar. 11.**

<sup>1</sup> Exeter Records, in Farmer's Belknap, 432.

therefore ordered by the whole body of freemen, and <sup>CHAP.</sup>  
 IX.  
 "unanimously agreed upon, that the government, <sup>~~</sup>  
 which this body politic doth attend unto in this island,  
 and the jurisdiction thereof, in favor of our Prince, is  
 a DEMOCRACIE, or popular government; that is to say,  
 it is in the power of the body of freemen orderly as-  
 sembled, or major part of them, to make or constitute  
 just Lawes, by which they will be regulated, and to  
 depute from among themselves such ministers as shall  
 see them faithfully executed between man and man."<sup>1</sup>  
 "It was further ordered, that none be accounted a  
 delinquent for doctrine;" the law for "liberty of  
 conscience was perpetuated." The little community  
 was held together by the bonds of affection and free-  
 dom of opinion: benevolence was their rule: they  
 trusted in the power of love to win the victory; and  
 "the signet for the state" was ordered to be "a  
 sheafe of arrows," with "the motto AMOR VINCET  
 OMNIA." A patent from England seemed necessary <sup>1641</sup>  
 for their protection; and to whom could they direct <sup>Sept.</sup>  
 9.  
 their letters but to the now powerful Henry Vane?<sup>2</sup>

Such were the institutions which sprung from the party of Anne Hutchinson. But she did not long enjoy their protection. Recovering from a transient dejection of mind, she had gloried in her sufferings, as her greatest happiness;<sup>3</sup> and, making her way through the forest, she travelled by land<sup>4</sup> to the settlement of Roger Williams, and from thence joined her friends on the island, sharing with them the hardships of early

<sup>1</sup> I copied this, word for word, from the Records, now in Providence.

<sup>2</sup> MS. extracts from R. I. Rec. Compare Callender, 29, &c.; Backus, i. 91. 96, &c.; Knowles, c. xi.

<sup>3</sup> Winthrop, i. 258.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. i. 259. Even Winthrop could err as to facts; see i. 296, and Savage's note. The records refute Winthrop's statement.

- CHAP. IX.** emigrants.<sup>1</sup> Her powerful mind still continued its activity; young men from the colonies became converts to her opinions; and she excited such admiration, that to the leaders in Massachusetts it "gave cause of suspicion of witchcraft."<sup>2</sup> She was in a few years left a widow, but was blessed with affectionate children. A tinge of fanaticism pervaded her family: one of her sons, and Collins her son-in-law, had ventured to expostulate with the people of Boston on the wrongs of their mother. But would the Puritan magistrates of that day tolerate an attack on their government?<sup>3</sup> Severe imprisonment for many months was the punishment inflicted on the young men for their boldness. Rhode Island itself seemed no longer a safe place of refuge; and the whole family removed beyond New Haven into the territory of the Dutch.
- 1643.** The violent Kiest had provoked an insurrection among the Indians; the house of Anne Hutchinson was attacked and set on fire; herself, her son-in-law, and all their family, save one child, perished by the rude weapons of the savages, or were consumed by the flames.<sup>4</sup>

Thus was personal suffering mingled with the peaceful and happy results of the watchfulness or the intolerance of Massachusetts. The legislation of that colony may be reproved for its jealousy, yet not for its cruelty; and Williams, and Wheelwright, and Aspinwall, suffered not much more from their banishment than some of the best men of the colony encountered from choice. For rumor had spread not wholly extravagant accounts of the fertility of the alluvial land along the borders

<sup>1</sup> Gorton, in Hutchinson, i. 73.

<sup>2</sup> Winthrop, ii. 9.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. ii. 39.

<sup>4</sup> Saml. Gorton's Defence, 58, 59.

Winthrop, ii. 136.

of the Connecticut ; and the banks of that river were already adorned with the villages of the Puritans, planted just in season to anticipate the rival designs of the Dutch.

The valley of the Connecticut had early become an object of desire and of competition. The earl of Warwick was the first proprietary of the soil, under a grant from the council for New England ; and it was next held by Lord Say and Seal, Lord Brooke, John Hampden, and others, as his assigns.<sup>1</sup> Before any colony could be established with their sanction, the people of New Plymouth had built a trading house at Windsor, and conducted with the natives a profitable commerce in furs. “Dutch intruders” from Manhattan, ascending the river, had also raised at Hartford the house “of Good Hope,” and struggled to secure the territory to themselves. The younger Winthrop, the future benefactor of Connecticut, one of those men in whom the elements of human excellence are mingled in the happiest union, returned from England with a commission from the proprietaries of that region, to erect a fort at the mouth of the stream—a purpose which was accomplished. Yet, before his arrival in Massachusetts Bay, settlements had been commenced, by emigrants from the environs of Boston, at Hartford, and Windsor, and Wethersfield ; and in the last days of the pleasantest of the autumnal months, a company of sixty pilgrims, women and children being of the number, began their march to the west. Never before had the forests of America witnessed such a scene. But the journey was begun too late in the season : the winter was so unusually early and severe, that provisions could not arrive by way of the river ;

<sup>1</sup> Trumbull’s Connecticut, i. App. No. i.

CHAP. imperfect shelter had been provided ; cattle perished  
<sup>IX.</sup> in great numbers ; and the men suffered such privations, that many of them, in the depth of winter, abandoned their newly-chosen homes, and waded through the snows to the sea-board.

1636. Yet, in the opening of the next year, a government  
<sup>April 26.</sup> was organized, and civil order established ; and the budding of the trees and the springing of the grass were  
<sup>May.</sup> signals for a greater emigration to the Connecticut. Some smaller parties had already made their way to the new Hesperia of Puritanism. In June, the principal caravan began its march, led by Thomas Hooker, "the light of the Western Churches." There were of the company about one hundred souls ; many of them persons accustomed to affluence and the ease of European life. They drove before them numerous herds of cattle ; and thus they traversed on foot the pathless forests of Massachusetts ; advancing hardly ten miles a day through the tangled woods, across the swamps and numerous streams, and over the highlands that separated the several intervening valleys ; subsisting, as they slowly wandered along, on the milk of the kine, which browsed on the fresh leaves and early  
<sup>June.</sup> shoots ; having no guide, through the nearly untrodden wilderness, but the compass, and no pillow for their nightly rest but heaps of stones. How did the hills echo with the unwonted lowing of the herds ! How were the forests enlivened by the loud and fervent piety of Hooker !<sup>1</sup> Never again was there such a pilgrimage from the sea-side "to the delightful banks" of the Connecticut. The emigrants had been gathered from among the most valued citizens, the earliest settlers, and the oldest churches of the Bay. John

<sup>1</sup> Hooker was "a Son of Thunder." See Morton, 239 and 240.

Haynes had for one year been the governor of Massa- CHAP.  
chusetts; and Hooker had no rival in public estima- IX.  
tion but Cotton, whom he surpassed in force of char-  
acter, in boldness of spirit, and in honorable clemency.  
Historians, investigating the causes of events, have  
endeavored to find the motives of this settlement in  
the jealous ambition of the minister of Hartford.  
Such ingenuity is gratuitous. The Connecticut was  
at that time supposed to be the best channel for a  
great internal traffic in furs; and its meadows, already  
proverbial for the richness of their soil, had acquired  
the same celebrity as in a later day the banks of the  
Genesee, or the bottom lands of the Miami.

The new settlement, that seemed so far towards the west, was environed by perils. The Dutch still indulged a hope of dispossessing the English, and the natives of the country beheld the approach of Europeans with malignant hatred. No part of New England was more thickly covered with aboriginal inhabitants than Connecticut. The Pequods, who were settled round the Thames, could muster at least seven hundred warriors; the whole number of the effective men of the emigrants was much less than two hundred. The danger was incessant; and while the settlers, with hardly a plough or a yoke of oxen, turned the wild fertility of nature into productiveness, they were at the same time exposed to the incursions of a savage enemy, whose delight was carnage.

For the Pequods had already shown a hostile spirit. 1633. Several years had elapsed since they had murdered the crew of a small trading vessel in Connecticut River. With some appearance of justice they pleaded the necessity of self-defence, and sent messengers to Boston 1634. Nov. to desire the alliance of the white men. The govern-

CHAP. IX. ment of Massachusetts accepted the excuse, and immediately conferred the benefit which was due from civilization to the ignorant and passionate tribes; it reconciled the Pequods with their hereditary enemies, the Narragansetts. No longer at variance with a powerful neighbor, the Pequods again displayed their bitter and imboldened hostility to the English by murdering Oldham, near Block Island. The outrage was punished by a sanguinary but ineffectual expedition. The warlike tribe was not overawed, but rather courted the alliance of its neighbors, the Narragansetts and the Mohegans, that a union and a general rising of the natives might sweep the hated intruders from the ancient hunting-grounds of the Indian race. The design could be frustrated by none but Roger Williams; and the exile, who had been the first to communicate to the governor of Massachusetts the news of the impending conspiracy, encountered the extremity of peril with magnanimous heroism. Having received letters from Vane and the council of Massachusetts, requesting his utmost and speediest endeavors to prevent the league, neither storms of wind nor high seas could detain the adventurous envoy. Shipping himself alone in a poor canoe, every moment at the hazard of his life, he hastened to the house of the sachem of the Narragansetts. The Pequod ambassadors, reeking with blood, were already there; and for three days and nights the business compelled him to lodge and mix with them; having cause every night to expect their knives at his throat. The Narragansetts were wavering; but Roger Williams succeeded in dissolving the formidable conspiracy. It was the most intrepid and most successful achievement in the whole Pequod war—an action as perilous in its execution

as it was fortunate in its issue. When the Pequods <sup>CHAP.  
IX.</sup> were left to contend single-handed against the English, <sup>1637.</sup> it was their ignorance only which could still inspire confidence in their courage.

Continued injuries and murders roused Connecticut to action ; and the court of its three infant towns <sup>May  
1.</sup> decreed immediate war. Uncas, sachem of the Mo-hegans, was their ally. To John Mason the staff of command was delivered at Hartford by the venerated Hooker ; and after nearly a whole night spent, at the request of the soldiers, in importunate prayer by the very learned and godly Stone, about sixty men, one third of the whole colony, aided by John Underhill and twenty gallant recruits, whom the forethought of Vane had sent from the Bay State, sailed past the Thames, and, designing to reach the Pequot fort unobserved, entered a harbor near Wickford, in the bay of the Narragansetts. The next day was the Lord's, sacred to religion and rest. Early in the week, the captains of the expedition, with the pomp of a military escort, repaired to the court of Canonicus, the patriarch and ruler of the tribe ; and the younger and more fiery Miantonomoh, surrounded by two hundred of his bravest warriors, received them in council. "Your design," said he, "is good ; but your numbers are too weak to brave the Pequods, who have mighty chieftains, and are skilful in battle ;" and after doubtful friendship, he deserted the desperate enterprise.

Nor did the unhappy clans on Mystic River distrust their strength. To their hundreds of brave men their bows and arrows still seemed formidable weapons ; ignorant of European fortresses, they viewed their rushwork palisades with complacency ; and as the English boats sailed by the places where the

19.

20.

21.

22.

23.

CHAP. rude works of the natives frowned defiance, it was ru-  
IX.  
~~~~~ mored through the tribe, that its enemies had vanished  
1637. through fear. Exultation followed ; and hundreds of  
May 26. the Pequods spent much of the last night of their lives  
were within hearing of their songs. Two hours be-  
fore day, the soldiers of Connecticut put themselves in  
motion towards the enemy ; and, as the light of morn-  
ing began to dawn, they made their attack on the  
principal fort, which stood in a strong position at the  
summit of a hill.<sup>1</sup> The colonists felt that they were  
fighting for the security of their homes ; that, if de-  
feated, the war-whoop would immediately resound  
near their cottages, and their wives and children be  
abandoned to the scalping-knife and the tomahawk.  
They ascend to the attack ; a watch-dog bays an  
alarm at their approach ; the Indians awake, rally, and  
resist, as well as bows and arrows can resist weapons  
of steel. The superiority of number was with them ;  
and fighting closely, hand to hand, though the mass-  
acre spread from wigwam to wigwam, victory was  
tardy. “We must burn them !” shouted Mason, and  
cast a firebrand to the windward among the light mats  
of the Indian cabins. Hardly could the English with-  
draw to encompass the place, before the whole en-  
campment was in a blaze. Did the helpless natives  
climb the palisades, the flames assisted the marksmen  
to take good aim at the unprotected men ; did they  
attempt a sally, they were cut down by the English  
broadswords. The carnage was complete : about six  
hundred Indians, men, women, and children, perished ;  
most of them in the hideous conflagration. In about

<sup>1</sup> Compare E. R. Potter's Early History of Narragansett, 24. Williams,  
in iii. Mass. Hist. Coll. iii. 133.

an hour, the whole work of destruction was finished, CHAP.  
and two only of the English had fallen in the battle. <sup>IX.</sup> ~~  
The sun, as it rose serenely in the east, was the wit- 1637.  
ness of the victory.

With the light of morning, three hundred or more Pequod warriors were descried, as they proudly approached from their second fort. They had anticipated success ; what was their horror as they beheld the smoking ruins, strown with the half-consumed flesh of so many hundreds of their race ! They stamped on the ground, and tore their hair ; but it was in vain to attempt revenge ; then and always, to the close of the war, the feeble manner of the natives hardly deserved, says Mason, the name of fighting ; their defeat was certain, and unattended with much loss to the English. The aborigines were never formidable in battle, till they became supplied with the weapons of European invention.

A portion of the troops hastened homewards to protect the settlements from any sudden attack ; while Mason, with about twenty men, marched across the country from the vicinity of New London to the English fort at Saybrook. He reached the river at sunset ; but Gardner, who commanded the fort, observed his approach ; and never did the heart of a Roman consul, returning in triumph, swell more than the pride of Mason and his friends, when they found themselves received as victors, and “ nobly entertained with many great guns.”

In a few days, the troops from Massachusetts arrived, attended by Wilson ; for the ministers always shared every hardship and every danger. The remnants of the Pequods were pursued into their hiding-places ; every wigwam was burned, every settlement was

CHAP. broken up, every cornfield laid waste. Sassacus, their  
IX. sachem, was murdered by the Mohawks, to whom he  
1637. had fled for protection. The few that survived, about two hundred, surrendering in despair, were enslaved by the English, or incorporated among the Mohegans and the Narragansetts. There remained not a sannup nor squaw, not a warrior nor child, of the Pequod name. A nation had disappeared from the family of man.

1638. The vigor and courage displayed by the settlers on the Connecticut, in this first Indian war in New England, struck terror into the savages, and secured a long succession of years of peace. The infant was safe in its cradle, the laborer in the fields, the solitary traveller during the night-watches in the forest; the houses needed no bolts, the settlements no palisades. Under the benignant auspices of peace, the citizens of the western colony resolved to perfect its political

1639. institutions, and to form a body politic by a voluntary  
<sup>Jan.</sup> 14. association. The constitution which was thus framed was of unexampled liberality. The elective franchise belonged to all the members of the towns who had taken the oath of allegiance to the commonwealth; the magistrates and legislature were chosen annually by ballot; and the representatives were apportioned among the towns according to population. Nearly two centuries have elapsed; the world has been made wiser by the most various experience; political institutions have become the theme on which the most powerful and cultivated minds have been employed; and so many constitutions have been framed or reformed, stifled or subverted, that memory may despair of a complete catalogue;—but the people of Connecticut have found no reason to deviate essentially from the frame of government established by their fathers. No jurisdiction of the English monarch was recognized;

the laws of honest justice were the basis of their com- CHAP.  
monwealth ; and therefore its foundations were lasting. IX. ~~  
These humble emigrants invented an admirable system ; for they were near to Nature, listened willingly to her voice, and easily copied her forms. No ancient usages, no hereditary differences of rank, no established interests, impeded the application of the principles of justice. Freedom springs spontaneously into life ; the artificial distinctions of society require centuries to ripen. History has ever celebrated the heroes who have won laurels in scenes of carnage. Has it no place for the founders of states ; the wise legislators, who struck the rock in the wilderness, so that the waters of liberty gushed forth in copious and perennial fountains ? They who judge of men by their services to the human race, will never cease to honor the memory of Hooker and of Haynes.

In equal independence, a Puritan colony sprang up 1638 at New Haven, under the guidance of John Davenport as its pastor, and of the excellent Theophilus Eaton, who was annually elected its governor for twenty years, till his death. Its forms were austere, unmixed Calvinism ; but the spirit of humanity had sheltered itself under the rough exterior. The colonists held their first gathering under a branching oak. It was a season April  
18. of gloom. Spring had not yet revived the verdure of nature ; under the leafless tree the little flock were taught by Davenport, that, like the Son of man, they were led into the wilderness to be tempted. After a day of fasting and prayer, they rested their first frame of government on a simple plantation covenant, that "all of them would be ordered by the rules which the Scriptures held forth to them." A title to lands was obtained by a treaty with the natives, whom they protected against the Mohawks. When, after more than a year,

CHAP. the free planters of the colony desired a more perfect  
<sup>IX.</sup> form of government, the followers of Him who was laid  
1639. in a manger held their constituent assembly in a barn.

June

4. There, by the influence of Davenport, it was solemnly resolved, that the Scriptures are the perfect rule of a commonwealth; that the purity and peace of the ordinance to themselves and their posterity, were the great end of civil order; and that church members only should be free burgesses. A committee of twelve was selected to choose seven men, qualified for the foundation work of organizing the government. Eaton, Davenport, and five others, were "the seven Pillars" for the new House of Wisdom, in the wilderness. In August, 1639, the seven pillars assembled, possessing for the time absolute power. Having abrogated every previous executive trust, they admitted to the court all church members; the character of civil magistrates was next expounded "from the sacred oracles;" and the election followed. Then Davenport, in the words of Moses to Israel in the wilderness, gave a charge to the governor, to judge righteously; "the cause that is too hard for you,"—such was part of the minister's text,— "bring it unto me, and I will hear it." Annual elections were ordered; and God's word established as the only rule in public affairs. Thus New Haven made the Bible its statute-book, and the elect its freemen. As neighboring towns were planted, each was likewise a house of wisdom, resting on its seven pillars, and aspiring to be illumined by the Eternal Light. The colonists prepared for the second coming of Christ, which they confidently expected. Meantime their pleasant villages spread along the Sound, and on the opposite shore of Long Island, and for years they nursed the hope of to 1649. "speedily planting Delaware."

## CHAPTER X.

## THE UNITED COLONIES OF NEW ENGLAND.

THE English government was not indifferent to the CHAP.  
 progress of the colonies of New England. The fate <sup>X.</sup>  
 of the first emigrants had been watched by all parties  
 with benevolent curiosity; nor was there any induc-  
 ment to oppress the few sufferers, whom the hardships  
 of their condition were so fast wasting away. The  
 adventurers were encouraged by a proclamation,<sup>1</sup> 1630.  
 which, with a view to their safety, prohibited the sale <sup>Nov.</sup> 24.  
 of fire-arms to the savages.

The stern discipline exercised by the government at Salem, produced an early harvest of enemies: re-  
 sentment long rankled in the minds of some, whom Endicott had perhaps too passionately punished; and when they returned to England, Mason and Gorges, the rivals of the Massachusetts company, willingly echoed their vindictive complaints. A petition even reached King Charles, complaining of distraction and disorder in the plantations; but the issue was unex-  
 pected. Massachusetts was ably defended by Salton-  
 stall, Humphrey, and Cradock, its friends in England; and the committee of the privy council reported in favor of the adventurers, who were ordered to continue <sup>1633</sup> Jan.  
 their undertakings cheerfully, for the king did not

<sup>1</sup> Hazard, i. 311, 312.

CHAP. design to impose on the people of Massachusetts the  
~~X.~~  
 ~~ ceremonies which they had emigrated to avoid. The country, it was believed, would in time be very beneficial to England.<sup>1</sup>

1634. Revenge did not slumber,<sup>2</sup> because it had been once defeated; and the triumphant success of the Puritans in America disposed the leaders of the high-church party to listen to the clamors of the malignant. Proof was produced of marriages celebrated by civil magistrates, and of the system of colonial church discipline—proceedings which were wholly at variance with the laws of England. “The departure of so many of THE BEST,” such “numbers of faithful and free-born Englishmen and good Christians”—a more ill-boding sign to the nation than the portentous blaze of comets and the impressions in the air, at which astrologers are

1634. dismayed,<sup>3</sup>—began to be regarded by the archbishops  
<sup>Feb.</sup>  
<sup>21.</sup> as an affair of state; and ships bound with passengers for New England were detained in the Thames by an order of the council. Burdett had also written from New England to Laud, that “the colonists aimed not at new discipline, but at sovereignty; that it was accounted treason in their general court to speak of appeals to the king;”<sup>4</sup> and the greatest apprehensions were raised by a requisition which commanded the letters patent of the company to be produced in England.<sup>5</sup> To this requisition the emigrants returned no reply.

Still more menacing was the appointment of an

<sup>1</sup> Winthrop and Savage, i. 54—57, and 101—103. Prince, 430, 431. Hutch. Coll. 52—54. Hubbard, 150—154. Chalmers, 154, 155. Hazard, i. 234, 235.

<sup>2</sup> Winthrop, ii. 190, 191; or Hazard, i. 242, 243. Hubbard, 428—430.

<sup>3</sup> Milton pleads for the Puritans—Of Reformation, Book ii.

<sup>4</sup> Hutchinson, ii. 85. Hubbard, 354.

<sup>5</sup> Winthrop, i. 135, 137. Hubbard, 153. Hazard, i. 341, 342.

arbitrary special commission for the colonies. The archbishop of Canterbury and those who were associated with him, received full power over the American plantations, to establish the government and dictate the laws; to regulate the church; to inflict even the heaviest punishments; and to revoke any charter which had been surreptitiously obtained, or which conceded liberties prejudicial to the royal prerogative.<sup>1</sup>

The news of this commission soon reached Boston; and it was at the same time rumored that a general governor was on his way. The intelligence awakened the most lively interest in the whole colony, and led to the boldest measures. Poor as the new settlements were, six hundred pounds were raised towards fortifications; "the assistants and the deputies discovered their minds to one another," and the fortifications were hastened. All the ministers assembled at Boston; it marks the age, that their opinions were consulted; it marks the age still more, that they unanimously declared against the reception of a general governor. "We ought," said the fathers in Israel, "to defend our lawful possessions, if we are able; if not, to avoid and protract."<sup>2</sup>

It is not strange that Laud and his associates should have esteemed the inhabitants of Massachusetts to be men of refractory humors; complaints resounded of sects and schisms; of parties consenting in nothing but hostility to the church of England; of designs to shake off the royal jurisdiction.<sup>3</sup> Restraints were, therefore, placed upon emigration; no one above the rank of a serving man, might remove to the colony

<sup>1</sup> Hazard, i. 344—347. Hubbard, 264—268. Hutchinson, i. App. No. iv. Winthrop, i. 143. Chalmers mistakes a year.

<sup>2</sup> Winthrop, i. 154.

<sup>3</sup> Gorges, c. xxvi.

1634.  
April  
10.

Sept.  
18.

1635.  
Jan.  
19.

Dec.

~~CHAP.~~ without the special leave of the commissioners; and  
~~X.~~ persons of inferior order were required to take the oaths of supremacy and allegiance.<sup>1</sup>

Willingly as these acts were performed by religious bigotry, they were prompted by another cause. The 1635. members of the Grand Council of Plymouth, long reduced to a state of inactivity, prevented by the spirit of the English merchants from oppressing the people, and having already made grants of all the lands from the Penobscot to Long Island, determined to resign their charter, which was no longer possessed of any value. Several of the company desired as individuals to become the proprietaries of extensive territories, even at the dishonor of invalidating all their grants as a corporation. The hope of acquiring principalities subverted the sense of justice. A meeting of the lords was duly convened, and the whole coast, from Acadia to beyond the Hudson, being divided into shares, was distributed, in part at least, by lots. Whole provinces gained an owner by the drawing of a lottery.<sup>2</sup>

Thus far all went smoothly; it was a more difficult matter to gain possession of the prizes; the independent and inflexible colony of Massachusetts formed too serious an obstacle. The grant for Massachusetts, it was argued, was surreptitiously obtained; the lands belonged to Robert Gorges by a prior deed; the intruders had "made themselves a free people." The June. general patent for New England was surrendered to the king: to obtain of him a confirmation of their respective grants, and to invoke the whole force of English power against the charter of Massachusetts,

<sup>1</sup> Hazard, i. 247—348.

<sup>2</sup> Gorges, b. ii. c. ii. Hubbard, 226—229. Hazard, i. 383.

were, at the same time, the objects of the members of the Plymouth company, distinctly avowed in their public acts.<sup>1</sup>

Now was the season of greatest peril to the rising liberties of New England. The king and council already feared the consequences that might come from the unbridled spirits of the Americans; his dislike was notorious;<sup>2</sup> and at the Trinity term in the Court of King's Bench, a *quo warranto* was brought against the company of the Massachusetts Bay. At the ensuing Michaelmas, several of its members, who resided in England, made their appearance, and judgment was pronounced against them individually; the rest of the patentees stood outlawed, but no judgment was entered up against them.<sup>3</sup> The unexpected death of Mason, who, as the proprietary of New Hampshire, had been the chief mover of all the aggressions on the rights of the adjoining colony, suspended the hostile movements,<sup>4</sup> which Gorges had too much honesty and too little intrigue to renew.<sup>5</sup>

Dec.

The severe censures in the Star Chamber, the greatness of the fines which avarice rivaled bigotry in imposing,<sup>6</sup> the rigorous proceedings with regard to ceremonies, the suspending and silencing of multitudes of ministers, still continued; and men were “enforced by heaps to desert their native country. Nothing but the wide ocean, and the savage deserts of America, could hide and shelter them from the fury of the bishops.”<sup>6</sup> The pillory had become the bloody scene of human

<sup>1</sup> Hazard, i. 382. 390—394.

<sup>2</sup> Gorges, b. ii. c. i. p. 43.

<sup>3</sup> Hazard, i. 423—425. Hutchinson's Coll. 101—104.

<sup>4</sup> Winthrop, i. 187.

<sup>5</sup> Winthrop, ii. 12. Hazard, i. 403.

<sup>6</sup> Rushworth, ii. 410. Hazard, i.

420. Neal's Puritans. Nugent's Hampden. The words are from Milton, the Puritan poet; the greatest poet of our language.

CHAP. agony and mutilation, as an ordinary punishment; and  
<sup>X.</sup> ~~~~~~~ the friends of Laud jested on the sufferings which were to cure the obduracy of fanatics. “The very genius of that nation of people,” said Wentworth, “leads them always to oppose, both civilly and ecclesiastically, all that ever authority ordains for them.” They were provoked to the indiscretion of a complaint, and then involved in a persecution. They were imprisoned and scourged; their noses were slit; their ears were cut off; their cheeks were marked with a red-hot brand. But the lash, and the shears, and the glowing iron, could not destroy principles which were rooted in the soul, and which danger made it glorious to profess. The injured party even learned to despise  
1637. the mercy of their oppressors. Four years after Prynne had been punished for a publication, he was a second time arraigned for a like offence. “I thought,” said Lord Finch, “that Prynne had lost his ears already; but,” added he, looking at the prisoner, “there is something left yet;” and an officer of the court, removing the hair, displayed the mutilated organs. “I pray to God,” replied Prynne, “you may have ears to hear me.” A crowd gathered round the scaffold, where he, and Bastwick, and Burton, were to suffer mutilation. “Christians,” said Prynne, as he presented the stumps of his ears to be grubbed out by the hangman’s knife, “stand fast; be faithful to God and your country; or you bring on yourselves and your children perpetual slavery.” The dungeon, the pillory, and the scaffold, were but stages in the progress of civil liberty towards its triumph.  
June 30.

Yet there was a period when the ministry of Charles hoped for success. No considerable resistance was threatened within the limits of England; and not even

America could long be safe against the designs of des- CHAP.  
potism. A proclamation was issued to prevent the ~~~~~  
emigration of Puritans ;<sup>1</sup> the king refused his dissent- 1637.  
ing subjects the security of the wilderness. April  
30.

It was probably a foreboding of these dangers, which induced the legislation of Massachusetts to exaggerate the necessity of domestic union.<sup>2</sup> In England the proclamation was but little regarded. The Puritans, hemmed in by dangers on every side, and at that time having no prospect of ultimate success, desired at any rate to escape from their native country. The privy council interfered to stay a squadron of eight ships, which were in the Thames, preparing to embark for New England.<sup>3</sup> It has been said that Hampden and Cromwell were on board this fleet.<sup>4</sup> The English ministry of that day might willingly have exiled Hampden; no original authors, except royalists writing on hearsay, allude to the design imputed to him; in America there exists no evidence of his expected arrival; the remark of Hutchinson<sup>5</sup> refers to the well-known schemes of Lord Say and Seal and Lord Brooke; there are no circumstances in the lives of Hampden and Cromwell corroborating the story, but many to establish its improbability; there came over, during this summer, twenty ships, and at least three thousand persons;<sup>6</sup> and had Hampden designed to

<sup>1</sup> Hazard, i. 421.

<sup>2</sup> Colony Laws, edition of 1660,  
73. iii. Mass. Hist. Coll. iii. 398.

<sup>3</sup> Rushworth, ii. 409. Hazard, i.  
422.

<sup>4</sup> Bates and Dugdale, in Neal's  
Puritans, ii. 349. C. Mather, b. i.  
c. v. s. 7. Neal's N. E. i. 168.  
Chalmers, 160, 161. Robertson, b.

<sup>x.</sup> Hume, c. liii. Belknap, ii. 229.  
Grahame's U. S. i. 299. Lord Nu-

gent, in his Hampden, i. 254, should not have repeated the error. Edinburgh Review, No. 108. Russel's Cromwell, i. 51. Godwin, in his History of the Commonwealth, i. 11, 12, reproves the conduct which he unjustly imputes to Hampden. The pretended design was indeed unlike Hampden.

<sup>5</sup> Hutchinson, i. 44.

<sup>6</sup> Winthrop, i. 268.

CHAP. X.  
 1638. emigrate, he whose maxim<sup>1</sup> in life forbade retreat, and whose resolution was as fixed as it was calm, possessed energy enough to have accomplished his purpose. He undoubtedly had watched with deep interest the progress of Massachusetts; "the Conclusions" had early attracted his attention;<sup>2</sup> and in 1631 he had taken part in a purchase of territory on the Narragansett.<sup>3</sup> It has been conjectured,<sup>4</sup> asserted,<sup>5</sup> and even circumstantially related,<sup>6</sup> that he passed a winter with the colony of New Plymouth. A person who bore the same or nearly the same name,<sup>7</sup> was undoubtedly there; but the greatest patriot-statesman of his times, the man whom Charles I. would gladly have seen drawn and quartered, whom Clarendon paints as possessing beyond all his contemporaries "a head to contrive, a tongue to persuade, and a hand to execute," and whom the fervent Baxter revered as able, by his presence and conversation, to give a new charm to the rest of the Saints in heaven, was never in America. Nor did he ever embark for America; the fleet in which he is said to have taken his passage, was delayed but a few days; on petition of the owners and passengers, King Charles removed the restraint;<sup>8</sup> the ships proceeded on their intended voyage; and the whole company, as it seems without diminution, arrived safely in the Bay of Massachusetts.<sup>9</sup> Had Hampden and Cromwell been of the party, they too would have reached New England.

<sup>1</sup> Nulla vestigia retrorsum.

<sup>2</sup> Nugent, i. 173, 174.

<sup>3</sup> Potter's Narragansett, 14.—Comp. Trumbull.

<sup>4</sup> Belknap's Biog. ii. 229.

<sup>5</sup> N. Amer. Review, vi. 28.

<sup>6</sup> Fr. Baylies, Memoir, i. 110, takes fire at the thought.

<sup>7</sup> ii. Massachusetts Hist. Coll. viii. 258. More probably John Hamblin; a common name in the Old Colony.

<sup>8</sup> Rushworth, ii. 409. Aikin's Charles I. i. 471—473.

<sup>9</sup> Winthrop, i. 266, is decisive.

A few weeks before this attempt to stay emigration,<sup>CHAP.  
X.</sup> the lords of the council had written to Winthrop,<sup>1638.  
April  
4.</sup> recalling to mind the former proceedings by a quo warranto, and demanding the return of the patent. In case of refusal, it was added, the king would assume into his own hands the entire management of the plantation.<sup>1</sup>

But “David in exile could more safely expostulate with Saul for the vast space between them.” The colonists, without desponding, demanded a trial before condemnation. They urged that the recall of the patent would be a manifest breach of faith, pregnant with evils to themselves and their neighbors; that it would strengthen the plantations of the French and the Dutch; that it would discourage all future attempts at colonial enterprise; and, finally, “if the patent be taken from us,”—such was their cautious but energetic remonstrance,—“the common people will conceive that his majesty hath cast them off, and that hereby they are freed from their allegiance and subjection, and therefore will be ready to confederate themselves under a new government, for their necessary safety and subsistence, which will be of dangerous example unto other plantations, and perilous to ourselves, of incurring his majesty’s displeasure.”<sup>2</sup> They therefore beg of the royal clemency the favor of neglect.

But before their supplication could find its way to the throne, the monarch was himself already involved in disasters. Anticipating success in his tyranny in England, he had resolved to practise no forbearance; with headlong indiscretion, he insisted on introducing

<sup>1</sup> Hubbard, 268, 269. Hazard, 269—271. Hutch. i. 432, 433. Hutchinson’s Coll. 105, App. No. v. Hazard, i. 434. 436. 106.

CHAP. a liturgy into Scotland, and compelling the uncom-  
promising disciples of Knox to listen to prayers trans-  
lated from the Roman missal. The first attempt at  
reading the new service in the cathedral of Edinburgh  
was the signal for that series of momentous events  
which promised to restore liberty to England, and give  
peace to the colonies. The movement began, as great  
revolutions almost always do, from the ranks of the  
people. "What, ye villain!" shouted the old women  
at the dean, as he read the liturgy, "will ye say mass  
in my lug?"—"A pape, a pape!" resounded the mul-  
titude, incensed against the bishop; "stane him, stane  
him!" The churchmen narrowly escaped martyrdom.  
The tumult spreads; the nobles of Scotland take ad-  
vantage of the excitement of the people to advance  
their ambition. The national covenant is published,  
and is signed by the Scottish nation, almost without  
distinction of rank or sex; the defences of despotism  
are broken down; the flood washes away every vestige  
of ecclesiastical oppression. Scotland rises in arms for  
a holy war, and enlists religious enthusiasm under its  
banner in its contest against a despot, who has neither  
a regular treasury, nor an army, nor the confidence of  
his people. The wisest of his subjects esteem the  
insurgents as their friends and allies. There is now  
no time to oppress New England; the throne itself  
totters;—there is no need to forbid emigration; Eng-  
land is at once become the theatre of wonderful events,  
and many fiery spirits, who had fled for a refuge to the  
colonies, rush back to share in the open struggle for  
liberty. In the following years, few passengers came  
over; the reformation of church and state, the attain-  
der of Strafford, the impeachment of Laud, the great

enemy of Massachusetts, caused all men to stay in CHAP.  
England in expectation of a new world.<sup>1</sup>

Yet a nation was already planted in New England ; a commonwealth was matured ; the contests in which the unfortunate Charles became engaged, and the republican revolution that followed, left the colonists, for the space of twenty years, nearly unmolested in the enjoyment of the benefits of virtual independence. The change which their industry had wrought in the wilderness, was the admiration of their times,—the wonder of the world.<sup>2</sup> Plenty prevailed throughout the settlements. The wigwams and hovels in which the English had at first found shelter, were replaced by well-built houses. The number of emigrants who had arrived in New England before the assembling of the Long Parliament, are esteemed to have been twenty-one thousand two hundred.<sup>3</sup> One<sup>4</sup> hundred and ninety-eight ships had borne them across the Atlantic ; and the whole cost of the plantations had been almost a million of dollars,—a great expenditure and a great emigration for that age ; yet in 1832 more than fifty thousand persons arrived at the single port of Quebec in one summer, bringing with them a capital exceeding three millions of dollars. In a little more than ten years, fifty towns and villages had been planted ; between thirty and forty churches built ; and strangers, as they gazed, could not but acknowledge

<sup>1</sup> Winthrop, ii. 7. 31. 74.

<sup>2</sup> Lechford, 47. Johnson, b. ii. c. xxii.

<sup>3</sup> Johnson, b. i. c. xiv. Josselyn's N. E. 258. Dummer's Defence of N. E. Charters. Hutchinson, i. 91. Davis, in ii. Mass. Hist. Coll. i. xxiii. Neal's N. E. i. 213, and Douglass's Summary, i. 381, are in

error. Mather, b. i. c. viii. s. 7.

<sup>4</sup> I have no doubt, 198, and not 298. Compare Savage and Winthrop, ii. 331, and ii. 91, where there is another example of a mistake in printing from the Arabic numerals of Johnson. The accounts preserved of the arrivals in America will not admit the larger statement.

CHAP. God's blessing on the endeavors of the planters.<sup>1</sup> After  
 X. ~~~~~ fluence was already beginning to follow in the train of  
 industry. The natural exports of the country were  
 furs and lumber; grain was carried to the West Indies;  
 fish also was a staple. The business of ship-building, in  
 which so great excellence has been attained, was early  
 introduced. Vessels of four hundred tons were con-  
 structed before 1643. So long as the ports were filled  
 with new comers, the domestic consumption had requir-  
 ed nearly all the produce of the colony. But now, says  
 Winthrop<sup>2</sup> (and, in the history of American industry,  
 1643. the fact is worth preserving), "our supplies from Eng-  
 land failing much, men began to look about them, and  
 fell to a manufacture of cotton, whereof we had store  
 from Barbadoes." In view of the exigency, "the  
 general court" had already "made order for the man-  
 ufacture of woollen and linen cloth."<sup>3</sup>

1641. The Long Parliament contained among its members  
 many sincere favorers of the Puritan plantations. Yet  
 the English in America, with wise circumspection, did  
 not for a moment forget the dangers of a foreign juris-  
 diction. "Upon the great liberty which the king had  
 left the parliament in England, some of our friends  
 there wrote to us advice to solicit for us in the parlia-  
 ment, giving us hope that we might obtain much. But  
 consulting about it, we declined the motion for this  
 consideration, that if we should put ourselves under  
 the protection of the parliament, we must then be  
 subject to all such laws as they should make, or, at  
 least, such as they might impose upon us. It might  
 prove very prejudicial to us."<sup>4</sup> The love of political  
 independence declined even benefits.

<sup>1</sup> New England's First Fruits, in  
 i. Mass. Hist. Coll. i. 247.  
<sup>2</sup> Winthrop, ii. 119.

<sup>3</sup> Hubbard, c. xxii.  
<sup>4</sup> Winthrop, ii. 25. i. Hist. Coll.  
 vi. 156.

When letters arrived, inviting the colonial churches <sup>CHAP.</sup>  
<sup>X.</sup> to send their deputies to the Westminster assembly of <sup>1642.</sup>  
 divines, the same sagacity led them to neglect the invitation. Especially Hooker, of Hartford, whom historians have so often taunted with jealous ambition, and who was remarkable for avoiding notoriety, "liked not the business," and deemed it his duty rather to stay in quiet and obscurity with his people in Connecticut, than to turn propagandist, and plead for Independency in England.<sup>1</sup>

Yet such commercial advantages as might be obtained without a surrender of their chartered rights, were objects of desire. Hugh Peters and two others had been despatched as agents for the colonies; and their mission was favorably received. The house of commons publicly acknowledged, that "the plantations in New England had, by the blessing of the Almighty, had good and prosperous success, without any public charge to the parent state;" and their imports and exports were freed from all taxation, "until the house of commons should take order to the contrary."<sup>2</sup> The general court of Massachusetts received the ordinance hardly as a boon from a sovereign, but rather as a courtesy and a benefit from a friendly state, and while they entered it on their records as a memorial for posterity, they sought to requite the kindness by reciprocity of legislation.

Still more important for New England were the <sup>1641.</sup> benefits of a secure domestic legislation. Among the first fruits may be esteemed the general declaration of the principles of liberty,—the promulgation of a bill of rights.<sup>3</sup> Universal suffrage was not established; but

<sup>1</sup> Winthrop, ii. 76.

<sup>3</sup> Laws of 1641, ed. of 1660, p. 1.

<sup>2</sup> Hazard, i. 114. Winthrop, ii. 98. 26, 27, 28, and 50. Winthrop, ii. 55. Hutchinson, i. 110. Chalmers, 174.

**CHAP.** every man, whether inhabitant or foreigner, freeman  
<sup>X.</sup>  
~~~~~~~ or not freeman, received the right of introducing any  
**1641.** business into any public meeting, and of taking part in  
 its deliberations.<sup>1</sup> The colony, moreover, offered a free  
 welcome and aid, at the public cost, to Christians of  
 every nation, who might fly beyond the Atlantic “to  
 escape from wars or famine, or the tyranny and oppres-  
 sion of their persecutors.”<sup>2</sup> The nation, by a special  
 statute, made the fugitive and the persecuted the  
 guests of the commonwealth. Its hospitality was as  
 wide as misfortune.

The same liberality dictated the terms on which the jurisdiction of Massachusetts was extended over New Hampshire; and the strict interpretation of the charter offered an excuse for claiming the territory. Maryland suffered for almost twenty years the evils of a disputed jurisdiction, before its citizens asserted their claims to self-government: the people of New Hampshire, dreading the perils of anarchy, provided a remedy, by the immediate exercise of their natural rights, and, by their own voluntary act, they were annexed to their powerful neighbor; not as a province, but on equal terms, as an integral portion of the state. The change was effected with great deliberation. The banks of the Piscataqua had not been peopled by Puritans; and the system of Massachusetts could not properly be applied to the new acquisitions. The general court adopted the measure  
<sup>April 14.</sup> which justice recommended; neither the freemen nor the deputies of New Hampshire were required to be church members. Thus political harmony was established, though the settlements long retained marks of the difference of their origin.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>Sept. 8.</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Laws, ed. 1660, p. 50.

Hubbard, 371, 372. Compare Win-  
 throp, ii. 28 and 93.

<sup>2</sup> Laws, ed. 1660, p. 73.

<sup>3</sup> Belknap, c. ii. Adams, p. 30

The attempt to gain possession of the territory on CHAP.  
Narragansett Bay was less deserving of success. Mas- X.  
sachusetts proceeded with the decision of an independ- 1642.  
ent state. Samuel Gorton, a wild but benevolent en-  
thusiast, who used to say, heaven was not a place, there  
was no heaven but in the hearts of good men, no hell but  
in the mind, had created disturbances in the district of  
Warwick. A minority of the inhabitants, wearied with  
harassing disputes, requested the interference of the 1641.  
magistrates of Massachusetts,<sup>1</sup> and two sachems, near  
Providence, surrendered the soil to the jurisdiction of  
that state.<sup>2</sup> Gorton and his partisans did not disguise  
their scorn for the colonial clergy; they were advocates  
for liberty of conscience, and, at the same time, having  
no hope of protection except from England, they were,  
by their position, enemies to colonial independence;  
they denied the authority of the magistrates of Massa- 1643  
chusetts, not only on the soil of Warwick, but every  
where, inasmuch as it was tainted by a want of true  
allegiance. Such opinions, if carried into effect, would  
have destroyed the ecclesiastical system of Massachu-  
setts, and subverted its liberties, and were therefore  
thought worthy of death; but the public opinion of the  
time, as expressed by a small majority of the deputies,  
was more merciful, and Gorton and his associates were  
imprisoned. It is the nature of a popular state to  
cherish peace: the people murmured at the severity  
of their rulers, and the imprisoned men were soon set  
at liberty; but the claim to the territory was not  
immediately abandoned.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> iii. Mass. Hist. Coll. i. 2—4. 296, ii. 58, 59, and Eddy's note, 142  
Winthrop, ii. 59. Hubbard, 406. —148. 156. 165, 166. 280. 295. 299.  
<sup>2</sup> Winthrop, ii. 120—123. 317. 322. Colony Records, ii. John-  
<sup>3</sup> On Gorton, see Eliot, in iii. Mass. son, b. ii. c. xxiii. xxiv. Lechford,  
Hist. Coll. iv. 136. Winthrop, i. 91. 41, 42. Gorton, in ii. Mass. Hist.

- CHAP.** The enlargement of the territory of Massachusetts  
~~X.~~ was, in part, a result of the virtual independence which  
**1643.** the commotions in the mother country had secured to  
 the colonies. The establishment of a UNION among  
 the Puritan states of New England, was a still more  
 important measure.
- 1637.** Immediately after the victories over the Pequods, at  
 a time when the earliest synod had gathered in Boston  
 the leading magistrates and elders of Connecticut, the  
 design of a confederacy was proposed. Many of the  
 American statesmen, familiar with the character of the  
 government of Holland, possessed sufficient experience  
 and knowledge to frame the necessary plan ; but time  
 was wanting ; the agents of Plymouth could not be  
 seasonably summoned, and the subject was deferred.
- 1638.** The next year it came again into discussion ; but  
 Connecticut, offended “because some preëminence  
 was yielded to Massachusetts,” insisted on reserving to  
 each state a negative on the proceedings of the con-  
 federacy. This reservation was refused ; for, in that  
 case, said Massachusetts, “all would have come to  
 nothing.”
- 1639.** The vicinity of the Dutch, a powerful neighbor,  
 whose claims Connecticut could not, single-handed,  
 defeat, led the colonists of the west to renew the  
 negotiation ; and with such success, that, within a few  
**1643.** years, THE UNITED COLONIES OF NEW ENGLAND were  
 “made all as one.”<sup>1</sup> Protection against the encroach-

Coll. viii. 68—70. Morton, 202—  
 206. Gorton, in Hutchinson, i. App.  
 xx. Hubbard, 343, 344. 401—407.  
 and 500—512. Hazard, i. 546—553.  
 C. Mather, b. vii. c. ii. s. 12. Cal-  
 lendar, 35, 38. Hopkins, in ii. Mass.  
 Hist. Coll. ix. 199—201. Hutchinson,  
 i. 114—118. Hutchinson’s Coll.  
 237—239. and 405. 415. Backus, i.

118 and ff. Eliot, in i. Mass. Hist.  
 Coll. ix. 35—38. Knowles, 182—  
 189. Savage on Winthrop, ii. 147  
 —149. Baylies, N. P. i. c. xii. Best  
 of all is Gorton’s own account, with  
 the accurate commentary of Staples.

<sup>1</sup> Winthrop, i. 237. 284. 299 ; ii.  
 350. 206. Hubbard, 466. Johnson,  
 b. ii. c. xxiii.

ments of the Dutch and the French; security against CHAP.  
X.  
the tribes of savages; the liberties of the gospel in purity and in peace,—these were the motives to the 1643. confederacy, which did, itself, continue nearly half a century, and which, even after it was cut down, left a hope that a new and a better union would spring from its root.

Neither was the measure accomplished without a progress in political science. If the delegates from three of the states were empowered to frame and definitively conclude a union, the colony of Plymouth now set the example of requiring that the act of their constituent representatives should have no force till confirmed by a majority of the people.

The union embraced the separate governments of Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut, and New Haven; but to each its respective local jurisdiction was carefully reserved. The question of State Rights is nearly two hundred years old. The affairs of the confederacy were intrusted to commissioners, consisting of two from each colony. Church membership was the only qualification required for the office. The commissioners, who were to assemble annually, or oftener if exigencies demanded, might deliberate on all things which are “the proper concomitants or consequents of a confederation.” The affairs of peace and war, and especially Indian affairs, exclusively belonged to them; they were authorized to make internal improvements at the common charge; they, too, were the guardians to see equal and speedy justice assured to all the confederates in every jurisdiction. The common expenses were to be assessed according to population.

Thus remarkable for unmixed simplicity was the

CHAP. form of the first confederated government<sup>1</sup> in America.

It was a directory, apparently without any check.

1643. There was no president, except as a moderator of its meetings ; and the larger state, Massachusetts, superior to all the rest in territory, wealth, and population, had no greater number of votes than New Haven. But the commissioners were, in reality, little more than a deliberative body : they possessed no executive power, and, while they could decree a war and a levy of troops, it remained for the states to carry their votes into effect.

Provision was made for the reception of new members into the league ; but the provision was wholly without results. The people beyond the Piscataqua were not admitted, because “they ran a different course” from the Puritans, “both in their ministry and in their civil administration.” The plantations of Providence also desired in vain to participate in the benefits of the union ;<sup>2</sup> and the request of the island of Rhode Island was equally rejected, because it would not consent to form a part of the jurisdiction of Plymouth.<sup>3</sup> Yet this early confederacy survived the jealousies of the Long Parliament, met with favor from the protector, and remained safe from censure on the restoration of the Stuarts.

Its chief office was the security of the settlements against the natives, whose power was growing more formidable in proportion as they became acquainted with the arts of civilized life. But they were, at the same time, weakened by dissensions among themselves. Now that the Pequod nation was extinct, the more

<sup>1</sup> On the Confederacy—the Records, in Hazard, v. ii. Winthrop, ii. 101—106. Morton, 229. Hubbard, c. lii.

<sup>2</sup> Mass. MS. State Papers, Case i. File i. No. 17.

<sup>3</sup> Hazard, ii. 99, 100.

quiet Narragansetts could hardly remain at peace with CHAP.  
the less numerous Mohegans. Anger and revenge ~~—~~<sup>X.</sup> brooded in the mind of Miantonomoh. He hated the 1643. Mohegans, for they were the allies of the English, by whom he had been arraigned as a criminal. He had suffered indignities at Boston, alike wounding to his pride as a chieftain and his honor as a man. His savage wrath was kindled against Uncas, his accuser, whom he detested as doubly his enemy,—once as the sachem of a hostile tribe, and again as a traitor to the whole Indian race, the cringing sycophant of the white men. Gathering his men suddenly together, in defiance of a treaty to which the English were parties,<sup>1</sup> Miantonomoh, accompanied by a thousand warriors, fell upon the Mohegans. But his movements were as rash as his spirit was impetuous: he was defeated and taken prisoner by those whom he had doomed as a certain prey to his vengeance. By the laws of Indian warfare the fate of the captive was death. Yet Gorton and his friends, who held their lands by a grant from Miantonomoh, interceded for their benefactor. The unhappy chief was conducted to Hartford; and the wavering Uncas, who had the strongest claims to the gratitude and protection of the English,<sup>2</sup> asked the advice of the commissioners of the United Colonies. Murder had ever been severely punished by the Puritans: they had, at Plymouth, with the advice of Massachusetts, executed three of their own men for taking the life of one Indian: and the elders, to whom the case of Miantonomoh was referred, finding that he had, deliberately and in time of quiet, murdered a servant in the service of the Mohegan chief; that he had fomented

<sup>1</sup> Hubbard's Indian Wars, 42.

<sup>2</sup> ii. Mass. H. C. viii. 137. 141.

CHAP. discontents against the English; and that, in contempt  
 X.  
 ~~~ of a league, he had plunged into a useless and bloody  
 1643. war,—could not perceive in his career any claims to  
 mercy. He seemed to merit death; yet not at the  
 hands of the settlers. Uncas received his captive,  
 and, conveying the helpless victim beyond the limits of  
 the jurisdiction of Connecticut, put him to death.<sup>1</sup> So  
 perished Miantonomoh, the friend of the exiles from  
 Massachusetts, the faithful benefactor of the fathers of  
 Rhode Island.

The tribe of Miantonomoh burned to avenge the  
 execution of their chief; but they feared a conflict  
 with the English, whose alliance they vainly solicited,  
 and who persevered in protecting the Mohegans. The  
 Narragansetts were at last compelled to submit in  
 sullenness to a peace, of which the terms were alike  
 hateful to their independence, their prosperity, and  
 their love of revenge.<sup>2</sup>

While the commissioners, thus unreservedly and  
 without appeal, controlled the relation of the native  
 tribes, the spirit of independence was still further  
 displayed by a direct negotiation and a solemn treaty  
 of peace with the governor of Acadia.<sup>3</sup>

Content with the security which the confederacy  
 afforded, the people of Connecticut desired no guaran-  
 tye for their independence from the government of  
 1644. England; taking care only, by a regular purchase, to  
 1646. obtain a title to the soil from the assigns of the earl

<sup>1</sup> Records, in Hazard, ii. 7—13. I. Mather's Ind. Troubles, 56, 57. Morton, 234. Winthrop, ii. 130, 134. Hubbard's Indian Wars, 42—45. Johnson, b. ii. c. xxiii. Trumbull, i. 129—135. Drake, b. ii. 67. Relation in iii. Mass. Hist. Coll. iii. 161 and ff. Gorton, in Staples's edition,

154 and ff. See the opinions and arguments of Hopkins, and Savage, and Staples, of Davis and Holmes.

<sup>2</sup> Hazard, ii. 40—50. Winthrop, ii. 198, 246, 380.

<sup>3</sup> Winthrop, ii. 197. Hazard, i. 536 and 537, and ii. 50, 54.

of Warwick.<sup>1</sup> The people of Rhode Island, excluded <sup>CHAP.</sup>  
<sub>X.</sub> from the colonial union, would never have maintained ~~—~~  
their existence as a separate state, had they not sought  
the interference and protection of the mother country ;  
and the founder of the colony was chosen to conduct 1643.  
the important mission.

Embarking at Manhattan, he arrived in England not long after the death of Hampden. The parliament had placed the affairs of the American colonies under the control of Warwick, as governor-in-chief, assisted by a council of five peers and twelve commoners.<sup>2</sup> Among these commoners was Henry Vane, a man who was ever as true in his affections as in his principles, and who now welcomed the American envoy as an ancient friend. The favor of parliament was won by the incomparable “printed Indian labors of Roger Williams,<sup>3</sup> the like whereof was not extant from any part of America ;” and his merits as a missionary induced “both houses of parliament to grant unto him, and friends with him, a free and absolute charter<sup>4</sup> of civil government for those parts of his abode.”<sup>5</sup> Thus 1644.  
<sub>Mar.</sub>  
<sub>14.</sub> were the places of refuge for “soul-liberty,” on the Narragansett Bay, incorporated “with full power and authority to rule themselves.” To the Long Parliament, and especially to Sir Henry Vane, Rhode Island owes its existence as a political state.

A double triumph awaited Williams on his return to New England. He arrived at Boston, and letters from the parliament insured him a safe reception from those who had decreed his banishment. But what honors

<sup>1</sup> Trumbull, i. App. v. and vi.

200. See also Callender and Bac-

Hazard, i. 533. 535.

kus,—both very good authorities,

3 Rhode Island Hist. Coll. i.

because both followed original doc-

4 ii. Mass. Hist. Coll. ix. 185.

uments.

5 Winthrop, ii. 193. Knowles,

CHAP. awaited the successful negotiator, on his return to  
~~X.~~ the province which he had founded! As he reached Seekonk, he found the water covered with a fleet of canoes; all Providence had come forth to welcome the return of its benefactor. Receiving their successful ambassador, the group of boats started for the opposite shore; and, as they paddled across the stream, Roger Williams, placed in the centre of his grateful fellow-citizens, and glowing with the purest joy, "was elevated and transported out of himself."<sup>1</sup>

And now came the experiment of the efficacy of popular sovereignty. The value of a moral principle may be tried on a small community as well as a large one; the experiment on magnetism, made with a child's toy, gives as sure a result as when the agency of that subtle power is watched in its influence on the globe. There were already several towns in the new state, filled with the strangest and most incongruous elements,—Anabaptists and Antinomians, fanatics (as its enemies asserted) and infidels; so that, if a man had lost his religious opinions, he might have been sure to find them again in some village of Rhode Island. All men were equal; all might meet and debate in the public assemblies; all might aspire to office; the people, for a season, constituted itself its own tribune, and every public law required confirmation in the primary assemblies. And so it came to pass, that the little "democracie," which, at the beat of the drum or the voice of the herald, used to assemble beneath an oak or by the open sea-side, was famous for its "headiness and tumults," its stormy town-meetings, and the angry feuds of its herdsmen

<sup>1</sup> Knowles, 202. The work of Knowles is of high value.

and shepherds. But, true as the needle to the pole, CHAP.  
 the popular will instinctively pursued the popular interest. X.  
 Amidst the jarring quarrels of rival statesmen in  
 the plantations, good men were chosen to administer  
 the government; and the spirit of mercy, of liberality  
 and wisdom, was impressed on its legislation.<sup>1</sup> “Our 1647.  
 popularitie,” say their records, “shall not, as some con- May 19.  
 jecture it will, prove an anarchie, and so a common  
 tirannie; for we are exceeding desirous to preserve  
 every man safe in his person, name, and estate.”<sup>2</sup>

Yet danger still menaced. The executive council  
 of state in England had granted to Coddington a 1651.  
 commission for governing the islands; and such a April 3.  
 dismemberment of the territory of the narrow state  
 must have terminated in the division of the remaining  
 soil between the adjacent governments. Williams  
 was again compelled to return to England; and, with Nov.  
 John Clarke, his colleague in the mission, was again  
 successful. The dangerous commission was vacated, 1652 Oct. 2.  
 and the charter and union of what now forms the state  
 of Rhode Island confirmed. The general assembly,  
 in its gratitude, desired that Williams might himself  
 obtain from the sovereign authority in England an  
 appointment as governor, for a year, over the whole  
 colony. But if gratitude blinded the province, ambi-  
 tion did not blind its benevolent author. Williams  
 refused to sanction a measure which would have fur-  
 nished a dangerous precedent, and was content with  
 the honor of doing good. His entire success with the  
 executive council was due to the powerful intercession  
 of Sir Henry Vane. “Under God, the sheet-anchor  
 of Rhode Island was Sir Henry.”<sup>3</sup> But for him,

<sup>1</sup> ii. Mass. Hist. Coll. vii. 78, &c.

<sup>2</sup> MS. Records of R. I. for 1647.

<sup>3</sup> Backus, i. 286.

CHAP. Rhode Island would perhaps have been divided among  
~~X.~~  
~~—~~ its neighbors. "From the first beginning of the Prov-  
1654. idence colony,"—thus did the town-meeting address Sir  
<sup>Aug.</sup>  
~~27.~~ Henry Vane,—“you have been a noble and true friend  
to an outcast and despised people; we have ever reaped  
the sweet fruits of your constant loving-kindness and  
favor. We have long been free from the iron yoke of  
wolvish bishops; we have sitten dry from the streams  
of blood spilt by the wars in our native country. We  
have not felt the new chains of the Presbyterian ty-  
rants, nor, in this colony, have we been consumed by  
the over-zealous fire of the (so called) godly Christian  
magistrates. We have not known what an excise  
means; we have almost forgotten what tithes are.  
We have long drunk of the cup of as great liberties as  
any people, that we can hear of, under the whole  
heaven. When we are gone, our posterity and chil-  
dren after us shall read, in our town-records, your  
loving-kindness to us, and our real endeavor after  
peace and righteousness.” ~~X~~

Far different were the early destinies of the Prov-  
1640. ince of Maine. A general court was held at Saco,  
<sup>June</sup>  
~~25.~~ under the auspices of the Lord Proprietary, who had  
drawn upon paper a stately scheme of government,  
with deputies and counsellors, a marshal and a treas-  
urer of the public revenue, chancellors, and a master  
of the ordnance, and every thing that the worthy old  
1642. man deemed essential to his greatness. Sir Ferdinand  
<sup>Mar.</sup>  
~~1.~~ had “travailed in the cause above forty years,” and  
expended above twenty thousand pounds; yet all the  
regalia which Thomas Gorges, his trusty and well-  
beloved cousin and deputy, could find in the prin-  
cipality, were not enough for the scanty furniture of a  
cottage. Agamenticus, though in truth but “a poor

village,"<sup>1</sup> soon became a chartered borough ; like another Romulus, the veteran soldier resolved to perpetuate his name, and, under the name of Gorgeana, the land round York became as good a city as seals and parchment, a nominal mayor and aldermen, a chancery court and a court-leet, sergeants and white rods, can make of a town of less than three hundred inhabitants and its petty officers. Yet the nature of Gorges was generous, and his piety sincere. He sought pleasure in doing good ; fame, by advancing Christianity among the heathen ; a durable monument, by erecting houses, villages, and towns. The contemporary and friend of Raleigh, he adhered to schemes in America for almost half a century ; and, long after he became convinced of their unproductiveness, was still bent on plans of colonization, at an age when other men are but preparing to die with decorum. Firmly attached to the monarchy, he never disobeyed his king, except that, as a churchman and a Protestant, he refused to serve against the Huguenots. When the wars in England broke out, the septuagenarian royalist buckled on his armor, and gave the last strength of his gray hairs to the defence of the unfortunate Charles.<sup>2</sup> In America, his fortunes had met with a succession of untoward events. The patent for Lygonia had been purchased by Rigby, a republican member of the Long Parliament, and a dispute ensued between the deputies of the respective proprietaries. In vain did Cleaves, the agent of Righy, solicit the assistance of Massachusetts ; the colony warily refused to take part in the strife. It marks the confidence of all men in the justice of the Puritans,

<sup>1</sup> Winthrop, ii. 100.

<sup>2</sup> Hutch. Coll. 386, 387.

CHAP. that both aspirants now appealed to the Bay magistrates, and solicited them to act as umpires. The cause was learnedly argued in Boston, and the decree of the court was oracular. Neither party was allowed to have a clear right; and both were enjoined to live in peace. But how could Vines and Cleaves assert their authority? On the death of Gorges, the people repeatedly wrote to his heirs. No answer was received; and such commissioners as had authority from Europe gradually withdrew. There was no relief for the colonists but in themselves; and the inhabitants of Piscataqua, Gorgeana, and Wells, following the American precedent, with free and unanimous consent<sup>1</sup> formed themselves into a body politic for the purposes of self-government. Massachusetts readily offered its protection. The great charter of the Bay company was unrolled before the general court in Boston, and, "upon perusal of the instrument, it was voted, that this jurisdiction extends from the northernmost part of the River Merrimack, and three miles more, north, be it one hundred miles, more or lesse, from the sea; and then upon a straight line east and west to each sea."<sup>2</sup> The words were precise. Nothing remained but to find the latitude of a point three miles to the north of the remotest waters of the Merrimack, and to claim all the territory of Maine which lies south of that parallel; for the grant to Massachusetts was prior to the patents under which Rigby and the heirs of Gorges had been disputing. Nor did the "engrassing" Massachusetts make an idle boast of the territorial extent of its chartered rights. Commissioners were promptly despatched to the eastward to settle the government.

<sup>1</sup> i. Mass. Hist. Coll. i. 103.

vii. Nos. 4, 20, 58; viii. Nos. 17, 44,

<sup>2</sup> Mass. State Papers, Case i. File

45, 46, 47; x. No. 88.

The firm remonstrances of Edward Godfrey, then <sup>CHAP.</sup> ~~X.~~ governor of the province, a loyal friend to the English <sup>1652-3</sup> monarchy and the English church, were disregarded ; and one town after another, yielding in part to menaces and armed force, gave in its adhesion. Great care was observed to guard the rights of property ; every man was confirmed in his possessions ; the religious liberty of the Episcopalians was left unharmed ; the privileges of citizenship were extended to all inhabitants ; and the whole eastern country gradually, yet reluctantly, submitted to the necessity of the change. When the claims of the proprietaries in England were urged before Cromwell, many inhabitants of the towns of York, Kittery, Wells, Saco, and <sup>1656.</sup> Cape Porpoise, yet not a majority, remonstrated on the ground of former experience. To sever them from Massachusetts would be to them “the subverting of all civil order.”<sup>1</sup>

Thus did Massachusetts, following the most favorable interpretation of its charter, extend its frontier to the islands in Casco Bay. It was equally successful in maintaining its independence of the Long Parliament ; though the circumstances of the contest were fatal to the immediate assertion of the liberty of conscience.

With the increase of English freedom, the dangers <sup>1644.</sup> which had menaced Massachusetts appeared to pass away ; its government began to adventure on a more lenient policy ; the sentence of exile against Wheelwright was rescinded ; a proposition was made to extend the franchises of the company to those who were not church members, provided “a civil agree-

<sup>1</sup> Documents in Maine Hist. Coll. 296. 299. MS. Letter of Geo. Folsom.

CHAP. ment among all the English could be formed" for  
<sup>x.</sup> asserting the common liberty. For this purpose letters  
1644. were written to the confederated states; but the want  
of concert defeated the plan. The law which, nearly  
at the same time, threatened obstinate Anabaptists with  
exile, was not designed to be enforced. "Anabap-  
tism," says Jeremy Taylor in his famous argument for  
liberty, "is as much to be rooted out as any thing that  
is the greatest pest and nuisance to the public interest." The fathers of Massachusetts reasoned more mildly. The dangers apprehended from some wild and turbulent spirits, "whose conscience and religion seemed only to sett forth themselves and raise contentions in the country, did provoke us"—such was their language at the time—"to provide for our safety by a law, that all such should take notice how unwelcome they should be unto us, either comeing or staying. But for such  
1646. as differ from us only in judgment, and live peaceably amongst us, such have no cause to complain; for it hath never beene as yet putt in execution against any of them, although such are known to live amongst us."<sup>1</sup> Even two of the presidents of Harvard college were Anabaptists.

While dissenters were thus treated with an equivocal toleration, no concessions were made towards the government in England. It was the creed of even the most loyal deputy, that "if the king, or any party from him, should attempt any thing against this commonwealth," it was the common duty "to spend estate, and life, and all, without scruple, in its defence;" that "if the parliament itself should hereafter be of a malignant spirit, then, if the colony have strength sufficient,

<sup>1</sup> Hutchinson's Coll. 216.

it may withstand any authority from thence to its CHAP.  
hurt.”<sup>1</sup> Massachusetts called itself “a perfect repub- X.  
lic.”<sup>2</sup> Nor was the expression a vain boast. The 1644  
commonwealth, by force of arms, preserved in its  
harbors a neutrality between the ships of the opposing  
English factions; and the law which placed death as  
the penalty on any “attempt at the alteration of the  
frame of polity fundamentally,”<sup>3</sup> was well understood  
to be aimed at those who should assert the absolute  
supremacy of the English parliament. The establish-  
ment of a mint, in 1652, was a further exercise of  
sovereignty.

Whilst the public mind was agitated with discussions  
on liberty of conscience and independence of English  
jurisdiction, the community, in this infancy of popular  
government, was disturbed with a third “great question  
about the authority of the magistrates and the liberty  
of the people.”<sup>4</sup>

A democratic party had for many years been acquir-  
ing a control of public opinion. The oldest dispute 1632.  
in the colony related to the grounds and limits of the  
authority of the governor. In Boston, on occasion of 1634.  
dividing the town lands, “men of the inferior sort were  
chosen.” Eliot, the apostle of the Indians, maintained  
that treaties should not be made without consulting  
the commons. The doctrine of rotation in office was 1639.  
asserted, even to the neglect of Winthrop, “lest there  
should be a governor for life.” When one of the elders  
proposed that the place of governor should be held for  
life, the deputies immediately resolved that no magis-  
trate of any kind should be elected for more than a 1639  
year. The magistrates once, assembling in a sort of 1644.  
<sup>to</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Winthrop, ii. 176. 183.  
<sup>2</sup> *Respublica perfecta.*

<sup>3</sup> Colony Laws.  
<sup>4</sup> Winthrop, ii. 228.

- CHAP. aristocratic caucus, nominated several persons for office,  
X. and the people took care to reject every one of the candidates thus proposed. On the other hand, when one of the ministers attempted to dissuade the people from choosing the same officers twice in succession, they disliked the interference of the adviser more than they loved the doctrine of frequent change, and reelected the old magistrates almost without exception. The condition of a new colony which discarded the legislation of the mother country, necessarily left many things to the opinions of the executive. The people were loud in demanding a government of law, and not of discretion. No sooner had the benevolent Winthrop pleaded against the establishment of an exact penalty for every offence,—because justice, not less than mercy, imposed the duty of regulating the punishment by the circumstances of the case,—than the cry of arbitrary power was raised ; and the people refused the hope of clemency, when it was to be obtained from the accidental compassion and the capricious judgments of a magistrate. The authority exercised by the assistants during the intervals between the sessions, became a subject of apprehension. The popular party, having a majority of the deputies, proposed to substitute a joint commission. The proposition being declined as inconsistent with the patent, they then desired to reserve the question for further deliberation. When to this it was answered, that, in the mean time, the assistants would act according to the power and trust which they claimed by the charter, the deputies immediately rejoined, by their speaker, Hawthorne, “ You will not be obeyed.” The same spirit occasioned the strenuous, though unsuccessful efforts to deprive the magistrates of their negative on the doings of the house. The negative

power was feared as a bulwark of authority, a limitation of the power of the popular will.<sup>1</sup>

Such had been the progress of public opinion, when the popular party felt a consciousness of so great strength, as to desire a struggle with its opponents. The opportunity could not long be wanting. The executive magistrates, accustomed to tutelary vigilance over the welfare of the towns, had set aside a military election in Hingham. There had been, perhaps, in the proceedings, sufficient irregularity to warrant the interference. The affair came before the general court. "Two of the magistrates and a small majority of the deputies were of opinion that the magistrates exercised too much power, and that the people's liberty was thereby in danger; while nearly half the deputies, and all the rest of the magistrates, judged that authority was overmuch slighted, which, if not remedied, would endanger the commonwealth, and introduce a mere democracy." The two branches being thus at variance, a reference to the arbitration of the elders was proposed. But "to this the deputies would by no means consent; for they knew that many of the elders were more careful to uphold the honor and power of the magistrates, than themselves well liked of." The angry conferences of a long session followed. But the magistrates, sustained by the ministers, excelled the popular party in firmness and in self-possession. The latter lost ground by joining issue on a question where its own interest eventually required its defeat.

For the root of the disturbance at Hingham existed in "a presbyterian spirit," which opposed the government of the colonial commonwealth. Some of those

<sup>1</sup> Winthrop, i. 82, 83, 151, 152, 299, 300, 301, 302; ii. 167, 169, 172, 204, 210, 307, 343.

CHAP. who pleaded the laws of England against the charter  
X.  
~~~ and the administration in Massachusetts, had been com-  
1645. mitted by Winthrop for contempt of the established  
authority. It was now proposed to procure their re-  
lease by his impeachment. Hitherto the enemies of  
the state had united with the popular party, and both  
had assailed the charter as the basis of magisterial  
power,—the former with the view of invoking the  
interposition of England, the latter in the hope of  
increasing popular liberty. But the citizens could  
not be induced, even in the excitement of political  
divisions, to wrong the purest of their leaders, and the  
factious elements were rendered harmless by decom-  
position. Winthrop appeared at the bar only to triumph  
in his integrity. “Civil liberty,” said the noble-minded  
man, in ‘a little speech’ on the occasion, “is the  
proper end and object of authority, and cannot subsist  
without it. It is a liberty to that only which is good,  
just, and honest. This liberty you are to stand for  
with the hazard not only of your goods, but, if need  
be, of your lives. Whatsoever crosseth this is not  
authority, but a distemper thereof.”

It now became possible to adjust the long-continued  
difference by a compromise. The power of the magis-  
trates over the militia was diminished by law;<sup>1</sup> but  
though the magistrates themselves were by some de-  
clared to be but public servants, holding “a ministerial  
office,” and though it became a favorite idea that all  
authority resides essentially with the people in their  
body representative, yet the Hingham disturbers were  
punished by heavy fines, while Winthrop and his  
friends retained (what they deserved) the affectionate

<sup>1</sup> Winthrop, ii. 246.

confidence of the colony. The opposition of Bellingsham was due to his jealousy of Winthrop and Dudley, <sup>CHAP.  
X.</sup> ~~the chief officers of the state, whom he would willingly have supplanted.~~

The court of Massachusetts was ready to concede the enjoyment of religious worship under the Presbyterian forms;<sup>1</sup> yet its enemies, defeated in their hope of a union with the popular party, were resolutely discontented, and now determined to rally on the question of liberty of conscience. The attempt was artful, for the doctrine had been rapidly making progress. Many books had come from England in defence of toleration. Many of the court were well inclined to suspend the laws against Anabaptists, and the order subjecting strangers to the supervision of the magistrates; and Winthrop thought that "the rule of hospitality required more moderation and indulgence." In Boston a powerful liberal party already openly existed. But now the apparent purpose of advancing religious freedom was made to disguise measures of the deadliest hostility to the frame of civil government. The nationality of New England was in danger. The existence of Poland was sacrificed, in the last century, by means of the Polish Dissidents, who, appealing to the Russian cabinet to interfere in behalf of liberty of conscience, opened the doors of their country to the enemy of its independence. The Roman Catholic bigots were there the impassioned guardians of Polish nationality. The Calvinists of New England were of a cooler temperament; but with equal inflexibility they anchored their liberties on unmixed Puritanism. "To eat out the power of godliness," became an

<sup>1</sup> Winslow, 28.

CHAP. expression nearly synonymous with an attempt to  
~~X.~~ acknowledge the direct supremacy of parliament.  
William Vassal, of Scituate, was the chief of the  
“busy and factious spirits, always opposite to the  
civil governments of the country and the way of its  
churches;” and, at the same time, through his brother,  
a member of the Long Parliament and of the com-  
mission for the colonies, he possessed influence in  
England. The movement began in Plymouth, by a  
proposition “for a full and free tolerance of religion to  
all men, without exception against Turk, Jew, Papist,  
Arian, Socinian, Familist, or any other.” The depu-  
ties, not perceiving any political purpose, were ready  
to adopt the motion. “You would have admired,”  
wrote Winslow to Winthrop, “to have seen how sweet  
this carrion relished to the palate of most of them.”<sup>1</sup>  
The plan was defeated by delay; and Massachusetts  
became the theatre of action.

The new party desired to subvert the charter govern-  
ment, and introduce a general governor from England.  
They endeavored to acquire strength by rallying all  
the materials of opposition. The friends of Presby-  
terianism were soothed by hopes of a triumph; the  
democratic party was assured that the government  
should be more popular; while the penurious were  
provoked by complaints of unwise expenditures and  
intolerable taxations.<sup>2</sup> But the people refused to be  
deceived; and when a petition for redress of griev-  
ances was presented to the general court, it was  
evidently designed for English ears. It had with  
difficulty obtained the signatures of seven men, and  
of these, some were sojourners in the colony, who

<sup>1</sup> Hutch. Coll. 154.

<sup>2</sup> Johnson, ii. Mass. Hist. Coll. viii. 6.

desired only an excuse for appealing to England. The document was written in a spirit of wanton insult.<sup>1</sup> It introduced every topic that had been made the theme of party discussion, and asserted (what Lord Holt and Lord Treby would have confirmed, but what the colonists were not willing to concede) that there existed in the country no settled form of government according to the laws of England. An entire revolution was demanded ; "if not," add the remonstrants, "we shall be necessitated to apply our humble desires to both houses of parliament;" and there was reason to fear that they would obtain a favorable hearing before the body whose authority they labored to enlarge.

For Gorton had carried his complaints to the mother country, and, though unaided by personal influence or by powerful friends, had succeeded in all his wishes. At this very juncture, an order respecting his claims arrived in Boston, and was couched in terms which involved an assertion of the right of parliament to reverse the decisions and control the government of Massachusetts. The danger was imminent. It struck at the very life and foundation of the rising commonwealth. Had the Long Parliament succeeded in revoking the patent of Massachusetts, the Stuarts, on their restoration, would have found not one chartered government in the colonies, and the tenor of American history would have been changed. The people rallied with great unanimity in support of their magistrates. A law had been drawn up, and was ready to pass, conferring on all residents equal power in town affairs, and enlarging the constituency of the state. It was deemed safe to defer the important enactment till the present contro-

<sup>1</sup> Compare Hutch. Coll. 189, 212, 213.

CHAP. versy should be settled ; the order against Anabaptists  
<sup>X.</sup> was likewise left unrepealed ; and, notwithstanding  
1646. strong opposition from the friends of toleration in  
Boston, it was resolved to convene a synod to give  
counsel on the permanent settlement of the ecclesiasti-  
tical polity.

Nov. 4. At length the general court assembled for the discus-  
sion of the usurpations of parliament, and the dangers  
from domestic treachery. The elders did not fail to  
attend in the gloomy season. One faithless deputy  
was desired to withdraw ; and then, with closed doors  
(that the consultation might remain in the breast of  
the court), the nature of the relation with England  
was made the subject of debate. After much delib-  
eration, it was agreed that Massachusetts owed to  
England the same allegiance as the free Hanse Towns  
had rendered to the empire ; as Normandy, when its  
dukes were kings of England, had paid to the mon-  
archs of France. It was also resolved not to accept  
a new charter from the parliament, for that would  
imply a surrender of the old. Besides, parliament  
granted none, but by way of ordinance, which the king  
might one day refuse to confirm, and always made for  
itself an express reservation of “a supreme power in  
all things.” The elders, after a day’s consultation,  
confirmed the decisions. “If parliament should be  
less inclinable to us, we must wait upon Providence  
for the preservation of our just liberties.”

The colony then proceeded to exercise the inde-  
pendence which it claimed. The general court replied  
to the petition in a state-paper, written with great  
moderation ; and the disturbers of the public security  
were summoned into its presence. Robert Childe  
and his companions appealed to the commissioners in

England. The appeal was not admitted. “The charter,” he urged, “does but create a corporation within the realm, subject to English laws.”—“Plantations,” 1646. replied the court, “are above the rank of an ordinary corporation; they have been esteemed other than towns, yea, than many cities. Colonies are the foundations of great commonwealths. It is the fruit of pride and folly to despise the day of small things.”

To the parliament of England the legislature remonstrated with the noblest frankness against any assertion of the paramount authority of that body.

“An order from England,” say they, “is prejudicial to our chartered liberties, and to our well-being in this remote part of the world. Times may be changed; for all things here below are subject to vanity, and other princes or parliaments may arise. Let not succeeding generations have cause to lament and say, England sent our fathers forth with happy liberties, which they enjoyed many years, notwithstanding all the enmity and opposition of the prelacy, and other potent adversaries, and yet these liberties were lost in the season when England itself recovered its own. We rode out the dangers of the sea; shall we perish in port? We have not admitted appeals to your authority, being assured they cannot stand with the liberty and power granted us by our charter, and would be destructive to all government. These considerations are not new to the high court of parliament; the records whereof bear witness of the wisdom and faithfulness of our ancestors in that great council, who, in those times of darkness, when they acknowledged a supremacy in the Roman bishops, in all causes ecclesiastical, yet would not allow appeals to Rome.

“The wisdom and experience of that great council,

CHAP. the English parliament, are more able to prescribe  
~~X~~ rules of government and judge causes, than such poor  
1646. rustics as a wilderness can breed up; yet the vast  
distance between England and these parts abates the  
virtue of the strongest influences. Your councils and  
judgments can neither be so well grounded, nor so  
seasonably applied, as might either be useful to us, or  
safe for yourselves, in your discharge, in the great day  
of account. If any miscarriage shall befall us, when  
we have the government in our own hands, the state  
of England shall not answer for it.

“Continue your favorable aspect to these infant plan-  
tations, that we may still rejoice and bless our God  
under your shadow, and be there still nourished with  
the warmth and dews of heaven. Confirm our liber-  
ties; discountenance our enemies, the disturbers of our  
peace under pretence of our injustice. A gracious tes-  
timony of your wonted favor will oblige us and our  
posterity.”

In the same spirit, Edward Winslow, the agent for Massachusetts in England, publicly denied that the jurisdiction of parliament extended to America. “If the parliament of England should impose laws upon us, having no burgesses in the house of commons, nor capable of a summons by reason of the vast distance, we should lose the liberties and freedom of English indeed.”<sup>1</sup> Massachusetts was not without steadfast friends in the legislature of England; yet it marks an honest love of liberty and of justice in the Long Parliament, that the doctrines of colonial equality should have been received with favor. “Sir Henry Vane, though he might have taken occasion against the colony

<sup>1</sup> Winslow’s New England’s Salamander, 24.

for some dishonor, which he apprehended to have been unjustly put upon him there, yet showed himself a true friend to New England, and a man of a noble and generous mind.”<sup>1</sup> After ample deliberation, the committee of parliament magnanimously replied, “We encourage no appeals from your justice. We leave you with all the freedom and latitude, that may, in any respect, be duly claimed by you.”<sup>2</sup>

Such were the arts by which Massachusetts preserved its liberties. The people sustained their magistrates with great unanimity; hardly five-and-twenty persons could be found in the whole jurisdiction to join in a complaint against the strictness of the government; and when the discontented introduced the dispute into the elections, their candidates were defeated by an overwhelming majority.<sup>3</sup>

The harmony of the people had been confirmed by the courage of the elders, who gave fervor to the enthusiasm of patriotism. “It had been as unnatural for a right New England man to live without an able ministry, as for a smith to work his iron without a fire.” The union between the elders and the state could not, therefore, but become more intimate than ever; and religion was venerated and cherished as the security against political subserviency. When the synod met by adjournment, it was by the common consent of all the Puritan colonies, that a system of church government was established for the congrega-

<sup>1</sup> Winthrop, ii. 248 and 317.

<sup>2</sup> Hutchinson, i. 136—140, is confused and inaccurate. Was it from ignorance? His errors are repeated by Chalmers and Grahame. The inquirer must go to the original authorities—Colony Records; Hutchinson’s Collection, 188—218; Winthrop, ii. 278—301, and 317—322;

N. E.’s Jonas cast up at London, in ii. Mass. Hist. Coll. iv. 107, &c.; E. Winslow’s N. E.’s Salamander Discovered, in iii. Mass. Hist. Coll. ii. 110, &c. See also Johnson, b. iii. c. iii.; Hubbard, c. lv.; Hazard, i. 544, &c.

<sup>3</sup> Winthrop, ii. 307.

~~CHAP.~~ <sup>X.</sup> tions.<sup>1</sup> The platform retained authority for more than a century, and has not yet lost its influence. It effectually excluded the Presbyterian modes of discipline from New England.

~~1650~~ <sup>to</sup> The jealousy of independence was preserved in its wakefulness. The Long Parliament asserted its power over the royalist colonies in general terms, which seemed alike to threaten the plantations of the north ; and now that royalty was abolished, it invited Massachusetts to receive a new patent, and to hold courts and issue warrants in its name. But the colonial commonwealth was too wary to hazard its rights by merging them in the acts of a government of which the decline seemed approaching. It has been usual to say, that the people of Massachusetts foiled the Long Parliament. In a public state-paper, they refused to submit to its requisitions, and yet never carried their remonstrance beyond the point which their charter appeared to them to warrant.<sup>2</sup>

~~1651.~~ After the successes of Cromwell in Ireland, he voluntarily expressed his interest in New England, by offering its inhabitants estates and a settlement in the beautiful island which his arms had subdued. His offers were declined ; for the emigrants already loved their land of refuge, where their own courage and toils had established “the liberties of the gospel in its purity,” and created the peaceful abundance of thriving republics.

~~1651~~ <sup>to</sup> The war between England and Holland hardly disturbed the tranquillity of the colonies. The western settlements, which would have suffered extreme misery from a combined attack of the Indians and the Dutch,

<sup>1</sup> Result of a Synod, &c. See ton Mather is diffuse on the subject. also Winthrop and Hubbard. Cot-

<sup>2</sup> Hutchinson, i. App. viii.

were earnest for attempting to reduce New Amsterdam ; but Massachusetts could deliberate more coolly, ————— and its elders wisely answered, that the wars of Europe ought not to destroy the happiness of America ; tha “ it was safest for the colonies to forbear the use of the sword, but to be in a posture of defence.” The nature of the reserved powers of the members of the union now became the subject of animated discussion ; but a peaceful intercourse with Manhattan continued.<sup>1</sup>

The European republics had composed their strife, 1654. before the fleet, which was designed to take possession of the settlements on the Hudson, reached the shores of America. It was a season of peace between England and France ; and yet the English forces, turning to the north, made the easy conquest of Acadia—an acquisition which no remonstrances or complaints could induce the protector to restore.<sup>2</sup>

The possession was perhaps considered a benefit to New England, of which the inhabitants enjoyed the confidence of Cromwell throughout all the period of his success. They were fully satisfied that the battles which he had fought were the battles of the Lord ; and “ the spirits of the brethren were carried forth in faithful and affectionate prayers in his behalf ;” but, at the same time, they charged him to rule his spirit, rather than to storm cities. Cromwell, in return, was moved by the sincerity of their regard ; he seems to have found relief in pouring out his heart to them freely ; he confessed that the battle of Dunbar, where “ some, who were godly,” were fought into their graves, was, of all the acts of his life, that on which his mind had the least quiet ; and he declared himself “ truly ready to

<sup>1</sup> Hazard, ii., has all the documents on this subject.

<sup>2</sup> Haliburton, i. 61.

CHAP.  
X.  
— serve the brethren and the churches" in America.  
The declaration was sincere. The people of New England were ever sure that Cromwell would listen to their requests, and would take an interest in all the little details of their condition. He left them independence, and favored their trade. When his arms  
1655. had made the conquest of Jamaica, he offered them the island, with the promise of all the wealth which the tropical clime pours prodigally into the lap of industry; and though they frequently thwarted his views, they never forfeited his regard. English history must judge of Cromwell by his influence on the institutions of England; the American colonies remember the years of his power as the period when British sovereignty was for them free from rapacity, intolerance, and oppression. He may be called the benefactor of the English in America; for he left them to enjoy unshackled the liberal benevolence of Providence, the freedom of industry, of commerce, of religion, and of government.<sup>1</sup>

Yet the Puritans of New England perceived that their security rested on the personal character of the protector, and that other revolutions were ripening; they, therefore, never allowed their vigilance to be lulled. The influence of the elders was confirmed; the civil and the religious institutions had become intimately connected. While the spirit of independence was thus assured, the evils ensued that are in some measure inseparable from a religious establishment; a distinct interest grew up under the system; the severity of the laws was sharpened against infidelity on the one hand, and sectarianism on the other; nor

<sup>1</sup> Hutchinson's Coll. 233 and ff. State Papers, Case i. File vii. No. Hutch. Hist. App. No. ix. x. Mass. 34; File x. No. 77.

can it be denied, nor should it be concealed, that the CHAP.  
elders, especially Wilson and Norton, instigated and ~~X.~~  
sustained the government in its worst cruelties.

Where the mind is left free, religion can never have dangerous enemies, for no class has then a motive to attempt its subversion; while the interests of society demand a foundation for the principles of justice and benevolence. Atheism is a folly of the metaphysician, not the folly of human nature. Of savage life, Roger Williams declared, that he had never found one native American who denied the existence of a God; in civilized life, when it was said of the court of Frederic, that the place of king's atheist was vacant, the gibe was felt as the most biting sarcasm. Infidelity gains the victory, when it wrestles with hypocrisy or with superstition, but never when its antagonist is reason. Men revolt against the oppressions of superstition, the exactions of ecclesiastical tyranny, but never against religion itself. When an ecclesiastical establishment, under the heaviest penalties, requires universal conformity, the diversity of human opinion necessarily involves the consequence, that some consciences are oppressed and wronged. In such cases, if the wrong is excessive, intellectual servitude is followed by consequences analogous to those which ensue on the civil slavery of the people; the mind, as it bursts its fetters, is clouded by a sense of injury; the judgment is confused; and in the zeal to resist a tyranny, passion attempts to sweep away every form of religion. Bigotry commits the correlative error, when it endeavors to control opinion by positive statutes, to substitute the terrors of law for convincing argument. It is a crime to resist truth under pretence of resisting injurious power; it is equally a crime to enslave the human

CHAP. understanding, under pretence of protecting religion.  
<sup>X.</sup> The reckless mind, rashly hurrying to the warfare against superstition, has often, though by mistake, attacked intelligence itself; but religion, of itself alone, never had an enemy; except indeed as there have been theorists, whose harmless ingenuity has denied all distinction between right and wrong, between justice and its opposite. Positive enactments against irreligion, like positive enactments against fanaticism, provoke the evil which they were designed to prevent. Danger is inviting. If left to himself, he that vilifies the foundations of morals and happiness, does but publish his own unworthiness. A public prosecution is a mantle to cover his shame; for to suffer for opinion's sake is courageous; and courage is always an honorable quality.

The conscientious austerity of the colonists, invigorated by the love of power, led to a course of legislation, which, if it was followed by the melancholy result of bloodshed, was also followed, among the freemen of the New World, by emancipation from bigotry, achieved without any of the excesses of intolerant infidelity. The inefficiency of fanatic laws was made plain by the fearless resistance of a still more stubborn fanaticism.

Saltonstall wrote from Europe, that, but for their severities, the people of Massachusetts would have been "the eyes of God's people in England." The consistent Sir Henry Vane had urged, that "the oppugners of the Congregational way should not, from its own principles and practice, be taught to root it out." "It were better," he added, "not to censure any persons for matters of a religious concernment."<sup>1</sup> The elder

<sup>1</sup> iii. Mass. Hist. Coll. i. 37.

Winthrop had, I believe, relented before his death, and CHAP.  
professed himself weary of banishing heretics; the soul ~~—~~<sup>X.</sup> of the younger Winthrop was incapable of harboring a 1651. thought of intolerant cruelty;<sup>1</sup> but the rugged Dudley was not mellowed by old age. “God forbid,” said he, “our love for the truth should be grown so cold, that we should tolerate errors.—I die no libertine.”—“Better tolerate hypocrites and tares than thorns and briars,” affirmed Cotton. “Polypiety,” echoed Ward, “is the greatest impiety in the world. To say that men ought to have liberty of conscience is impious ignorance.”—“Religion,” said the melancholic Norton, “admits of no eccentric motions.” But the people did not entirely respond to these extravagant views, into which the bigotry of personal interest had betrayed the elders, and the love of unity, so favorable to independence, had betrayed the leading men. The public mind was awakened to inquiry; the topic of the power of the civil magistrate in religious affairs, was become the theme of perpetual discussion; and it needed all the force of established authority to sustain the doctrine of persecution. Massachusetts was already in the state of transition, and it was just before expiring, that bigotry, with convulsive energy, exhibited its worst aspect; just as the waves of the sea are most tumultuous when the wind is subsiding, and the tempest is yielding to a calm.

Anabaptism was to the establishment a dangerous rival. When Clarke, the pure and tolerant Baptist of Rhode Island, one of the happy few who succeed in acquiring an estate of beneficence, and connecting the glory of their name with the liberty and happiness of

<sup>1</sup> Bishop's N. E. Judged.

CHAP. a commonwealth, began to preach to a small audience  
<sup>X.</sup> in Lynn, he was seized by the civil officers. Being  
1651. compelled to attend with the congregation, he ex-  
<sup>July</sup>  
20. pressed his aversion by a harmless indecorum, which  
would yet have been without excuse, had his presence  
been voluntary. He and his companions were tried,  
and condemned to pay a fine of twenty or thirty  
pounds; and Holmes, who refused to pay his fine, was  
whipped unmercifully.

Since a particular form of worship had become a part of the civil establishment, irreligion was now to be punished as a civil offence. The state was a model of Christ's kingdom on earth; treason against the civil government was treason against Christ; and reciprocally, as the gospel had the right paramount, blasphemy, or what a jury should call blasphemy, was the highest offence in the catalogue of crimes. To deny any book of the Old or New Testament to be the written and infallible word of God, was punishable by fine or by stripes, and, in case of obstinacy, by exile or death. Absence from "the ministry of the word" was punished by a fine.

1653. By degrees the spirit of the establishment began to subvert the fundamental principles of Independency. The liberty of prophesying was refused, except the approbation of four elders, or of a county court, had been obtained. Remonstrance<sup>1</sup> was useless. The union of church and state was fast corrupting both; it mingled base ambition with the former; it gave a false direction to the legislation of the latter. And at last  
1658. the general court claimed for itself, for the council, and for any two organic churches, the right of silencing

<sup>1</sup> Felt's Salem, 188 and 533. iii. Mass. Hist. Coll. i. 40.

any person who was not as yet ordained. Thus CHAP.  
X.  
rapidly did human nature display its power! The creation of a national, uncompromising church, led the Congregationalists of Massachusetts to the indulgence of the passions which had disgraced their English persecutors; and Laud was justified by the men whom he had wronged.

But if the Baptists were feared, as professing doctrines tending to disorganize society, how much more reason was there to dread such emissaries of the Quakers as appeared in Massachusetts! The first and most noisy advocates of any popular sect are apt to be men of little consideration. They who have the least to risk are most clamorous for novelties; and the early advocates of the Quakers in New England displayed little of the mild philosophy, the statesman-like benevolence, of Penn and his disciples; though they possessed the virtue of passive resistance in perfection. Left to themselves, they appeared like a motley tribe of persons, half fanatic, half insane; without consideration, and without definite purposes. Persecution called them forth to show what intensity of will can dwell in the depths of the human heart. They were like those weeds which are unsightly to the eye, and which only when trampled give out precious perfumes.

The rise of "the people called Quakers," was one of the most remarkable results of the Protestant revolution. It was a consequence of the moral warfare against corruption; the aspiration of the human mind after a perfect emancipation from the long reign of bigotry and superstition. It grew up with men who were impatient at the slow progress of the reformation, the tardy advances of intellectual liberty. A

CHAP. better opportunity will offer for explaining its influence  
<sup>X.</sup>  
 ~~~ on American institutions. It was in the month of  
 1656. July, 1656, that two of its members, Mary Fisher and  
 July. Ann Austin, arrived in the road before Boston.<sup>1</sup> There  
 was as yet no statute respecting Quakers; but, on the  
 general law against heresy, their trunks were searched,  
 and their books burnt by the hangman; "though no  
 token could be found on them but of innocence,"<sup>2</sup> their  
 persons were examined in search of signs of  
 witchcraft; and, after five weeks' close imprisonment,  
 they were thrust out of the jurisdiction. Eight others  
 were, during the year, sent back to England. The  
 rebuke enlarged the ambition of Mary Fisher; she  
 repaired alone to Adrianople, and delivered a message  
 to the Grand Sultan. The Turks thought her crazed,  
 and she passed through their army "without hurt or  
 scoff."

1657. Yet the next year, although a special law now prohibited the introduction of Quakers, Mary Dyer, an Antinomian exile, and Ann Burden, came into the colony; the former was claimed by her husband, and taken to Rhode Island; the latter was sent to England. A woman who had come all the way from London, to warn the magistrates against persecution, was whipped with twenty stripes. Some, who had been banished, came a second time; they were imprisoned, whipped, and once more sent away, under penalty of further punishment, if they returned again. A fine was imposed on such as should entertain any

<sup>1</sup> I compose the narrative from comparing the Quaker accounts, by Gould, and Sewell, and Besse, full of documents, with those of the colonial historians. There is no essential difference. Every leading work has something on the subject.—The

apologies of the colonists, especially Norton's book, *The Heart of N. E. Rent*, still exist, and are before me. Compare the life of Mary Dyer, in C. Sedgwick's *Tales and Sketches*.

<sup>2</sup> Sewell, i. 294. Besse, ii. 198—207.

“of the accursed sect;” and a Quaker, after the first conviction, was to lose one ear, after the second another, after the third to have the tongue bored with a red-hot iron. It was but for a very short time, that the menace of these enormities found place in the statute-book. The colony was so ashamed of the order for mutilation, that it was soon repealed, and was never printed. But this legislation was fruitful of results. Quakers swarmed where they were feared. They came expressly because they were not welcome; and threats were construed as invitations. A penalty of ten shillings was now imposed on every person for being present at a Quaker meeting, and of five pounds for speaking at such meeting. In the execution of the laws, the pride of consistency involved the magistrates in acts of extreme cruelty.

1658.  
May.

The government of Massachusetts at length resolved to follow the advice of the commissioners for the united colonies; from which the younger Winthrop alone had dissented.<sup>1</sup> Willing that the Quakers should live in peace in any other part of the wide world, yet desiring to deter them effectually from coming within its jurisdiction, the general court, after much resistance, and by a majority of but a single vote, banished them on pain of death. The object of severity was not to persecute, but to exclude them. “For the security of the flock,” said Norton, “we pen up the wolf; but a door is purposely left open whereby he may depart at his pleasure.” Vain legislation! and frivolous apology! The soul, by its freedom and immortality, preserves its convictions or its frenzies even amidst the threat of death.

<sup>1</sup> Records, in Hazard, ii. Roger Williams, in Knowles, 311. Bishop’s N. E. Judged; Hutchinson, i. 184.

CHAP. It has been attempted to excuse the atrocity of the  
~~law~~<sup>X.</sup> law, because the Quakers avowed principles that  
1658. seemed subversive of social order. Any government  
might, on the same grounds, find in its unreasonable  
fears an excuse for its cruelties. The argument justifies  
the expulsion of the Moors from Spain, of the  
Huguenots from France; and it forms a complete  
apology for Laud, who was honest in his bigotry,  
persecuting the Puritans with the same good faith  
with which he recorded his dreams. The fears of one  
class of men are not the measure of the rights of  
another.

It is said, the Quakers themselves rushed on the  
sword, and so were suicides. If it were so, the men  
who held the sword were accessories to the crime.

It is true that some of the Quakers were extravagant and foolish; they cried out from the windows at the magistrates and ministers that passed by, and mocked the civil and religious institutions of the country. They riotously interrupted public worship; and women, forgetting the decorum of their sex, and claiming a divine origin for their absurd caprices, smeared their faces, and even went naked through the streets. Indecency, however, is best punished by slight chastisements. The house of Folly has perpetual succession; yet numerous as is the progeny, each individual of the family is very short-lived, and dies the sooner where its extravagance is excessive. A fault against manners may not be punished by a crime against nature.

The act itself admits of no defence; the actors can plead no other justification than delusion. Prohibiting the arrival of Quakers was not persecution; and banishment is a term hardly to be used of one who has

not acquired a home. When a pauper is sent to his native town, he is not called an exile. A ship from abroad, which should enter the harbor of Marseilles against the order of the health-officer, would be sunk by the guns of the fort. The government of Massachusetts applied similar quarantine rules to the morals of the colony, and would as little tolerate what seemed a ruinous heresy, as the French would tolerate the plague: I do not plead the analogy; the cases are as widely different as this world and the next; I desire only to relate facts with precision. The ship suspected of infection might sail for another port; and the Quaker, if he came once, was sent away; if he came again, was sentenced to death, and then might still quit the jurisdiction on a promise of returning no more. Servetus did but desire leave to continue his journey. The inquisition hearkened to secret whispers for grounds of accusation; the magistrates of Massachusetts left all in peace but the noisy brawlers, and left to them the opportunity of escape. For four centuries, Europe had maintained that heresy should be punished by death. In Spain, more persons have been burned for their opinions, than Massachusetts then contained inhabitants. Under Charles V., in the Netherlands alone, the number of those who were hanged, beheaded, buried alive, or burned, for religious opinion, was fifty thousand, says father Paul; the whole carnage amounted, says Grotius,<sup>1</sup> to not less than one hundred thousand. America was guilty of the death of four individuals; and they fell victims

<sup>1</sup> Sarpi, *Istoria del Concil. Trid.* L. v. *Opere*, v. ii. p. 33. E con tutto, che il numero ne' Paesi Bassi tra impiccati, decapitati, sepolti

vivi, ed abbruciati aggiugnesse a cinquantamila. *Annales*, p. 12, ed. 1678. Carnificata hominum non minus centum millia.

CHAP. rather to the contest of will, than to the opinion that  
~~X.~~  
Quakerism was a capital crime.

1659. Of four persons, ordered to depart the jurisdiction  
Sept. on pain of death, Mary Dyer, a firm disciple of Ann Hutchinson, whose exile she had shared, and Nicholas Davis, obeyed. Marmaduke Stephenson and William Robinson had come on purpose to offer their lives; instead of departing, they went from place to place "to build up their friends in the faith." In October, Mary Dyer returned. Thus there were three persons arraigned on the sanguinary law. Robinson pleaded in his defence the special message and command of God. "Blessed be God, who calls me to testify against wicked and unjust men." Stephenson refused to speak till sentence had been pronounced; and then he imprecated a curse on his judges. Mary Dyer exclaimed, "The will of the Lord be done," and returned to the prison "full of joy." From the jail she wrote a remonstrance. "Were ever such laws heard of among a people that profess Christ come in the flesh? Have you no other weapons but such laws to fight against spiritual wickedness withal, as you call it? Woe is me for you. Ye are disobedient and deceived. Let my request be as Esther's to Ahasuerus.  
Oct. 27. You will not repent that you were kept from shedding blood, though it was by a woman." The three were led forth to execution. "I die for Christ," said Robinson: "We suffer not as evil-doers, but for conscience' sake," were the last words of his companion. Mary Dyer was reprieved; yet not till the rope had been fastened round her neck, and she had prepared herself for death. Transported with enthusiasm, she exclaimed, "Let me suffer as my brethren, unless you will annul your wicked law." She was conveyed out of the

colony ; but, soon returning, she also was hanged on CHAP.  
Boston common, a willing martyr to liberty of con- X.  
science. “We desired their lives absent, rather than 1659.  
their deaths present,” was the miserable apology for  
these proceedings.

These cruelties excited great discontent. Yet William Leddra was put upon trial for the same causes. While the trial was proceeding, Wenlock Christison, already banished on pain of death, entered the court, and struck dismay into the judges, who found their severities ineffectual. Leddra was desired to accept his life, on condition of promising to come no more within the jurisdiction. He refused, and was hanged.

Christison met his persecutors with undaunted courage. By what law, he demanded, will ye put me to death ?—We have a law, it was answered, and by it you are to die.—So said the Jews to Christ. But who empowered you to make that law ?—We have a patent, and may make our own laws.—Can you make laws repugnant to those of England ?—No.—Then you are gone beyond your bounds. Your heart is as rotten towards the king as towards God. I demand to be tried by the laws of England, and there is no law there to hang Quakers.—The English banish Jesuits on pain of death ;<sup>1</sup> and with equal justice we may banish Quakers.—The jury returned a verdict of guilty. Wenlock replied, “I deny all guilt ; my conscience is clear before God.” The magistrates were divided in pronouncing sentence ; the vote was put a second time, and there appeared a majority for the doom of death. “What do you gain,” cried Christison, “by taking

<sup>1</sup> Banishment on pain of death used to be very common in English legislation. By the act of Elizabeth, 35, c. i., every dissenter was conditionally so banished. In January, 1652, John Lilburner was banished on pain of death by the parliament.

CHAP. Quakers' lives? For the last man that ye put to <sup>X.</sup> death, here are five come in his room. If ye have power to take my life, God can raise up ten of his servants in my stead."

The voice of the people had always been averse to bloodshed; the magistrates, infatuated for a season, became convinced of their error; Wenlock, with twenty-seven of his friends, was discharged from prison; and the doctrine of toleration, with the pledges of peace, hovered like the dove at the window of the ark, waiting to be received into its rightful refuge.

The victims of intolerance met death bravely; they would be entitled to perpetual honor, were it not that their own extravagances occasioned the foul enactment, to repeal which they laid down their lives. Far from introducing religious charity, their conduct irritated the government to pass the laws of which they were the victims. But for them the country had been guiltless of blood; and causes were already in action which were fast substituting the firmness and the  
1642. charity of intelligence for the severity of religious bigotry. It was ever the custom, and it soon became the law, in Puritan New England, that "none of the brethren shall suffer so much barbarism in their families, as not to teach their children and apprentices so much learning as may enable them perfectly to read the English tongue." "To the end that learning may not be buried in the graves of our forefathers," it was  
1647. ordered in all the Puritan colonies, "that every township, after the Lord hath increased them to the number of fifty householders, shall appoint one to teach all children to write and read; and where any town shall increase to the number of one hundred families, they shall set up a grammar school; the masters thereof

being able to instruct youth so far as they may be CHAP.  
X.  
fitted for the university.”<sup>1</sup> The press began its work ——  
in 1639. “When New England was poor, and they  
were but few in number, there was a spirit to encour-  
age learning.” Six years after the arrival of Winthrop, 1636.  
the general court voted a sum, equal to a year’s rate  
of the whole colony, towards the erection of a college.  
In 1638, John Harvard, who arrived in the Bay only  
to fall a victim to the most wasting disease of the  
climate, desiring to connect himself imperishably with  
the happiness of his adopted country, bequeathed to the  
college one half of his estate and all his library. The  
infant institution was a favorite; Connecticut, and  
Plymouth, and the towns in the East,<sup>2</sup> often contributed  
little offerings to promote its success; the gift of the  
rent of a ferry was a proof of the care of the state;  
and once, at least, every family in each of the colonies  
gave to the college at Cambridge twelve pence, or a  
peck of corn, or its value in unadulterated wampum-  
peag;<sup>3</sup> while the magistrates and wealthier men were  
profuse in their liberality. The college, in return,  
exerted a powerful influence in forming the early  
character of the country. In this, at least, it can  
never have a rival. In these measures, especially in  
the laws establishing common schools, lies the secret  
of the success and character of New England. Every  
child, as it was born into the world, was lifted from  
the earth by the genius of the country, and, in the  
statutes of the land, received, as its birthright, a pledge  
of the public care for its morals and its mind.

<sup>1</sup> Col. Laws, 74, 186. So, too, in Connecticut MS. Laws, and in the New Haven Code.

<sup>2</sup> Folsom’s Saco and Biddeford, 108.

<sup>3</sup> Pierce’s Harvard College. Winthrop, ii. 214, 216. Everett’s Yale Address, 3.

**CHAP.** There are some who love to enumerate the singularities of the early Puritans. They were opposed to wigs ; they could preach against veils ; they denounced long hair ; they disliked the cross in the banner, as much as the people of Paris disliked the lilies of the Bourbons, and for analogous reasons. They would not allow Christmas day to be kept sacred ; they called neither months, nor days, nor seasons, nor churches, nor inns, by the names common in England ; they revived Scripture names at christenings. The grave Romans legislated on the costume of men, and their senate could even stoop to interfere with the triumphs of the sex to which civic honors are denied ; the fathers of New England prohibited frivolous fashions in their own dress ; and their austerity, checking extravagance even in woman, frowned on her hoods of silk and her scarfs of tiffany, extended the length of her sleeve to the wrist, and limited its greatest width to half an ell. The Puritans were formal and precise in their manners ; singular in the forms of their legislation ; rigid in the observance of their principles. Every topic of the day found a place in their extemporeaneous prayers, and infused a stirring interest into their long and frequent sermons. The courts of Massachusetts respected in practice the code of Moses ; the island of Rhode Island enacted for a year or two a Jewish masquerade ; in New Haven, the members of the constituent committee were called the seven pillars, hewn out for the house of wisdom. But these are only the outward forms, which gave to the new sect its marked exterior. If from the outside peculiarities, which so easily excite the sneer of the superficial observer, we look to the genius of the sect itself, Puritanism was Religion struggling for the People. “ Its absurdities,”

says its enemy, “ were the shelter for the noble principles of liberty.” It was its office to engrraft the new institutions of popular energy upon the old European system of a feudal aristocracy and popular servitude ; the good was permanent ; the outward emblems which were the signs of the party, were of transient duration ; like the clay and ligaments with which the graft is held in its place, and which are brushed away as soon as the scion is firmly united.

The principles of Puritanism proclaimed the civil magistrate subordinate to the authority of religion ; and its haughtiness in this respect has been compared to “ the infatuated arrogance ” of a Roman pontiff. In the firmness with which the principle was asserted, the Puritans did not yield to the Catholics ; and, if the will of God is the criterion of justice, both were, in one sense, in the right. The question arises, Who shall be the interpreter of that will ? In the Roman Catholic church, the office was claimed by the infallible pontiff, who, as the self-constituted guardian of the oppressed, insisted on the power of dethroning kings, repealing laws, and subverting dynasties. The principle thus asserted, though often productive of good, could not but become subservient to the temporal ambition of the clergy. Puritanism conceded no such power to its spiritual guides ; the church existed independent of its pastor, who owed his office to its free choice ; the will of the majority was its law ; and each one of the brethren possessed equal rights with the elders. The right, exercised by each congregation, of electing its own ministers, was in itself a moral revolution ; religion was now with the people, not over the people. Puritanism exalted the laity. Every individual who had experienced the raptures of devotion, every be-

CHAP. liever, who, in his moments of ecstasy, had felt the assurance of the favor of God, was in his own eyes a consecrated person. For him the wonderful counsels of the Almighty had chosen a Savior; for him the laws of nature had been suspended and controlled, the heavens had opened, earth had quaked, the sun had veiled his face, and Christ had died and had risen again; for him prophets and apostles had revealed to the world the oracles and the will of God. Viewing himself as an object of the divine favor, and in this connection disclaiming all merit, he prostrated himself in the dust before heaven; looking out upon mankind, how could he but respect himself, whom God had chosen and redeemed? He cherished hope; he possessed faith; as he walked the earth, his heart was in the skies. Angels hovered round his path, charged to minister to his soul; spirits of darkness leagued together to tempt him from his allegiance. His burning piety could use no liturgy; his penitence could reveal his transgressions to no confessor. He knew no superior in sanctity. He could as little become the slave of a priesthood as of a despot. He was himself a judge of the orthodoxy of the elders; and if he feared the invisible powers of the air, of darkness, and of hell, he feared nothing on earth. Puritanism constituted, not the Christian clergy, but the Christian people, the interpreter of the divine will. The voice of the majority was the voice of God; and the issue of Puritanism was therefore popular sovereignty.

The effects of Puritanism display its true character still more distinctly. Ecclesiastical tyranny is of all kinds the worst; its fruits are cowardice, idleness, ignorance, and poverty: Puritanism was a life-giving spirit; activity, thrift, intelligence, followed in its

train ; and as for courage, a coward and a Puritan <sup>CHAP.</sup>  
<sub>X.</sub> never went together. “He that prays best, and ~~preaches~~  
preaches best, will fight best;” such was the judgment of Cromwell, the greatest soldier of his age.

It was in self-defence that Puritanism in America began those transient persecutions of which the excesses shall find in me no apologist ; and which yet were no more than a train of mists, hovering, of an autumn morning, over the channel of a fine river, that diffused freshness and fertility wherever it wound. The people did not attempt to convert others, but to protect themselves ; they never punished opinion as such ; they never attempted to torture or terrify men into orthodoxy. The history of religious persecution in New England is simply this ;—the Puritans established a government in America such as the laws of natural justice warranted, and such as the statutes and common law of England did not warrant ; and that was done by men who still acknowledged the duty of a limited allegiance to the parent state. The Episcopalians had declared themselves the enemies of the party, and waged against it a war of extermination ; Puritanism excluded them from its asylum. Roger Williams, the apostle of “soul-liberty,” weakened the cause of civil independence by impairing its unity ; and he was expelled, even though Massachusetts always bore good testimony to his spotless virtues.<sup>1</sup> Wheelwright and his friends, in their zeal for strict Calvinism, forgot their duty as citizens, and they also were exiled. The Anabaptist, who could not be relied upon as an ally, was guarded as a foe. The Quakers denounced the

<sup>1</sup> Backus, i. 155. Winthrop, ii. 193.

CHAP. worship of New England as an abomination, and its  
~~X.~~ government as treason ; and therefore they were excluded on pain of death. The fanatic for Calvinism was a fanatic for liberty ; and he defended his creed ; for, in the moral warfare for freedom, his creed was a part of his army, and his most faithful ally in the battle.

For “ New England was a religious plantation, not a plantation for trade. The profession of the purity of doctrine, worship, and discipline, was written on her forehead.” “ We all,” says the confederacy in the oldest of American written constitutions, “ came into these parts of America to enjoy the liberties of the gospel in purity and peace.” “ He that made religion as twelve, and the world as thirteen, had not the spirit of a true New England man.” Religion was the object of the emigrants ; it was also their consolation. With this the wounds of the outcast were healed, and the tears of exile sweetened.<sup>1</sup> “ New England was the colony of conscience.”<sup>2</sup>

Of all contemporary sects, the Puritans were the most free from credulity, and, in their zeal for reform, pushed their regulations to what some would consider a skeptical extreme. So many superstitions had been bundled up with every venerable institution of Europe, that ages have not yet dislodged them all. The Puritans at once emancipated themselves from a crowd of observances. They established a worship purely spiritual. To them the elements remained but wine and bread ; they invoked no saints ; they raised no altar ; they adored no crucifix ; they kissed no book ; they

<sup>1</sup> Norton's Heart, &c. 58. Norton's choice sermons. 15. Higginson's Cause of God, 11. Articles of Confederacy.

<sup>2</sup> John Q. Adams.

asked no absolution ; they paid no tithes ; they saw in CHAP.  
the priest nothing more than a man ; ordination was ~~X.~~  
no more than an approbation of the officer, which  
might be expressed by the brethren, as well as by  
other ministers;<sup>1</sup> the church, as a place of worship,  
was to them but a meeting-house ; they dug no graves  
in consecrated earth ; unlike their posterity, they mar-  
ried without a minister, and buried the dead without a  
prayer.<sup>2</sup> Witchcraft had not been made the subject  
of skeptical consideration ; and in the years in which  
Scotland sacrificed hecatombs to the delusion, there  
were three victims in New England. Dark crimes,  
that seemed without a motive, may have been pursued  
under that name ; I find one record of a trial for witch-  
craft, where the prisoner was proved a murderer.<sup>3</sup>

On every subject but religion, the mildness of Puritan legislation corresponded to the popular character of Puritan doctrines. Hardly a nation of Europe has as yet made its criminal law so humane as that of early New England. A crowd of offences was at one sweep brushed from the catalogue of capital crimes. The idea was never received, that the forfeiture of life may be demanded for the protection of property ; the punishment for theft, for burglary, and highway robbery, was far more mild than the penalties imposed even by modern American legislation. Of divorce I have found no example ; yet a clause in one of the statutes recognizes the possibility of such an event. Divorce from bed and board, the separate maintenance without the dissolution of the marriage contract,—an anomaly in Protestant legislation, that punishes the innocent more than the guilty,—was utterly abhorrent from their prin-

<sup>1</sup> Trumbull's Conn. i. 283.

<sup>2</sup> Shepherd's Clear Sunshine, 36.      <sup>3</sup> Records, ii. 54, 55.

CHAP. ciples. The care for posterity was every where visible.  
X. Since the sanctity of the marriage-bed is the safeguard of families, and can alone interest the father in the welfare and instruction of his offspring, its purity was protected by the penalty of death ; a penalty which was inexorably enforced against the guilty wife and her paramour.<sup>1</sup> If in this respect the laws were more severe, in another they were more lenient, than modern manners approve. The girl whom youth and affection betrayed into weakness, was censured, pitied, and forgiven ; the law compelled the seducer of innocence to marry the person who had imposed every obligation by the concession of every right. The law implies an extremely pure community ; in no other would it find a place in the statute-book ; in no other would public opinion tolerate the rule. Yet it need not have surprised the countrymen of Raleigh, or the subjects of the grand-children of Clarendon.<sup>2</sup>

The benevolence of the early Puritans appears from other examples. Their thoughts were always fixed on posterity. Domestic discipline was highly valued ; but if the law was severe against the undutiful child, it was also severe against a faithless parent. The slave-trade was forbidden under penalty of death. The earliest laws, till 1654, did not permit any man's person to be kept in prison for debt, except when there was an appearance of some estate which the debtor would not produce.<sup>3</sup>—Even the brute creation was not forgotten ; and cruelty towards animals was a civil offence.—The sympathies of the colonists were wide ; a regard for Protestant Germany is as old as emigration ; and, during the thirty years' war, the whole

<sup>1</sup> Winthrop, ii. 157—159.

<sup>2</sup> Pepys' Diary, i. 81.

<sup>3</sup> Col. Laws, 48.

people of New England held fasts and offered prayers CHAP.  
X.  
for the success of their Saxon brethren.

The first years of the residence of Puritans in America, were years of great hardship and affliction ; it is an error to suppose that this short season of distress was not promptly followed by abundance and happiness. The people were full of affections ; and the objects of love were around them. They struck root in the soil immediately. They enjoyed religion. They were, from the first, industrious, and enterprising, and frugal ; and affluence followed of course. When persecution ceased in England, there were already in New England “ thousands who would not change their place for any other in the world ;” and they were tempted in vain with invitations to the Bahama Isles, to Ireland, to Jamaica, to Trinidad. The purity of morals completes the picture of colonial felicity. “ As Ireland will not brook venomous beasts, so will not that land vile livers.” One might dwell there “ from year to year, and not see a drunkard, or hear an oath, or meet a beggar.”<sup>1</sup> The consequence was universal health—one of the chief elements of public happiness. The average duration of life in New England, compared with Europe, was doubled ; and the human race was so vigorous, that of all who were born into the world, more than two in ten, full four in nineteen, attained the age of seventy. Of those who lived beyond ninety, the proportion, as compared with European tables of longevity, was still more remarkable.

I have dwelt the longer on the character of the early Puritans of New England, for they are the

<sup>1</sup> New England’s First Fruits, printed 1643, p. 23, 26.

CHAP. parents of one third the whole white population of the <sup>X.</sup> United States. In the first ten or twelve years,—and there was never afterwards any considerable increase from England,—we have seen that there came over twenty-one thousand two hundred persons, or four thousand families. Their descendants are now not far from four millions. Each family has multiplied on the average to one thousand souls. To New York and Ohio, where they constitute half the population, they have carried the Puritan system of free schools ; and their example is spreading it through the civilized world.

Historians have loved to eulogize the manners and virtues, the glory and the benefits, of chivalry. Puritanism accomplished for mankind far more. If it had the sectarian crime of intolerance, chivalry had the vices of dissoluteness. The knights were brave from gallantry of spirit ; the Puritans from the fear of God. The knights were proud of loyalty ; the Puritans of liberty. The knights did homage to monarchs, in whose smile they beheld honor, whose rebuke was the wound of disgrace ; the Puritans, disdaining ceremony, would not bow at the name of Jesus, nor bend the knee to the King of Kings. Chivalry delighted in outward show, favored pleasure, multiplied amusements, and degraded the human race by an exclusive respect for the privileged classes ; Puritanism bridled the passions, commanded the virtues of self-denial, and rescued the name of man from dishonor. The former valued courtesy ; the latter, justice. The former adorned society by graceful refinements ; the latter founded national grandeur on universal education. The institutions of chivalry were subverted by the gradually-increasing weight, and knowledge, and opu-

lence of the industrious classes ; the Puritans, rallying CHAP.  
X.  
upon those classes, planted in their hearts the undying ~~  
principles of democratic liberty.

The golden age of Puritanism was passing away. 1660 Time was silently softening its asperities, and the revolutions of England prepared an era in its fortunes. Massachusetts never acknowledged Richard Cromwell; it read clearly in the aspect of parties the impending restoration. The protector had left the benefits of self-government and the freedom of commerce to New England and to Virginia ; and Maryland, by the act of her inhabitants, was just beginning to share in the same advantages. Would the dynasty of the Stuarts deal benevolently with the colonies ? Would it imitate the magnanimity of Cromwell, and suffer the staple of the south still to seek its market freely throughout the world ? Could the returning monarch forgive the friends of the Puritans in England ? Would he show favor to the institutions that the outcasts had reared beyond the Atlantic ?

END OF VOL. I.



PREPARING FOR THE PRESS,  
AND SOON TO BE PUBLISHED,  
BY CHARLES C. LITTLE AND JAMES BROWN,  
VOLUME THIRD  
OF  
BANCROFT'S HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

---

This volume will contain seven chapters and will bring the narrative down to 1765, or the period of the first taxation of America by the English Parliament, or to the commencement of our Revolution.

CONTENTS OF VOLUME THIRD.

Chapter XIX. France England and North America.

Chapter XX. England and France contend for colonial Territory.

Chapter XXI. The Aboriginal inhabitants of the Territory of the United States. This chapter will treat of the Origin, Languages, Natural Endowments, Manners, Government, and Religion of the nation; and the history of the encroachments of England and France upon their Territory.

Chapter XXII. Carolina and Georgia. This chapter will contain the colonization of Georgia, the history of the slave-trade, as affecting the colonies and the commercial relations of England with Spain; the Spanish war of 1739, and the consequent French war of 1745.

Chapter XXIII. Progress of Settlements. Population. Emigration. The period to the commencement of the French war.

Chapter XXIV. The French War.

Chapter XXV. The Prospect. This chapter will contain an outline of the relations of the Great European States to one another and to America, an analysis of the political and philosophical tendencies of the age, and an account of the condition, spirit and purposes of the American colonies, as preparatory to the History of American Independence.

The Publishers are able to promise the earnest and immediate diligence of the author in preparing the third volume. He has gathered materials for it from nearly every one of the old thirteen States and from Canada; and has just made arrangements for an examination of the papers in the English colonial offices.

The Publishers would also announce a fourth edition of Vol. I. of Bancroft's United States. This edition has been carefully revised, and every pains taken to secure entire accuracy.











FEB 6 - 1951

